



---

# **FS-9130DN**

# **FS-9530DN**

## **SERVICE**

## **MANUAL**

Published in April 2007  
842GZ113  
2GZSM063  
Rev. 3

## **CAUTION**

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

## **ATTENTION**

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACÉE PAR UN MODÈLE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISÉES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNÉES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

## Revision history

Revision	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	June 16, 2006	Contents, 1-1-1, 1-1-2, 1-2-3, 1-3-3, 1-3-5, 1-3-10, 1-3-20, 1-3-21, 1-3-22, 1-5-21, 1-5-24, 1-5-25, 1-6-5, 2-2-1, 2-2-2, 2-3-4, 2-3-8, 2-3-12, 2-4-1, 2-4-2	-
2	February 6, 2007	Contents, 1-1-1, 1-1-2, 1-2-1, 1-2-5, 1-2-8 to 1-2-12, 1-3-1, 1-3-3, 1-3-6 to 1-3-8, 1-3-10, 1-3-13 to 1-3-16, 1-3-18, 1-3-19, 1-3-27 to 1-3-34, 1-4-2, 1-4-7, 1-4-9 to 1-4-17, 1-4-23, 1-4-24, 1-4-26, 1-4-30 to 1-4-37, 1-4-40, 1-5-4 to 1-5-8, 1-5-12, 1-5-16 to 1-5-26, 1-6-2, 2-1-1, 2-1-4, 2-1-8, 2-1-11, 2-1-13, 2-2-1, 2-2-2, 2-2-4, 2-2-5, 2-3-1, 2-3-2, 2-3-8, 2-3-11, 2-4-1, 2-4-2	-
3	April 12, 2007	1-4-4	-

This page is intentionally left blank.



---


# Safety precautions


---


This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

## Safety warnings and precautions

Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

 **DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

### Symbols

The triangle (△) symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.



General warning.



Warning of risk of electric shock.



Warning of high temperature.

⊘ indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.



General prohibited action.



Disassembly prohibited.

● indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



General action required.



Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.



Always ground the copier.

## 1. Installation Precautions

### WARNING

- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. ....
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. ....



### CAUTION:

- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. ....
- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. ....
- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material.



This may cause fire. ....



- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. ....



- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. ....
- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. ....
- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. ....













- Advise customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. ....







## 2.Precautions for Maintenance

### WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. .... 
- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. .... 
- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. .... 
- Always use parts having the correct specifications. .... 
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. .... 
- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. .... 
- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. .... 
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. .... 
- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. .... 
- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. .... 

### CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. .... 
- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. .... 
- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. .... 
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. .... 

• Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement. ....



• Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself. ....



• Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item. ....



• Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks. ....



• Remove toner completely from electronic components. ....



• Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged. ....



• After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws. ....



• Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary. ....



• Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below: ....



- Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.
- Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.
- Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.
- Always wash hands afterwards.

• Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc. ....



• Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately. ....



### 3.Miscellaneous

#### WARNING

• Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas. ....



This page is intentionally left blank.

# CONTENTS

## 1-1 Specifications

1-1-1 Specifications .....	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names .....	1-1-3
(1) Body .....	1-1-3
(2) Operation panel .....	1-1-4
1-1-3 Machine cross section .....	1-1-5

## 1-2 Installation

1-2-1 Installation environment .....	1-2-1
1-2-2 Unpacking and installation .....	1-2-2
(1) Installation procedure .....	1-2-2
1-2-3 Installing the network interface card (option) .....	1-2-9
1-2-4 Installing the hard disk unit (option) .....	1-2-10
1-2-5 Installing the CompactFlash card (option) .....	1-2-11
1-2-6 Installing the USB memory (option) .....	1-2-11
1-2-7 Installing the expansion memory (option) .....	1-2-12

## 1-3 Maintenance Mode

1-3-1 Maintenance mode .....	1-3-1
(1) Maintenance mode .....	1-3-1
(2) Executing a maintenance item .....	1-3-1
(3) Contents of maintenance mode items .....	1-3-3
1-3-2 Service mode .....	1-3-24
(1) Executing a service item .....	1-3-24
(2) Description of service mode .....	1-3-25

## 1-4 Troubleshooting

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection .....	1-4-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication .....	1-4-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions .....	1-4-1
(3) Paper misfeeds .....	1-4-9
1-4-2 Self-diagnosis .....	1-4-18
(1) Self-diagnostic function .....	1-4-18
(2) Self diagnostic codes .....	1-4-18
1-4-3 Image formation problems .....	1-4-32
(1) No image appears (entirely white) .....	1-4-33
(2) No image appears (entirely black) .....	1-4-33
(3) Image is too light .....	1-4-34
(4) Background is visible .....	1-4-34
(5) A white line appears longitudinally .....	1-4-34
(6) A black line appears longitudinally .....	1-4-34
(7) A black line appears laterally .....	1-4-35
(8) One side of the print image is darker than the other .....	1-4-35
(9) Black dots appear on the image .....	1-4-35
(10) Image is blurred .....	1-4-35
(11) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned .....	1-4-36
(12) Paper creases .....	1-4-36
(13) Offset occurs .....	1-4-36
(14) Image is partly missing .....	1-4-36
(15) Fusing is poor .....	1-4-37
(16) Image is out of focus .....	1-4-37
(17) Image is not square .....	1-4-37
1-4-4 Electric problems .....	1-4-38
1-4-5 Mechanical problems .....	1-4-41

## 1-5 Assembly and Disassembly

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly .....	1-5-1
(1) Precautions .....	1-5-1
(2) Drum .....	1-5-1
(3) Toner .....	1-5-1

1-5-2	Paper feed section .....	1-5-2
(1)	Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys .....	1-5-2
(2)	Detaching and refitting the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys .....	1-5-4
(3)	Detaching and refitting the left and right registration cleaner .....	1-5-9
1-5-3	Laser scanner unit .....	1-5-11
(1)	Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit .....	1-5-11
(2)	Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (reference) .....	1-5-13
1-5-4	Drum section .....	1-5-14
(1)	Detaching and refitting the drum unit .....	1-5-14
(2)	Detaching and refitting the main charger unit .....	1-5-15
(3)	Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws .....	1-5-16
1-5-5	Developing section .....	1-5-17
(1)	Detaching and refitting the developing unit .....	1-5-17
1-5-6	Transfer section .....	1-5-18
(1)	Detaching and refitting the transfer roller unit .....	1-5-18
1-5-7	Fuser section .....	1-5-19
(1)	Detaching and refitting the fuser unit .....	1-5-19
(2)	Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws .....	1-5-20
(3)	Detaching and refitting the press roller .....	1-5-21
(4)	Detaching and refitting the fuser heater .....	1-5-22
(5)	Detaching and refitting the heat roller .....	1-5-23
(6)	Detaching and refitting the fuser unit thermistor 1 and 2 .....	1-5-24
1-5-8	Others .....	1-5-25
(1)	Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 1 and 2 .....	1-5-25
(2)	Detaching and refitting the dust filter 1 and 2 .....	1-5-26
1-6	Firmware .....	
1-6-1	Downloading firmware .....	1-6-1
(1)	Downloading the firmware from the parallel interface .....	1-6-2
(2)	Downloading the firmware from the memory card .....	1-6-3
(3)	Downloading the firmware from the USB memory .....	1-6-5
2-1	Mechanical construction .....	
2-1-1	Paper feed section .....	2-1-1
2-1-2	Main charging section .....	2-1-4
2-1-3	Optical section .....	2-1-5
(1)	Laser scanner unit .....	2-1-5
2-1-4	Developing section .....	2-1-8
(1)	Single component developing system .....	2-1-10
2-1-5	Transfer and separation sections .....	2-1-11
2-1-6	Cleaning and charge erasing sections .....	2-1-12
2-1-7	Fuser section .....	2-1-13
2-1-8	Eject and switchback sections .....	2-1-14
2-1-9	Duplex section .....	2-1-15
(1)	Paper conveying operation in duplex copying .....	2-1-16
2-2	Electrical Parts Layout .....	
2-2-1	Electrical parts layout .....	2-2-1
(1)	PWBs .....	2-2-1
(2)	Switches and sensors .....	2-2-2
(3)	Motors .....	2-2-4
(4)	Other electrical components .....	2-2-5
2-3	Operation of the PWBs .....	
2-3-1	Power source PWB .....	2-3-1
2-3-2	Engine PWB .....	2-3-4
2-4	Appendixes .....	
	Maintenance parts list .....	2-4-1
	General wiring diagram .....	2-4-2



## INSTALLATION GUIDE

PAPER FEEDER

3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER

DOCUMENT FINISHER

3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER

CENTER-FOLDING UNIT

MAILBOX

HOLE PUNCH UNIT

This page is intentionally left blank.

## 1-1-1 Specifications

Type .....	Desktop	
Printing system .....	Indirect electrostatic system	
Printing paper .....	Weight	
	Cassette: 60 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	
	MP tray: 45 - 200 g/m <sup>2</sup>	
	Types	
	Cassette: Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, High quality, and Custom	
	MP tray: Plain, Transparency, Preprinted, Labels, Bond, Recycled, Vellum, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, Envelope, Cardstock, Thick, High quality, and Custom	
Paper sizes .....	Cassette: A3, A4, A5, B4, B5, Ledger, Letter, Legal, Folio, and Statement	
	MP tray: A3, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, B6, Ledger, Letter, Legal, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C4, Envelope C5, ISO B5, Executive, Envelope #6, Envelope #9, Envelope #10, Hagaki, Oufuku Hagaki, Oficio II, 8 kai, 16 kai, Statement, Folio, Yokei 2, Yokei 4, and Custom	
Printing speed .....	40 ppm model	
	Cassette	MP tray
	A3/Ledger: 23 sheets/min.	A3/Ledger: 22 sheets/min.
	B4/Legal: 27 sheets/min.	B4/Legal: 24/25 sheets/min.
	A4/Letter: 40 sheets/min.	A4/Letter: 34 sheets/min.
	A4R/Letter R: 27 sheets/min.	A4R/Letter R: 27 sheets/min.
	B5: 40 sheets/min.	B5: 31 sheets/min.
	B5R: 27 sheets/min.	B5R: 27 sheets/min.
	A5R/Statement R: 31 sheets/min.	A5R/Statement R: 31 sheets/min.
		A6R: 27 sheets/min.
	50 ppm model	
	Cassette	MP tray
	A3/Ledger: 26 sheets/min.	A3/Ledger: 22 sheets/min.
	B4/Legal: 31 sheets/min.	B4/Legal: 24/25 sheets/min.
	A4/Letter: 51 sheets/min.	A4/Letter: 34 sheets/min.
	A4R/Letter R: 31 sheets/min.	A4R/Letter R: 27 sheets/min.
	B5: 51 sheets/min.	B5: 31 sheets/min.
	B5R: 31 sheets/min.	B5R: 27 sheets/min.
	A5R/Statement R: 40 sheets/min.	A5R/Statement R: 34 sheets/min.
		A6R: 31 sheets/min.
First print time .....	3.5 s or less	
Warm-up time .....	60 s (room temperature 22°C/71.6°F, 60% RH)	
	Recovery from sleep mode: 60 s (room temperature 22°C/71.6°F, 60% RH)	
Paper feed system .....	Automatic feed	
	Capacity:	
	Cassette: 500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
	Manual feed	
	Capacity:	
	MP tray: 200 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
Paper eject system .....	Output tray: 500 sheets (75 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
Photoconductor .....	a-Si (drum diameter 40 mm)	
Charging system .....	Single positive corona charging	
Recording system .....	Semiconductor laser	
Developing system .....	Dry, reverse developing (single component system)	
	Developer: 1-component, magnetism toner	
	Toner replenishing: automatic from a toner container	
Transfer system .....	Transfer roller	
Separation system .....	Separation electrode	
Fusing system .....	Heat roller	
	Heat source: halogen heaters	
	Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostats	
Charge erasing system .....	Exposure by cleaning lamp	
Cleaning system .....	Cleaning blade and roller	

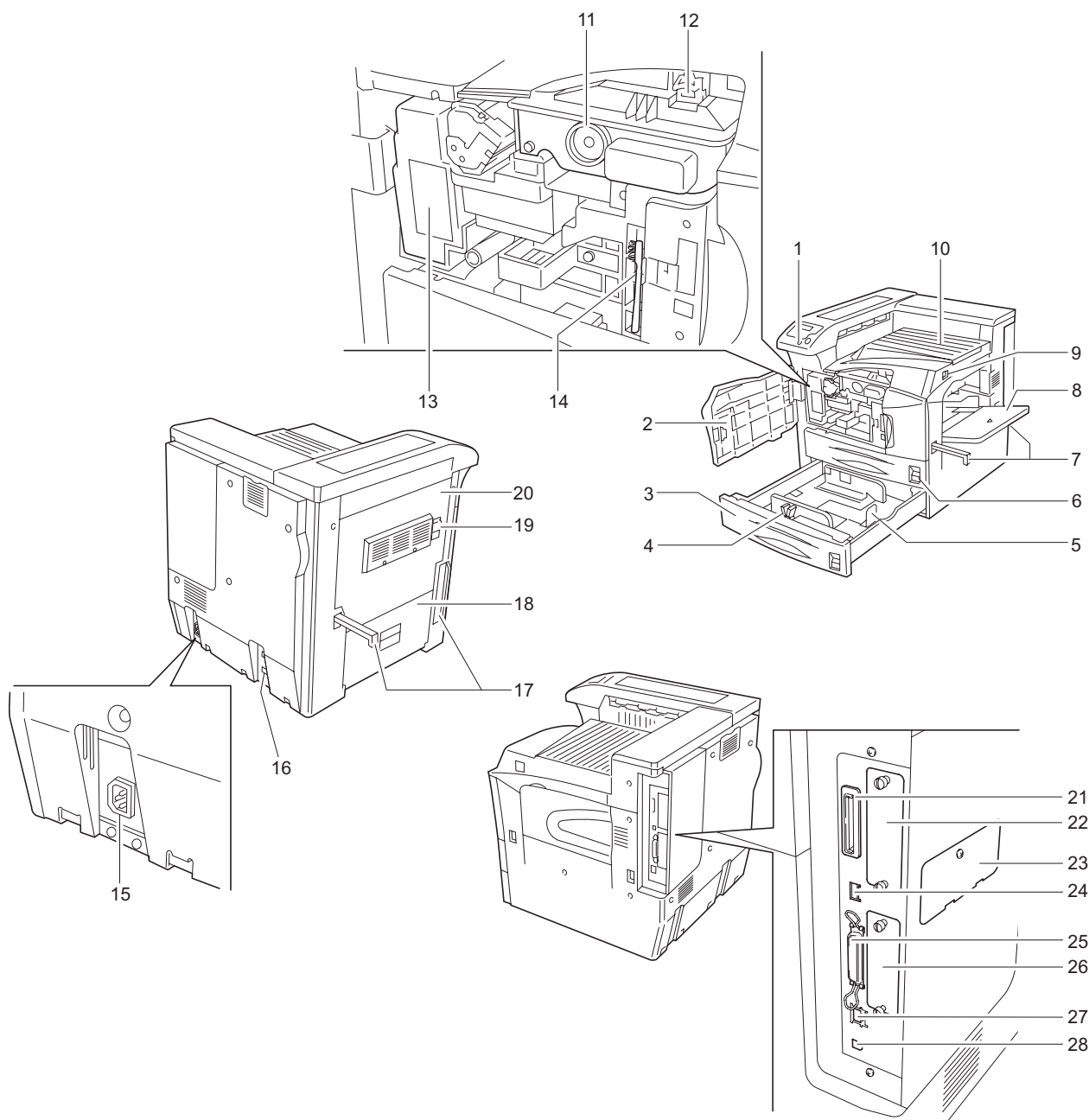
## 2GZ/2G1-2

Controller .....	PowerPC 750 FL (600MHz) Code ROM: 8 MB Font ROM: 4 MB Interface: 1 slot (100pin DDR-SDRAM DIMM) Memory: Standard 64 MB/Maximum 576 MB (40 ppm model ) Standard 128 MB/Maximum 640 MB (50 ppm model ) Memory card: 1 slot (CompactFlash card)
Applicable OS .....	Microsoft Windows 95/98/Me/2000/XP Microsoft Windows NT4.0 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Apple Macintosh OS 9 Apple Macintosh OS X
Interface .....	Parallel: Bi-directional parallel (IEEE 1284 Nibble/ECP mode) High-speed USB (USB2.0) USB host interface Optional interface: 2 slots (KUIO-LV, RS-232C) Network interface: 10Base-T/100Base-TX
PDL .....	PRESCRIBE
Emulation .....	PCL6, KPDL3, KC-GL, Line Printer, IBM Proprinter X24E, Epson LQ-850, Diablo 630
Resolution .....	Fast 1200 mode/600 dpi/300 dpi
Dimensions .....	599 (W) x 646 (D) x 615 (H) mm 23 5/8" (W) x 25 1/8" (D) x 24 1/2" (H)
Weight .....	Approx. 68 kg/150 lbs
Floor requirements .....	1275 (W) x 646 (D) mm 50 3/16" (W) x 25 1/8" (D)
Power source .....	120 V AC, 60 Hz, max. 11.4A 220 to 240 V AC, 50/60 Hz, max. 6.1 A
Options .....	Paper feeder, 3000-sheet paper feeder, document finisher, 3000-sheet document finisher, centerfold unit, mailbox, punch unit and security kit

NOTE: These specifications are subject to change without notice.

## 1-1-2 Parts names

### (1) Body



**Figure 1-1-1**

- |                            |                                   |                                      |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Operation panel         | 11. Toner container               | 21. Memory card slot                 |
| 2. Front cover             | 12. Toner container release lever | 22. Option interface slot (OPT)      |
| 3. Cassette 2              | 13. Waste toner box               | 23. Option memory slot cover         |
| 4. Paper guide             | 14. Cleaning brush                | 24. USB Memory slot (A1)             |
| 5. Paper stopper           | 15. Power cord connector          | 25. Parallel interface connector     |
| 6. Cassette 1              | 16. Option unit connector         | 26. Option hard disk unit Slot (HDD) |
| 7. Handles for transport   | 17. Handles for transport         | 27. Network interface connector      |
| 8. MP (Multi-Purpose) tray | 18. Left cover 2                  | 28. USB interface connector (B1)     |
| 9. Main switch             | 19. Lock lever                    |                                      |
| 10. Top tray               | 20. Left cover 1                  |                                      |

(2) Operation panel

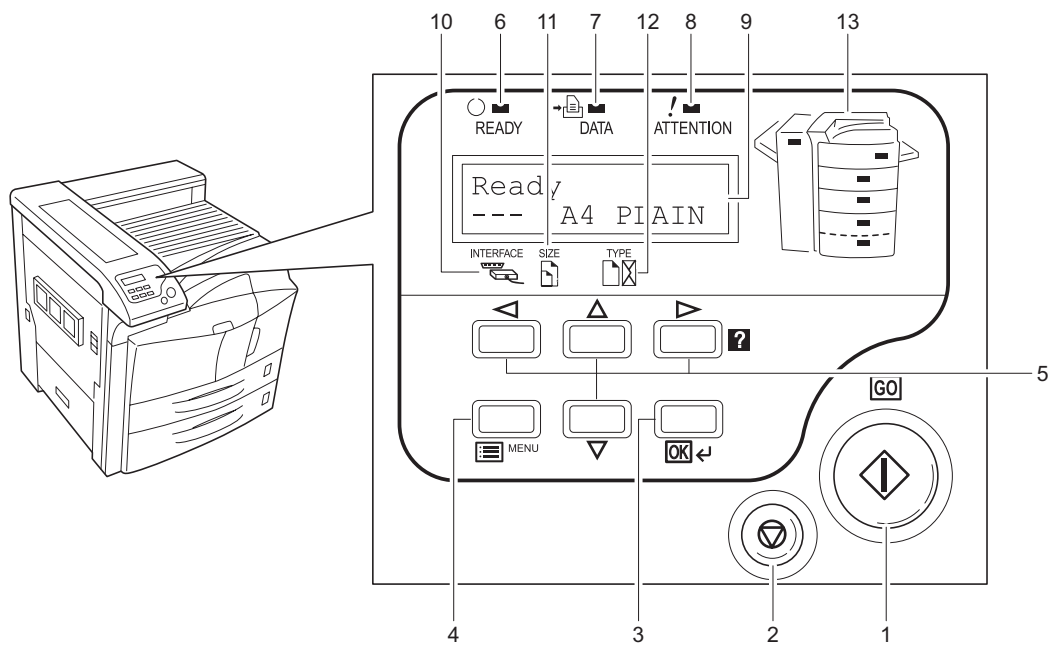
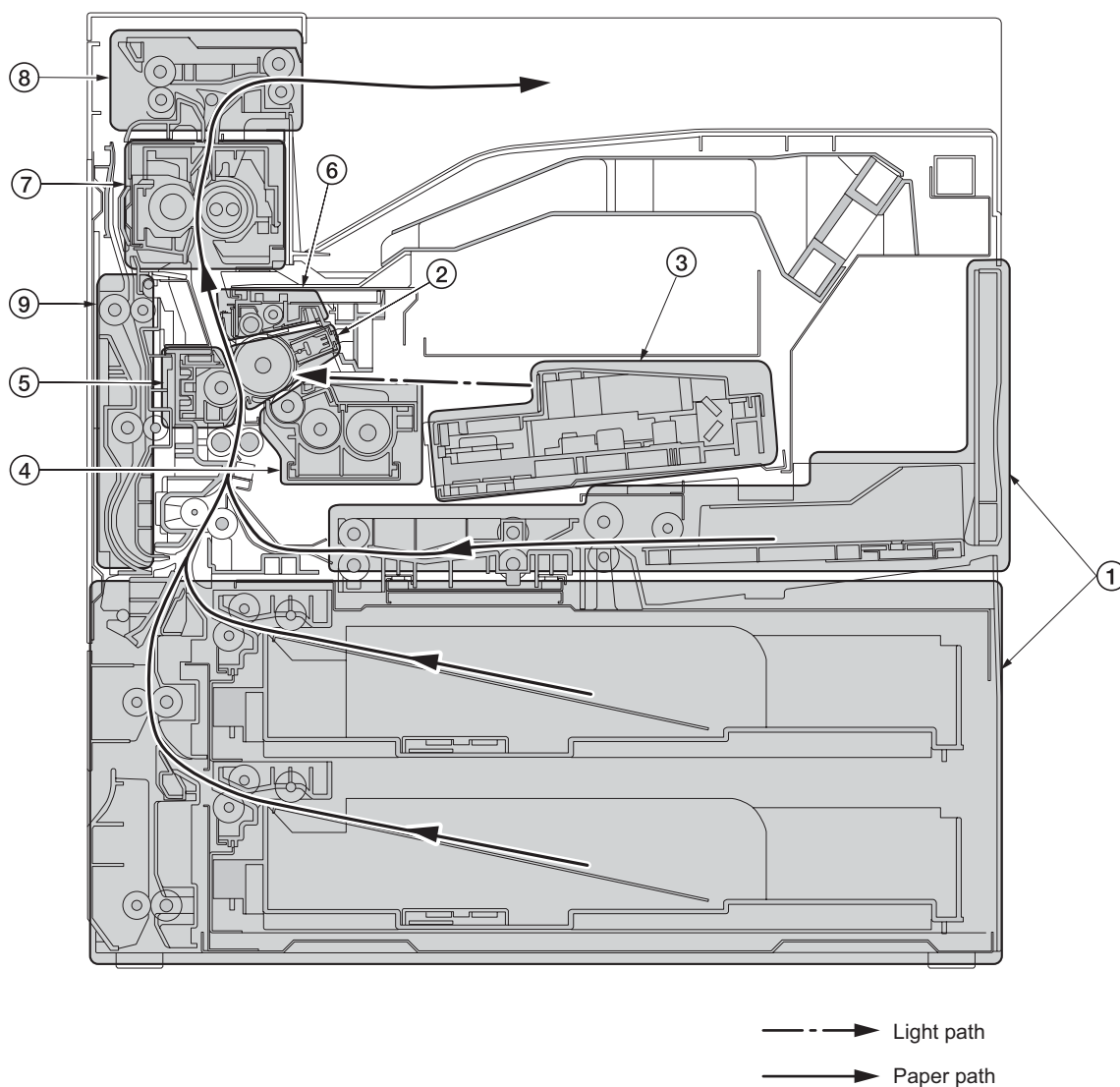


Figure 1-1-2

- |                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. GO key          | 8. Attention indicator   |
| 2. CANCEL key      | 9. Message display       |
| 3. OK key          | 10. Interface indicator  |
| 4. MENU key        | 11. Paper size indicator |
| 5. Cursor keys     | 12. Paper type indicator |
| 6. Ready indicator | 13. Paper jam indicator  |
| 7. Data indicator  |                          |

### 1-1-3 Machine cross section



**Figure 1-1-3 Machine cross section**

1. Paper feed section
2. Main charging section
3. Laser scanner unit
4. Developing section
5. Transfer and separation section
6. Cleaning and charge erasing section
7. Fuser section
8. Eject and switchback section
9. Duplex section

This page is intentionally left blank.



### 1-2-1 Installation environment

1. Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
2. Humidity: 15 to 80%RH
3. Power supply: 120 V AC, max. 11.4 A  
220 to 240 V AC, max. 6.1 A
4. Power source frequency: 50 Hz  $\pm$  0.3%/60 Hz  $\pm$  0.3%
5. Installation location
 

Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photoconductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.

Avoid extremes of temperature and humidity, abrupt ambient temperature changes, and hot or cold air directed onto the machine.

Avoid dust and vibration.

Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.

Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).

Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photoconductor, such as mercury, acidic or alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NOx, SOx gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.

Select a room with good ventilation.
6. Allow sufficient access for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.
 

Machine front: 1000 mm/39 3/8"    Machine rear: 100 mm/3 15/16"

Machine right: 300 mm/11 13/16"    Machine left: 300 mm/11 13/16"

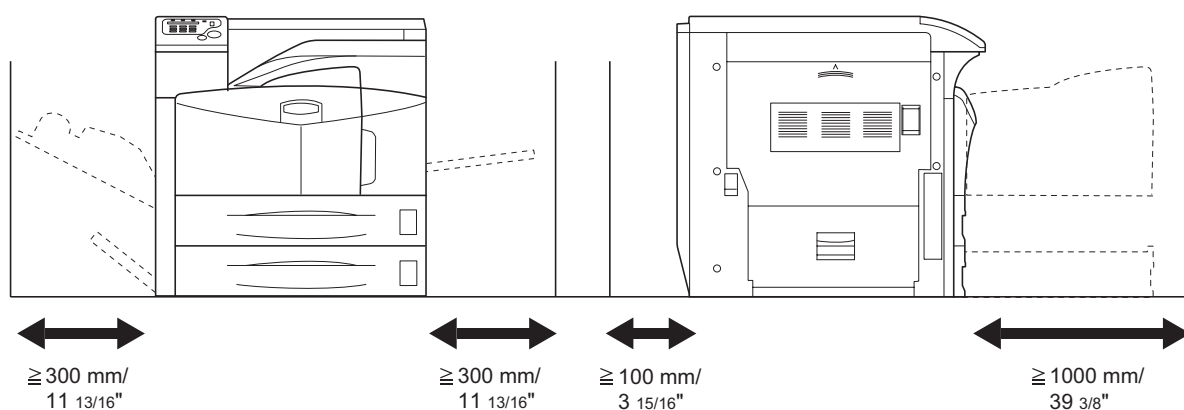
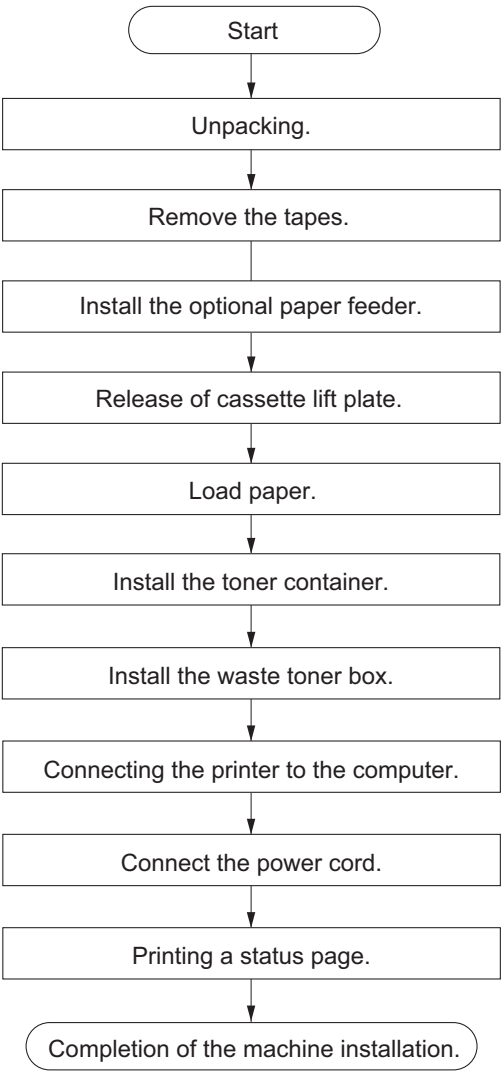


Figure 1-2-1 Installation dimensions

1-2-2    Unpacking and installation

(1) Installation procedure



## Unpacking.

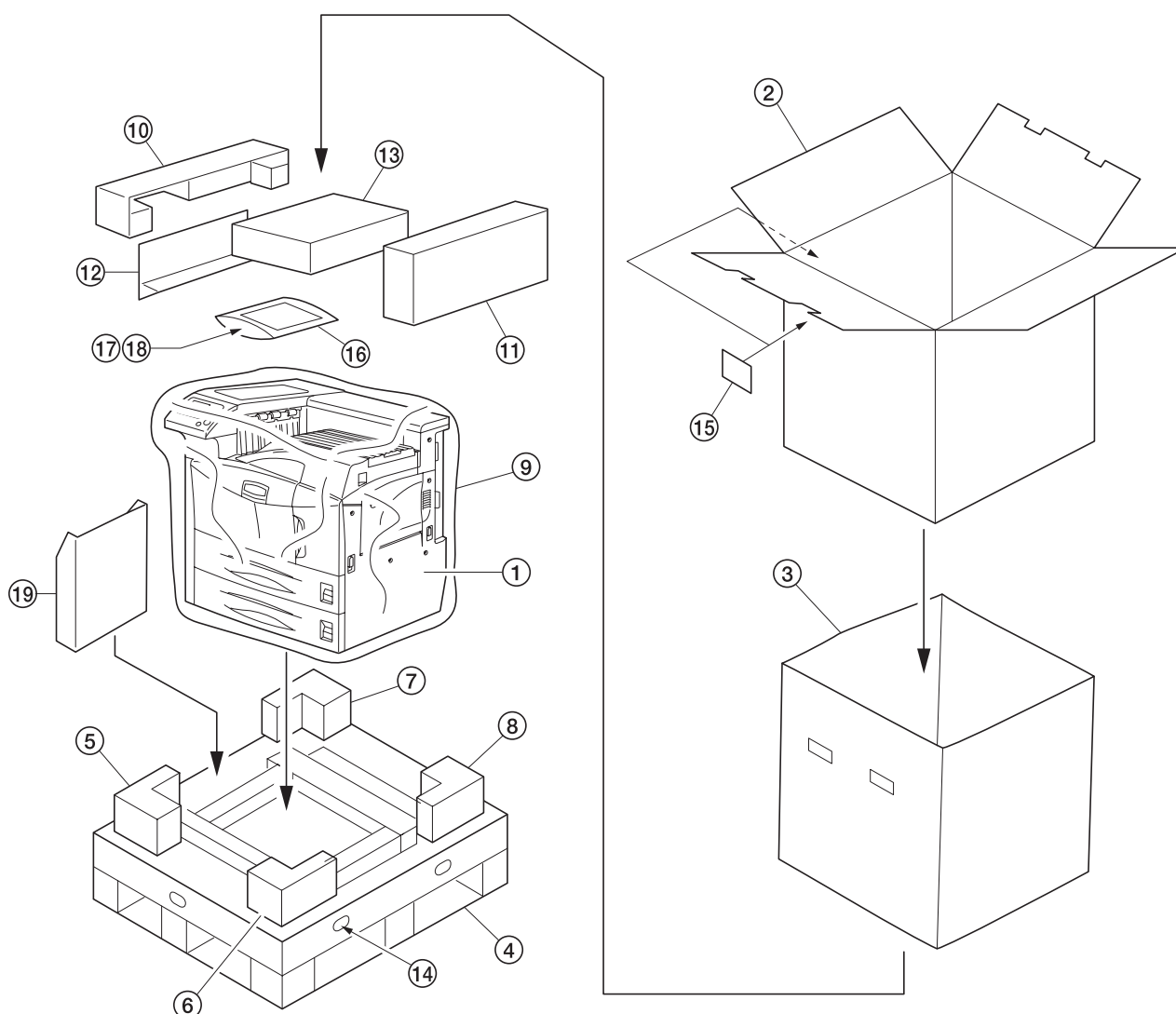


Figure 1-2-2 Unpacking

- |                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Printer                | 11. Upper right pad   |
| 2. Outer case             | 12. Spacer            |
| 3. Inner frame            | 13. Toner container   |
| 4. Skid                   | 14. Hinge joints      |
| 5. Bottom front left pad  | 15. Bar code labels   |
| 6. Bottom front right pad | 16. Plastic bag       |
| 7. Bottom rear left pad   | 17. Paper size plates |
| 8. Bottom rear right pad  | 18. Operation guide   |
| 9. Machine cover          | 19. Document tray     |
| 10. Upper left pad        |                       |

Caution: Place the machine on a level surface.

Remove the tapes.

1. Remove three tapes.

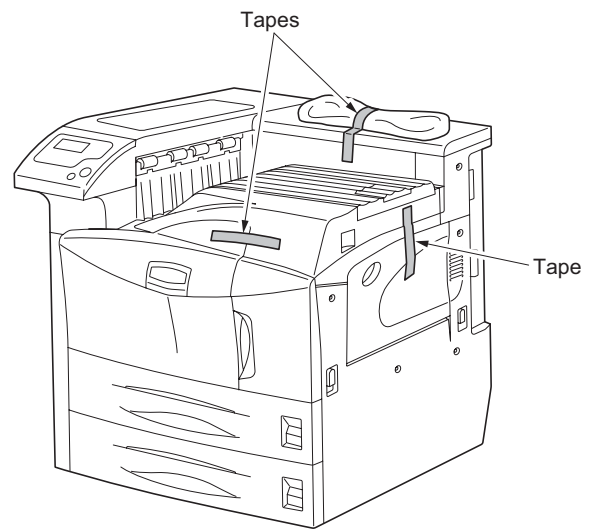


Figure 1-2-3

Install the optional paper feeder.

1. Install the optional paper feeder as necessary.

Release of cassette lift plate.

1. Pull cassette 1 and 2 out.  
Remove the lift plate stopper from each cassette and attach it to the storage location.  
When moving the machine, attach the lift plate in original position.

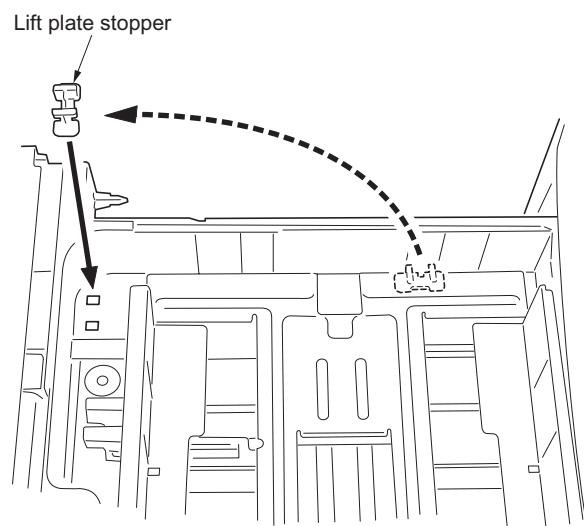
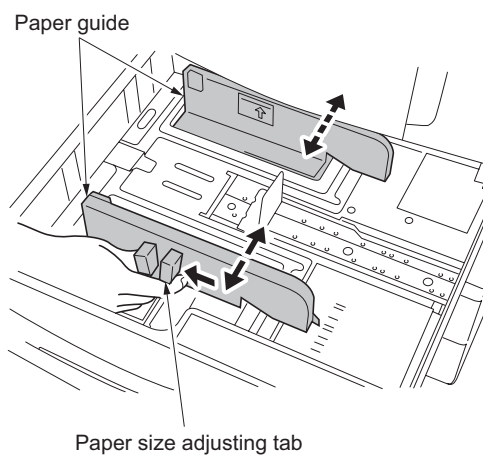


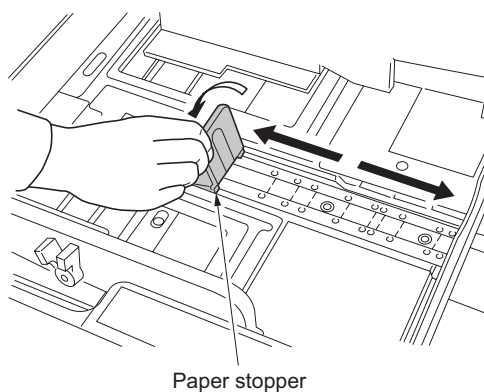
Figure 1-2-4

**Load paper.**

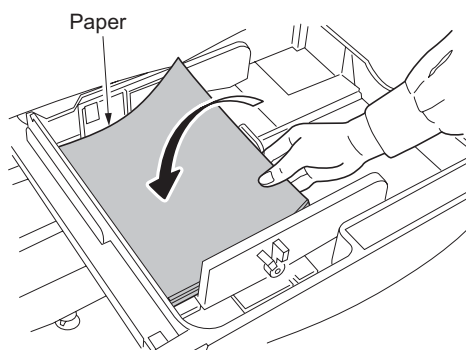
1. Pull the cassette out.
2. Holding the paper size adjusting tab both ends, move the paper guide to fit the paper size.

**Figure 1-2-5**

3. Adjust the paper stopper to fit the paper size.

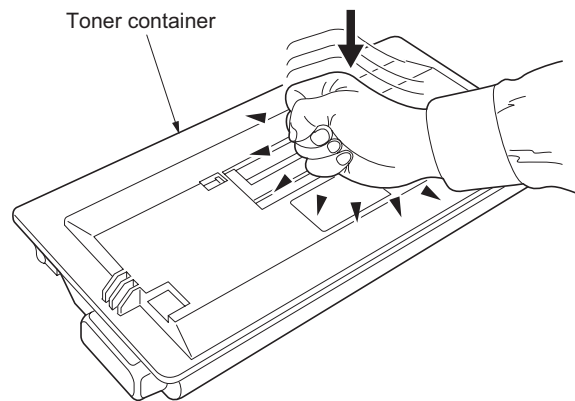
**Figure 1-2-6**

4. Align the paper flush against the left side of the cassette.

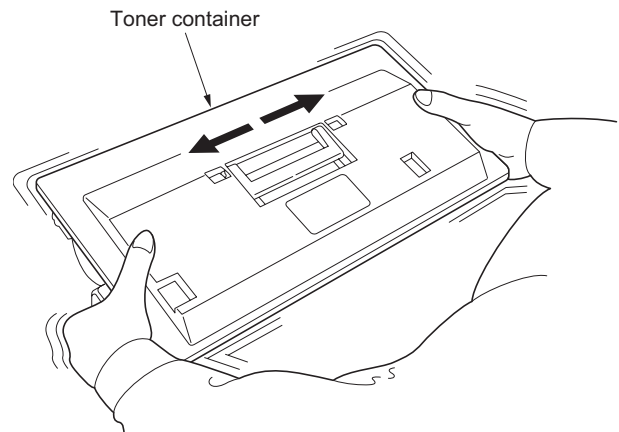
**Figure 1-2-7**

**Install the toner container.**

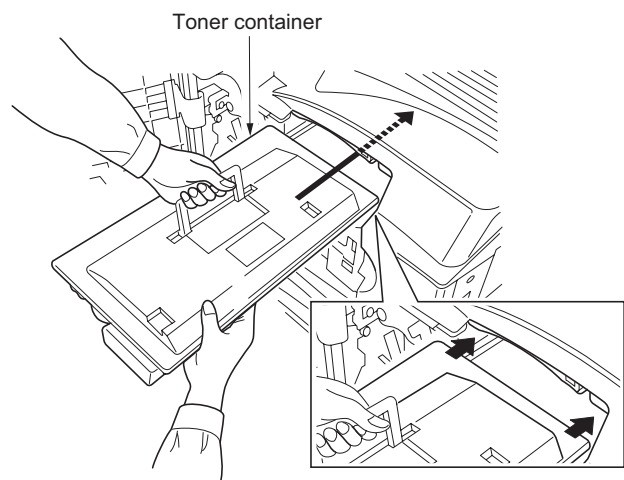
1. Open the front cover.
2. Lightly tap the top of the toner container five to six times.

**Figure 1-2-8**

3. Thoroughly shake the toner container (in the direction of the arrows) ten times or more to loosen and mix the toner inside.

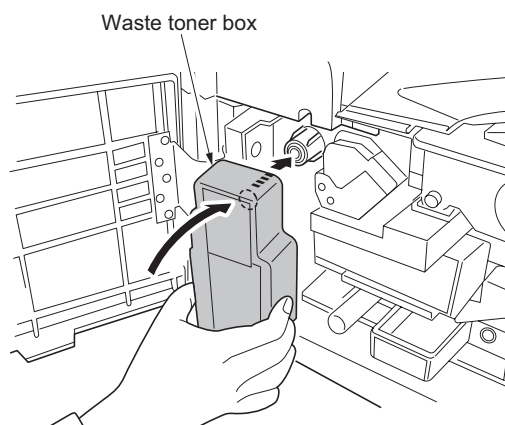
**Figure 1-2-9**

4. Gently push the toner container into the machine along the rails. Push the container all the way into the machine until it locks in place.

**Figure 1-2-10**

### Install the waste toner box.

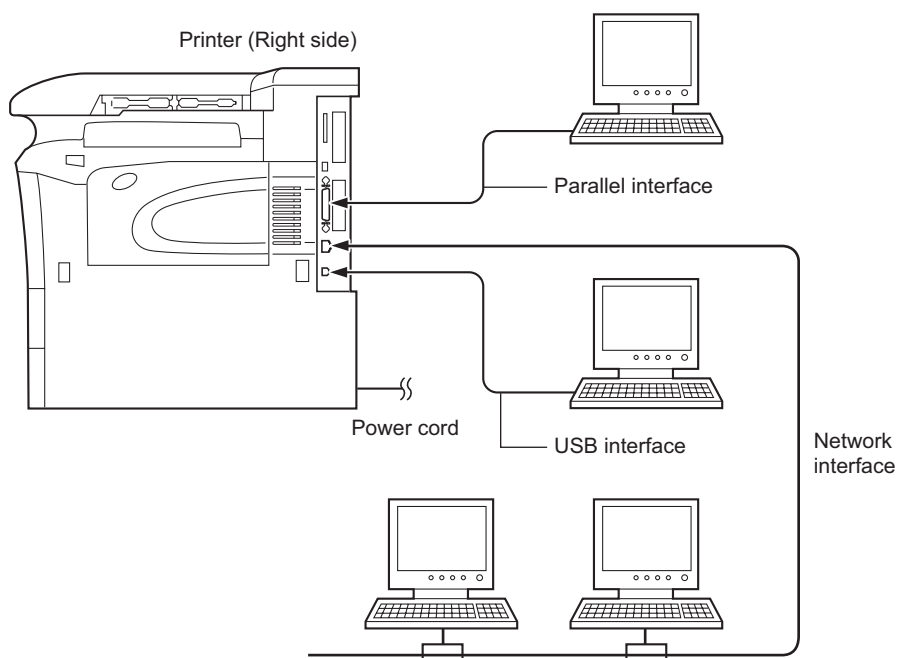
1. Install the waste toner box in the machine.
2. Close the front cover.



**Figure 1-2-11**

### Connecting the printer to the computer.

1. There are various ways of connecting the printer to the computer, such as through the parallel interface connector, USB interface connector, or through the network interface connector.



**Figure 1-2-12**

Connect the power cord.

1. Connect the power cord to the connector at the rear side of the machine.
2. Insert the power plug into the wall outlet.

Printing a status page.

1. Turn the main switch on and the toner is supplied to the development unit for approximately 8 minutes.
2. Press MENU key.
3. Display [Print Status page] using cursor up/down keys.
4. Press the OK key twice. A status page is printed.

Completion of the machine installation.



### 1-2-3 Installing the network interface card (option)

#### Procedure

1. Remove two screws and remove the interface slot cover (OPT).

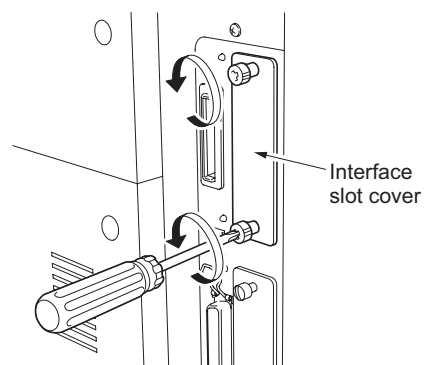


Figure 1-2-13

2. Insert the network interface card and secure it with the screws removed in step 1.

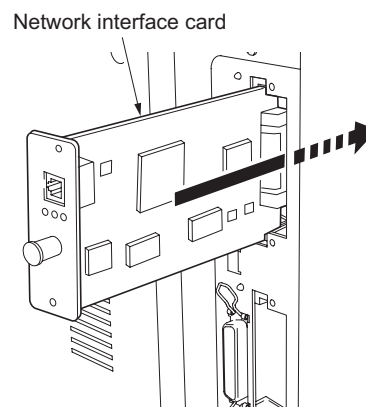


Figure 1-2-14

3. Connect the network cable.

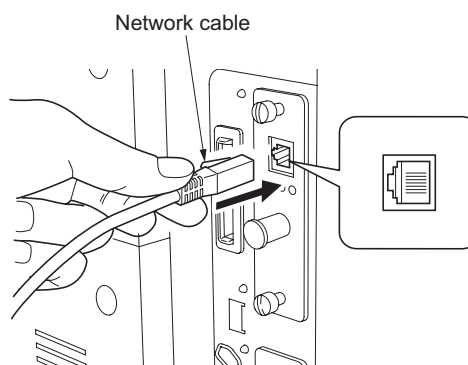


Figure 1-2-15

#### 1-2-4 Installing the hard disk unit (option)

##### Procedure

1. Remove two screws and remove the slot cover (HDD).

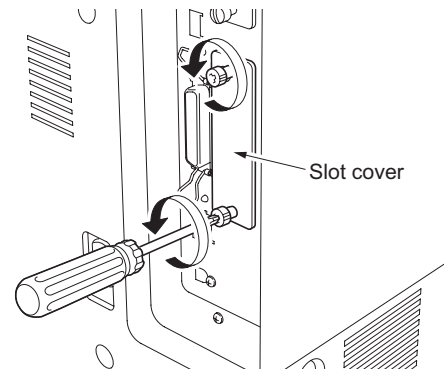


Figure 1-2-16

2. Insert the hard disk unit into the slot.

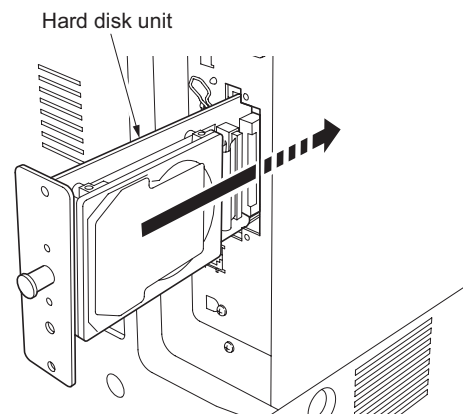


Figure 1-2-17

3. Tighten two screws to secure the hard disk unit.

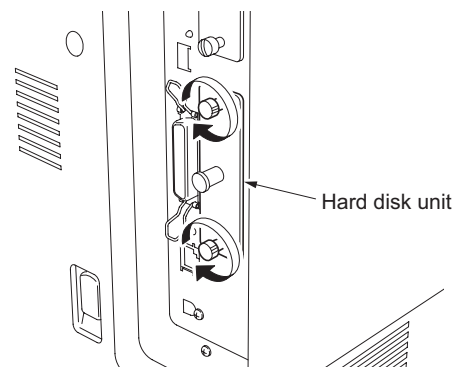


Figure 1-2-18

### 1-2-5 Installing the CompactFlash card (option)

#### Procedure

1. Turn the main switch off.  
Note: Do not insert or remove a CF card while power is on. If the CF card is removed while the machine is on, damage could result in the machine's electronics or the CF card.
2. Insert the CF card in the slot. Insert it as its label surface facing toward outside, connector end first. Push it in all the way.

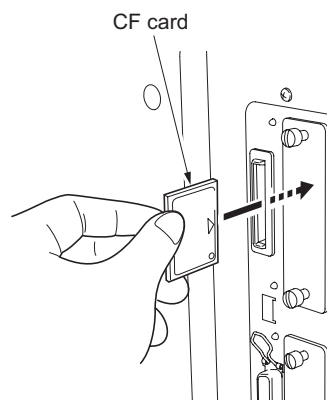


Figure 1-2-19

### 1-2-6 Installing the USB memory (option)

#### Procedure

1. Insert the USB memory in the USB memory slot.

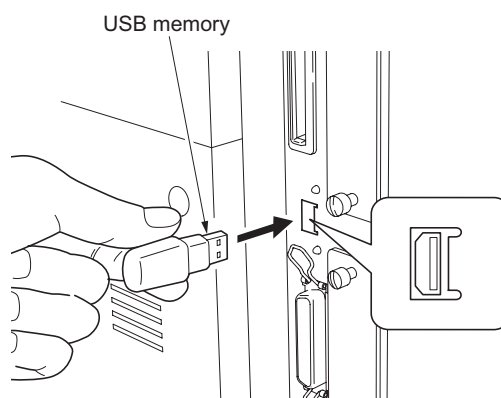


Figure 1-2-20

### 1-2-7 Installing the expansion memory (option)

#### Procedure

1. Remove the screw at the rear side of the machine and remove the memory slot cover.

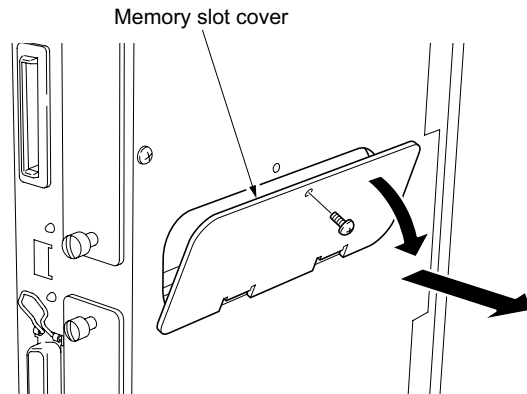


Figure 1-2-21

2. Open the clips on both ends of the DIMM socket.
3. Insert the DIMM into the socket, so that the notches on the DIMM align with the corresponding protrusions in the socket.
4. Close the clips of the DIMM socket to secure the DIMM.
5. Refit the memory slot cover.

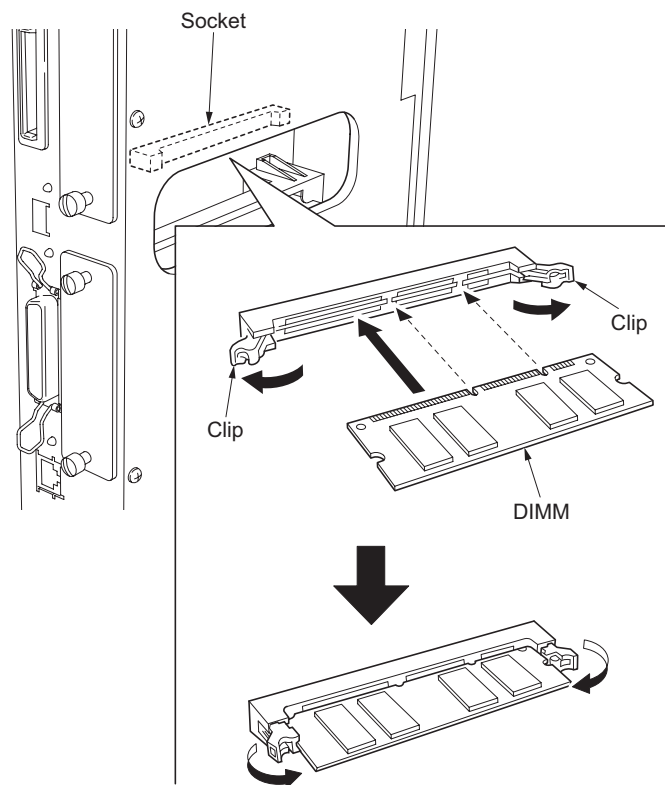


Figure 1-2-22

## 1-3-1 Maintenance mode

### (1) Maintenance mode

The printer is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

To run the maintenance mode, Insert a compact flash card to which the maintenance program has been written into the printer and load the maintenance mode program to the printer using either method.

\* Turn off and on the printer. The maintenance program will be automatically loaded into the printer.

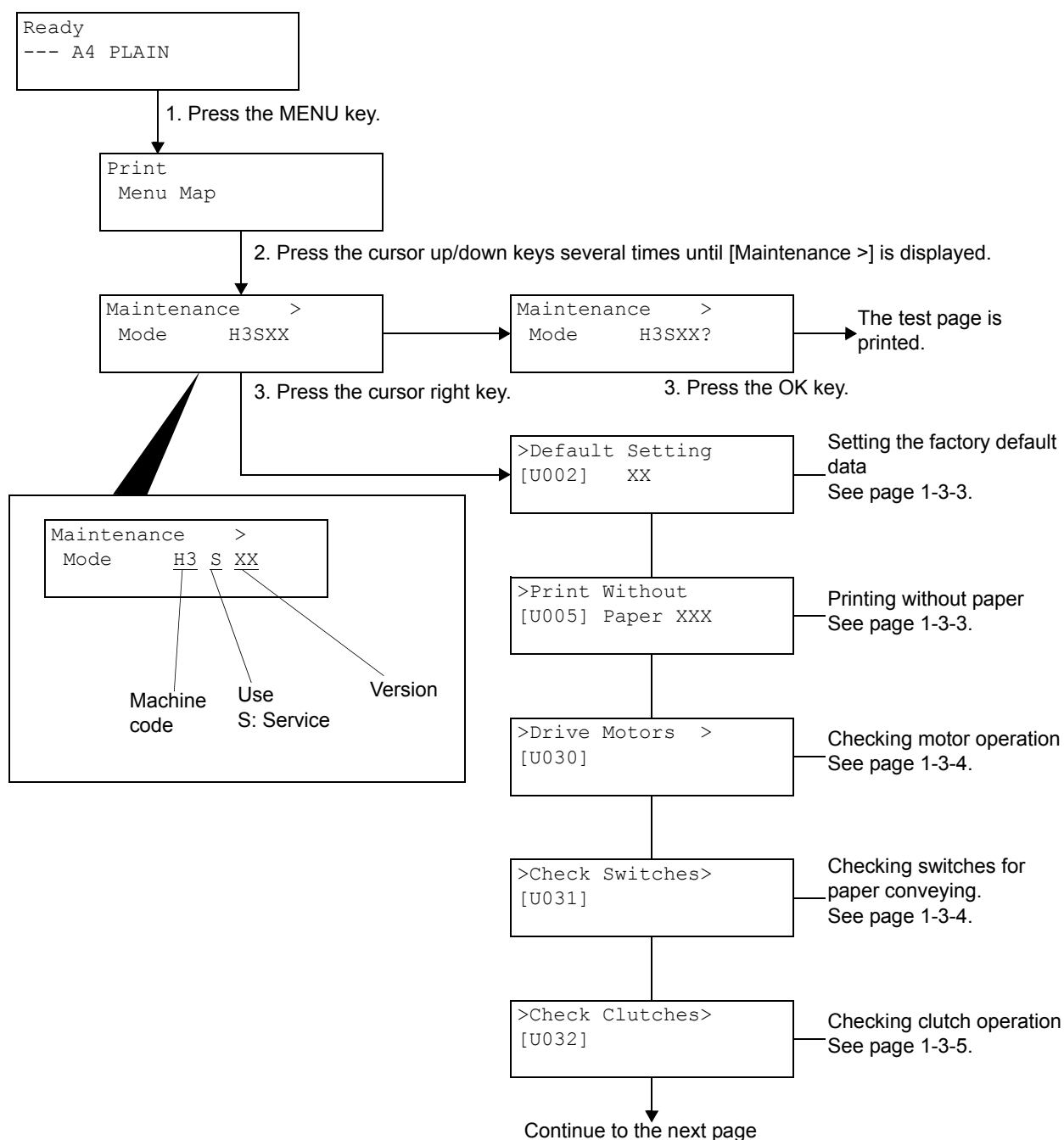
\* Load the maintenance mode program with read program.

\* Enter the MENU mode and display [>>Maintenance] in the [Memory Card>], then press the OK key.

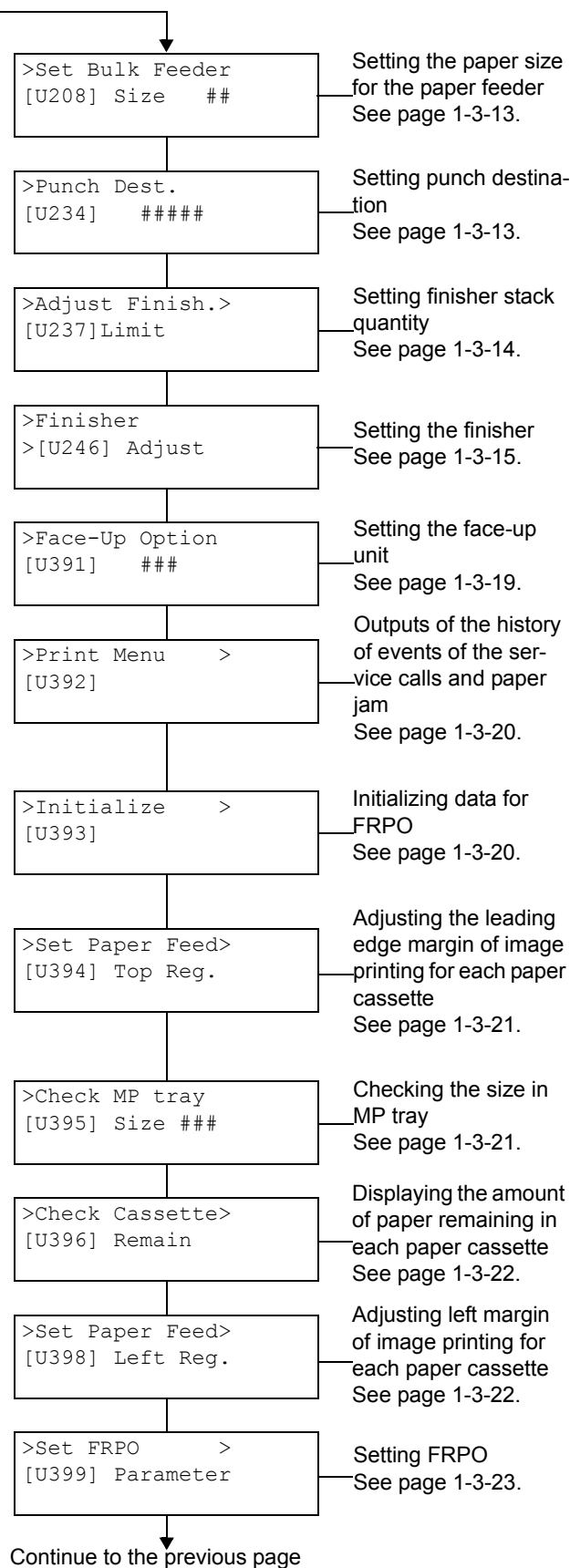
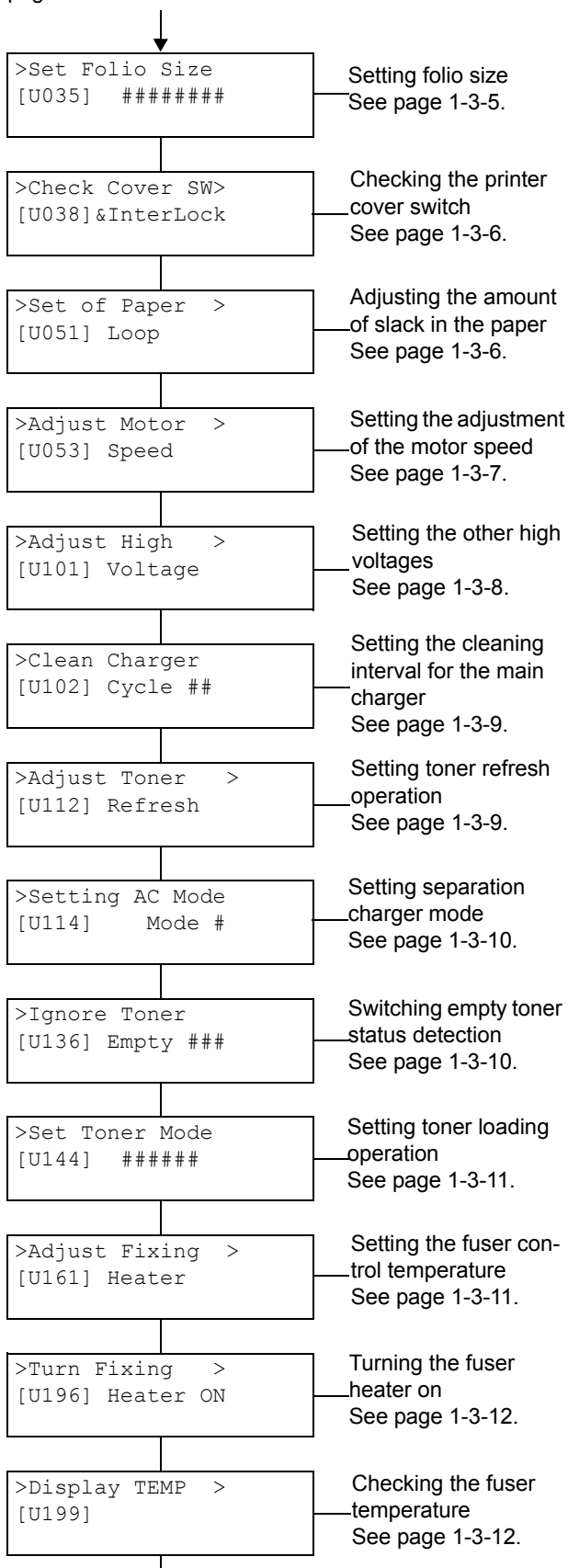
The maintenance mode can be executed from the MENU mode.

If the compact flash card is removed from the printer and then the printer is turned off and on, the maintenance mode program will be deleted from the printer and the maintenance mode will be deleted from the MENU mode.

### (2) Executing a maintenance item



Continue from the previous page



Continue to the previous page

## (3) Contents of maintenance mode items

Maintenance item No.	Description
U002	<p><b>Setting the factory default data</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Restore the machine conditions to the factory default settings.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To return the machine settings to initial settings.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U002].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>&gt;Default Setting [U002] ? JP</pre> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select [JP], [US], [EU] or [AP].</li> <li>4. Press the OK key. Each setting will be initialized. To keep the setting, press the CANCEL key.</li> <li>5. Turn the main switch off and on.</li> </ol>
U005	<p><b>Printing without paper</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Switches to the machine operation control without paper</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the overall operation of the machine.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U005].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>&gt;Print Without [U005] Paper?Off</pre> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to turn [On] or [Off] printing without paper. Initial setting: Off</li> <li>4. Press the OK key. The setting is set. To keep the setting, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
<b>U030</b>	<p><b>Checking motor operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Drives each motor.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each motor.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U030].  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;Drive Motors &gt; [U030] </div> </li> <li>Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</li> <li>Press the cursor up/down keys to select the motor to activate.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Submenu display</th><th style="text-align: left;">Motor</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;FEED Motor</td><td>Paper feed motor (PFM)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;MAIN Motor</td><td>Drive motor (DM)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;EJECT MT (FW)</td><td>Eject motor (EM) rotates forward</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;EJECT MT (REW)</td><td>Eject motor (EM) rotates in reverse</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the OK key. [Execute] will be displayed and operation will start.  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;&gt;FEED Motor [030.1] </div> </li> <li>To stop operation, press the OK key or the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>	Submenu display	Motor	>>FEED Motor	Paper feed motor (PFM)	>>MAIN Motor	Drive motor (DM)	>>EJECT MT (FW)	Eject motor (EM) rotates forward	>>EJECT MT (REW)	Eject motor (EM) rotates in reverse								
Submenu display	Motor																		
>>FEED Motor	Paper feed motor (PFM)																		
>>MAIN Motor	Drive motor (DM)																		
>>EJECT MT (FW)	Eject motor (EM) rotates forward																		
>>EJECT MT (REW)	Eject motor (EM) rotates in reverse																		
<b>U031</b>	<p><b>Checking switches for paper conveying</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the on-off status of each paper detection switch on the paper path.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check if the switches for paper conveying operate correctly.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U031].  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;Check Switches&gt; [U031] </div> </li> <li>Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</li> <li>Press the cursor up/down keys to select the switch to check.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Submenu display</th><th style="text-align: left;">Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;Check SW F1</td><td>Feed switch 1 (FSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SW F2</td><td>Feed switch 2 (FSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;Check SW F3</td><td>Feed switch 3 (FSW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SW MP</td><td>MP feed switch (MPFSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;Check SW RES</td><td>Registration switch (RSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SW EJE</td><td>Eject switch (ESW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;Check SW BRA</td><td>Feedshift switch (FSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SW DUP</td><td>Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn on or off the switch manually to check the switch status. 0: Off 1: On  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;&gt;Check SW F1 :1 [031.1] SW F2 :1 </div> </li> </ol>	Submenu display	Switches	>>Check SW F1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)	SW F2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)	>>Check SW F3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)	SW MP	MP feed switch (MPFSW)	>>Check SW RES	Registration switch (RSW)	SW EJE	Eject switch (ESW)	>>Check SW BRA	Feedshift switch (FSSW)	SW DUP	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)
Submenu display	Switches																		
>>Check SW F1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)																		
SW F2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)																		
>>Check SW F3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)																		
SW MP	MP feed switch (MPFSW)																		
>>Check SW RES	Registration switch (RSW)																		
SW EJE	Eject switch (ESW)																		
>>Check SW BRA	Feedshift switch (FSSW)																		
SW DUP	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)																		



Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U032	<p><b>Checking clutch operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns each clutch on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each clutch.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U032].  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;Check Clutches&gt; [U032] </div> </li> <li>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the clutch to operate.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Submenu display</th><th>Clutches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;PF1 Clutch</td><td>Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;PF2 Clutch</td><td>Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;PFMP Clutch</td><td>MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;FEED1 Clutch</td><td>Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;FEED2 Clutch</td><td>Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;FEED3 Clutch</td><td>Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;MPTF Clutch</td><td>MP feed clutch (MPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;RES Clutch</td><td>Registration clutch (RCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;DUPF Clutch</td><td>Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key. [Execute] will be displayed and operation will start.  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;&gt;PF1 Clutch [032.1] Execute </div> </li> <li>5. To stop operation, press the OK key or the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>	Submenu display	Clutches	>>PF1 Clutch	Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)	>>PF2 Clutch	Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)	>>PFMP Clutch	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)	>>FEED1 Clutch	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)	>>FEED2 Clutch	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)	>>FEED3 Clutch	Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)	>>MPTF Clutch	MP feed clutch (MPFCL)	>>RES Clutch	Registration clutch (RCL)	>>DUPF Clutch	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)
Submenu display	Clutches																				
>>PF1 Clutch	Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)																				
>>PF2 Clutch	Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)																				
>>PFMP Clutch	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)																				
>>FEED1 Clutch	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)																				
>>FEED2 Clutch	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)																				
>>FEED3 Clutch	Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)																				
>>MPTF Clutch	MP feed clutch (MPFCL)																				
>>RES Clutch	Registration clutch (RCL)																				
>>DUPF Clutch	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)																				
U035	<p><b>Setting folio size</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the type of paper when using Folio or Oficioll.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To prevent image loss that occurs depending on the difference of paper type.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U035].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select folio or oficioll.</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;Set Folio Size [035] ?Folio </div> <p>Initial setting: Folio</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key. The setting is set. To keep the setting, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U038	<p><b>Checking the printer cover switch</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the on-off status of each cover switch.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check if the switches of covers operate correctly.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U038].</p> <div><pre>&gt;Check Cover SW&gt; [038]&amp;InterLock</pre></div> <p>2. Press the cursor left key to display the submenu screen.</p> <p>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the switch to check.</p> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Switches</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Left Cover 1</td><td>Left cover 1 switch (LC1SW)</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>Left cover 2 switch (LC2SW)</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Front Cover</td><td>Front cover switch (FRCSW)</td></tr><tr><td>Int.Lck</td><td>Safety switch 1,2 (SSW1,2)</td></tr></table> <p>4. Open and close the cover to check the switch status. 0: Off 1: On</p> <div><pre>&gt;&gt;Left Cover 1:1 [038.1] 2:1</pre></div>	Submenu display	Switches	>>Left Cover 1	Left cover 1 switch (LC1SW)	2	Left cover 2 switch (LC2SW)	>>Front Cover	Front cover switch (FRCSW)	Int.Lck	Safety switch 1,2 (SSW1,2)										
Submenu display	Switches																				
>>Left Cover 1	Left cover 1 switch (LC1SW)																				
2	Left cover 2 switch (LC2SW)																				
>>Front Cover	Front cover switch (FRCSW)																				
Int.Lck	Safety switch 1,2 (SSW1,2)																				
U051	<p><b>Adjusting the amount of slack in the paper</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the amount of slack in the paper.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if the leading edge of the print image is missing or varies randomly, or if the print paper is Z-folded.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U051].</p> <div><pre>&gt;Set of Paper &gt; [U051] Loop</pre></div> <p>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</p> <p>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item for which the preset value is to be changed.</p> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;RES FEEDER</td><td>Paper feed from cassette</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;RES MPT</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;RES DUP</td><td>Duplex mode (second)</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;RES MPT (THICK)</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray using thick paper</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</p> <div><pre>&gt;&gt;RES FEEDER [051.1] ##</pre></div> <p>5. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. The greater the value, the larger the amount of slack; the smaller the value, the smaller the amount of slack.</p> <p>6. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</p>	Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	>>RES FEEDER	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0	>>RES MPT	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	>>RES DUP	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0	>>RES MPT (THICK)	Paper feed from MP tray using thick paper	-30 to 20	0
Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																		
>>RES FEEDER	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0																		
>>RES MPT	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0																		
>>RES DUP	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0																		
>>RES MPT (THICK)	Paper feed from MP tray using thick paper	-30 to 20	0																		

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U053	<p><b>Setting the adjustment of the motor speed</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Performs fine adjustment of the speeds of the motors.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To adjust the speed of the respective motors when the magnification is not correct.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U053].</p> <div><pre>&gt;Adjust Motor  &gt; [U053] Speed</pre></div> <p>2. Press the cursor left key to display the submenu screen.</p> <p>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select an item for which the preset value is to be changed.</p> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Main Motor</td><td>Drive motor speed adjustment</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Eject Motor</td><td>Eject motor speed adjustment</td><td>-7 to 15</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Polygon Motor</td><td>Polygon motor speed adjustment</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</p> <div><pre>&gt;&gt;Main Motor [053.1]      ##</pre></div> <p>5. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value.</p> <p>MAIN MOTOR Increasing the setting makes the image longer in the auxiliary scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image shorter in the auxiliary scanning direction.</p> <p>POLYGON MOTOR Increasing the setting makes the image longer in the main scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image shorter in the main scanning direction.</p> <p>EJECT MOTOR Normally no change is necessary but this can be used as countermeasures against wrinkles (waving) of paper.</p> <p>6. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</p>	Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	>>Main Motor	Drive motor speed adjustment	-40 to 40	0	>>Eject Motor	Eject motor speed adjustment	-7 to 15	0	>>Polygon Motor	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-20 to 20	0
Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting														
>>Main Motor	Drive motor speed adjustment	-40 to 40	0														
>>Eject Motor	Eject motor speed adjustment	-7 to 15	0														
>>Polygon Motor	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-20 to 20	0														

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U101	<p><b>Setting the other high voltages</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the developing bias control voltage, the transfer control voltage, and the separation control voltage or checks the output of these voltages.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the developing bias, the transfer voltage and the separation voltage or to take measures against drop of image density or background fog.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U101].</p> <div><div>&gt;Adjust High &gt; [U101] Voltage</div></div> <p>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</p> <p>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select an item for which the preset value is to be changed.</p> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;DEV BIAS</td><td>Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation</td><td>20 to 32</td><td>28</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;DEV SBIAS</td><td>Developing shift bias potential at image formation</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;DEV DUTY</td><td>Developing bias AC component duty at image formation</td><td>0 to 100</td><td>50</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;TC DATA</td><td>Transfer control voltage</td><td>0 to 300</td><td>130</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;SC DATA</td><td>Separation control voltage</td><td>0 to 60</td><td>20</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the DEV BIAS setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter. Increasing the DEV SBIAS setting makes the image darker. Increasing the DEV DUTY setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker. Increasing the TC DATA setting makes the transfer voltage higher, and decreasing it makes the voltage lower. Increasing the SC DATA setting makes the separation voltage higher, and decreasing it makes the voltage lower.</p> <p>4. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</p> <div><div>&gt;&gt;DEV BIAS [101.1]      ##</div></div> <p>5. Press the cursor left/right keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value.</p> <p>6. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</p>	Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	>>DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	20 to 32	28	>>DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	0 to 3	0	>>DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	0 to 100	50	>>TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 300	130	>>SC DATA	Separation control voltage	0 to 60	20
Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																						
>>DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	20 to 32	28																						
>>DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	0 to 3	0																						
>>DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	0 to 100	50																						
>>TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 300	130																						
>>SC DATA	Separation control voltage	0 to 60	20																						

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U102	<p><b>Setting the cleaning interval for the main charger</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the intervals at which the main charger is cleaned.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when the background is visible.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <div><div>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U102].</div><div>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</div><div><div>&gt;Clean Charger [U102] Cycle ? 05</div></div><div>3. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Main charger cleaning operation intervals</td><td>00 to 20 (unit: 1000 pages)</td><td>5</td></tr></table> <div>When set to 0, the cleaning for the main charger is not operated.</div> <div><div>4. Press the OK key. Each setting will be initialized.</div><div>To keep the setting, press the CANCEL key.</div></div>			Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Main charger cleaning operation intervals	00 to 20 (unit: 1000 pages)	5						
Description	Setting range	Initial setting													
Main charger cleaning operation intervals	00 to 20 (unit: 1000 pages)	5													
U112	<p><b>Setting toner refresh operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the toner refresh operation time and the developing bias on time at power on and after printing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the toner refresh operation time and the developing bias on time at power on and after printing if image flow level is low.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <div><div>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U112].</div><div><div>&gt;Adjust Toner &gt; [U112] Refresh</div></div><div>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</div><div>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select an item for which the preset value is to be changed.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;ON TIME</td><td>Toner refresh operation time</td><td>50 to 150 (sec)</td><td>120</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;BIAS TIME</td><td>Developing bias on time</td><td>500 to 1000 (msec)</td><td>540</td></tr></table> <div><div>4. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</div><div><div>&gt;&gt;ON TIME [112.1] ###Sec.</div></div><div>5. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value.</div><div>6. Press the OK key. The value is set.</div><div>To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</div></div>			Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	>>ON TIME	Toner refresh operation time	50 to 150 (sec)	120	>>BIAS TIME	Developing bias on time	500 to 1000 (msec)	540
Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting												
>>ON TIME	Toner refresh operation time	50 to 150 (sec)	120												
>>BIAS TIME	Developing bias on time	500 to 1000 (msec)	540												

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U114	<p><b>Setting separation charger mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the separation charger mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> If the fuser offset occurs, change the setting.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U114].</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>&gt;Setting AC Mode [U114]      Mode 1</pre> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the mode.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th><th style="text-align: left;">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MODE0</td><td>Full page separation for both first and second pages</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE1</td><td>First page: Separation on leading and trailing edges Second page: Full page separation</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE2</td><td>Full page separation is activated for both first and second pages provided the ambient temperature is less than 19°C/66.2°F. First page: Separation is activated for both leading and trailing edges, second page: Full page separation, provided the ambient temperature is more than 20°C/68°F.</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE3</td><td>Separation is activated on both leading and trailing edges for both first and second pages.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE3</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key. The setting is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	MODE0	Full page separation for both first and second pages	MODE1	First page: Separation on leading and trailing edges Second page: Full page separation	MODE2	Full page separation is activated for both first and second pages provided the ambient temperature is less than 19°C/66.2°F. First page: Separation is activated for both leading and trailing edges, second page: Full page separation, provided the ambient temperature is more than 20°C/68°F.	MODE3	Separation is activated on both leading and trailing edges for both first and second pages.
Display	Description										
MODE0	Full page separation for both first and second pages										
MODE1	First page: Separation on leading and trailing edges Second page: Full page separation										
MODE2	Full page separation is activated for both first and second pages provided the ambient temperature is less than 19°C/66.2°F. First page: Separation is activated for both leading and trailing edges, second page: Full page separation, provided the ambient temperature is more than 20°C/68°F.										
MODE3	Separation is activated on both leading and trailing edges for both first and second pages.										
U136	<p><b>Switching empty toner status detection</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether empty toner status detection is performed when the amount of toner remaining in the toner container is small.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> If this item is set to ON, when the amount of toner remaining in the toner container is small, printing can be continued using the toner in the developer unit.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U136].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to turn on or off empty toner status detection.</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>&gt;Ignore Toner [U136] Empty?Off</pre> </div> <p>Initial setting: Off</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key. The setting is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>										

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U144	<p><b>Setting toner loading operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets toner loading operation after completion of printing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set whether or not toner is loaded on the drum after low density printing. Normally no change is necessary from the initial setting.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U144].</p> <div><pre>&gt;Set Toner Mode [U144] Mode 2</pre></div> <p>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</p> <p>3. Select the item to be set using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Mode 0</td><td>Toner not loaded</td></tr><tr><td>Mode 1</td><td>Toner loaded after simplex or duplex printing</td></tr><tr><td>Mode 2</td><td>Toner loaded after simplex printing</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: Mode 2</p> <p>4. Press the OK key. The setting is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</p>	Display	Description	Mode 0	Toner not loaded	Mode 1	Toner loaded after simplex or duplex printing	Mode 2	Toner loaded after simplex printing								
Display	Description																
Mode 0	Toner not loaded																
Mode 1	Toner loaded after simplex or duplex printing																
Mode 2	Toner loaded after simplex printing																
U161	<p><b>Setting the fuser control temperature</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the fuser control temperature.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Normally no change is necessary. However, can be used to prevent curling or creasing of paper, or solve a fuser problem on thick paper.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U161].</p> <div><pre>&gt;Adjust Fixing &gt; [U161] Heater</pre></div> <p>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</p> <p>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item for which the preset value is to be changed.</p> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Drive St. TEMP</td><td>Driving start temperature when warm-up starts</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>185</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Ready TEMP (C)</td><td>Control temperature for displaying [Ready for printing.]</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>200</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Print TEMP (C)</td><td>Control temperature during printing</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>200</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</p> <div><pre>&gt;&gt;Drive St. TEMP [161.1]   ###</pre></div> <p>5. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value.</p> <p>6. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</p>	Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	>>Drive St. TEMP	Driving start temperature when warm-up starts	0 to 255 (°C)	185	>>Ready TEMP (C)	Control temperature for displaying [Ready for printing.]	0 to 255 (°C)	200	>>Print TEMP (C)	Control temperature during printing	0 to 255 (°C)	200
Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting														
>>Drive St. TEMP	Driving start temperature when warm-up starts	0 to 255 (°C)	185														
>>Ready TEMP (C)	Control temperature for displaying [Ready for printing.]	0 to 255 (°C)	200														
>>Print TEMP (C)	Control temperature during printing	0 to 255 (°C)	200														

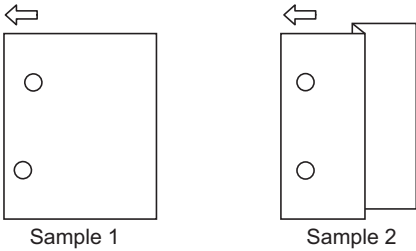
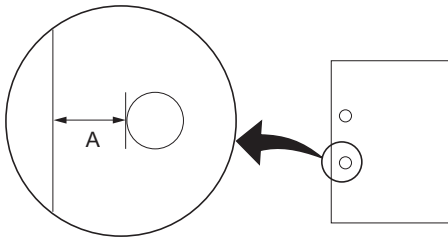
Maintenance item No.	Description										
<b>U196</b>	<p><b>Turning the fuser heater on</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns the fuser heater M or S on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check fuser heaters turning on.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U196].  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;">           &gt;Turn Fixing &gt;            [U196] Heater ON         </div> </li> <li>Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</li> <li>Press the cursor up/down keys to select the heater to turn on.  <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Submenu display</th><th style="text-align: left;">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;Main Heater ON</td><td>Fuser heater M (FH-M)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;Sub Heater ON</td><td>Fuser heater S (FH-S)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> </li> <li>Press the OK key. [Execute] will be displayed and the heater will be turned on for three seconds.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note</b> Do not open or close the cover when the heater is on. Either do not turn on the heater continuously.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;">       &gt;&gt;Main Heater ON        [196.1] Execute     </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To turn off the heater, press the OK key or the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>	Submenu display	Description	>>Main Heater ON	Fuser heater M (FH-M)	>>Sub Heater ON	Fuser heater S (FH-S)				
Submenu display	Description										
>>Main Heater ON	Fuser heater M (FH-M)										
>>Sub Heater ON	Fuser heater S (FH-S)										
<b>U199</b>	<p><b>Checking the fuser temperature</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the fuser temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the fuser temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U199].  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;">           &gt;Display TEMP &gt;            [U199]         </div> </li> <li>Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;">           &gt;&gt;FIX CENT. TEMP            [U199.1] ###         </div> </li> <li>Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item to check.  <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Submenu display</th><th style="text-align: left;">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;FIX CENT. TEMP</td><td>Fuser center temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;FIX EDGE TEMP</td><td>Fuser edge temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;SURROUND TEMP</td><td>Ambient temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;HUMIDITY</td><td>Absolute humidity (%)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> </li> </ol>	Submenu display	Description	>>FIX CENT. TEMP	Fuser center temperature (°C)	>>FIX EDGE TEMP	Fuser edge temperature (°C)	>>SURROUND TEMP	Ambient temperature (°C)	>>HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)
Submenu display	Description										
>>FIX CENT. TEMP	Fuser center temperature (°C)										
>>FIX EDGE TEMP	Fuser edge temperature (°C)										
>>SURROUND TEMP	Ambient temperature (°C)										
>>HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)										



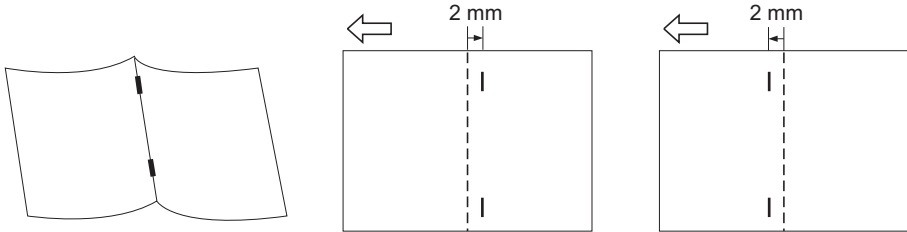
Maintenance item No.	Description										
U208	<p><b>Setting the paper size for the paper feeder</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the size of paper used in optional 3000-sheet paper feeder.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when the size of paper used in the paper feeder is changed.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U208].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">         &gt;Set Bulk Feeder          [U208] Size ? A4       </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to change the setting.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th><th style="text-align: left;">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A4</td><td>A4 size</td></tr> <tr> <td>B5</td><td>B5 size</td></tr> <tr> <td>LT</td><td>Letter size</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key. The setting is set. To keep the setting, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	A4	A4 size	B5	B5 size	LT	Letter size		
Display	Description										
A4	A4 size										
B5	B5 size										
LT	Letter size										
U234	<p><b>Setting punch destination</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the destination of optional punch unit of document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set when installing a different punch unit from the destination of the machine.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U234].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">         &gt;Punch Dest.          [U234] ? Nothing       </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to change the setting.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th><th style="text-align: left;">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Nothing</td><td>With no punch unit</td></tr> <tr> <td>Japan</td><td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>Inch</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>Europe</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: Nothing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key. The setting is set. To keep the setting, press the CANCEL key.</li> <li>5. Turn the main switch off and on.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	Nothing	With no punch unit	Japan	Metric (Japan) specifications	Inch	Inch (North America) specifications	Europe	Metric (Europe) specifications
Display	Description										
Nothing	With no punch unit										
Japan	Metric (Japan) specifications										
Inch	Inch (North America) specifications										
Europe	Metric (Europe) specifications										

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U237	<p><b>Setting finisher stack quantity</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the number of sheets of each stack on the main tray and on the internal tray in the optional finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when a stack malfunction has occurred.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U237].</p> <div><div>&gt;Adjust Finish.&gt; [U237]Limit</div></div> <p>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</p> <p>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item for which the preset value is to be changed.</p> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Main Tray</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray</td><td>3000/1500</td><td>3000</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Middle Tray</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort or staple printing</td><td>50/30</td><td>50</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will blink.</p> <div><div>&gt;&gt;Main Tray [237.1] ? 3000</div></div> <p>5. Press the cursor up/down keys to change the setting.</p> <p>6. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the setting, press the CANCEL key.</p> <p>7. Turn the main switch off and on.</p>	Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	>>Main Tray	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray	3000/1500	3000	>>Middle Tray	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort or staple printing	50/30	50
Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting										
>>Main Tray	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray	3000/1500	3000										
>>Middle Tray	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort or staple printing	50/30	50										

Maintenance item No.	Description																														
U246	<p><b>Setting the finisher</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Provides various settings for the optional finisher, if furnished.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b></p> <p><b>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</b> Adjust if skewed paper conveying occurs or if the paper is Z-folded in punch mode.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of paper stop timing in the punch mode</b> To adjust this item when the position of a punch hole is different from the specified one.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of front/rear side registration home position of internal tray</b> Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the internal tray adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p><b>Adjusting of front and back/slanted stapling home position</b> Adjusts the stapling position in the staple mode if the position is not proper. Provides adjustment of slanted stapling.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position of centerfold unit</b> Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the centerfold adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of booklet stapling position</b> Adjusts the booklet stapling position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of center folding position</b> Adjusts the center folding position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U246].  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> &gt;Finisher  &gt;[U246] Adjust </div> </li> <li>Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Submenu display</th><th style="text-align: left;">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Punch Reg</td><td>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Punch Pos</td><td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Width F HP</td><td>Adjustment of front side registration home position</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Width R HP</td><td>Adjustment of rear side registration home position</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Staple HP</td><td>Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;T-Staple HP</td><td>Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Width U HP</td><td>Adjustment of upper side registration home position</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Width L HP</td><td>Adjustment of lower side registration home position</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Staple Pos 1</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/letter size</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Staple Pos 2</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/legal size</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Staple Pos 3</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/ledger size</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Booklet Pos 1</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4/letter size</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Booklet Pos 2</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4/legal size</td></tr> <tr><td>&gt;&gt;Booklet Pos 3</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3/ledger size</td></tr> </tbody> </table> </li> <li>Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item for which the preset value is to be changed.</li> </ol>	Submenu display	Description	>>Punch Reg	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode	>>Punch Pos	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode	>>Width F HP	Adjustment of front side registration home position	>>Width R HP	Adjustment of rear side registration home position	>>Staple HP	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	>>T-Staple HP	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	>>Width U HP	Adjustment of upper side registration home position	>>Width L HP	Adjustment of lower side registration home position	>>Staple Pos 1	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/letter size	>>Staple Pos 2	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/legal size	>>Staple Pos 3	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/ledger size	>>Booklet Pos 1	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/letter size	>>Booklet Pos 2	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/legal size	>>Booklet Pos 3	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/ledger size
Submenu display	Description																														
>>Punch Reg	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode																														
>>Punch Pos	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode																														
>>Width F HP	Adjustment of front side registration home position																														
>>Width R HP	Adjustment of rear side registration home position																														
>>Staple HP	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position																														
>>T-Staple HP	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position																														
>>Width U HP	Adjustment of upper side registration home position																														
>>Width L HP	Adjustment of lower side registration home position																														
>>Staple Pos 1	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/letter size																														
>>Staple Pos 2	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/legal size																														
>>Staple Pos 3	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/ledger size																														
>>Booklet Pos 1	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/letter size																														
>>Booklet Pos 2	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/legal size																														
>>Booklet Pos 3	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/ledger size																														

Maintenance item No.	Description
U246	<p><b>Setting: adjustment of registration stop timing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [&gt;&gt;Punch Reg].</li><li>2. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</li><li>3. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. Setting range: -20 to 20 Initial setting: 0 Change in value per step: 1ms If skewed paper conveying occurs (sample 1), increase the preset value. If the paper is Z-folded (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</li></ol> <div></div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-1</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li></ol> <p><b>Setting: adjustment of the paper stop timing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [&gt;&gt;Punch Pos].</li><li>2. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</li><li>3. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. Setting range: -10 to 10 Initial setting: 0 Change in value per step: 0.49mm If the distance of the position of a punch hole is smaller than the specified value A, increase the preset value. If the distance is larger than the value A, decrease the preset value.</li></ol> <div><p>Preset value A: 5.5 ± 2 mm (inch) 9.5 ± 2 mm (metric)</p></div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-2</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li></ol>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U246	<p><b>Setting: adjustment of front/rear side registration home position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [ &gt;&gt;Width F HP] or [ &gt;&gt;Width R HP].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. Setting range: -10 to 10 Initial setting: 0 Change in value per step: 0.31 ms</li> <li>4. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: adjustment of front and back stapling home position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [ &gt;&gt;Staple HP].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. Setting range: -10 to 10 Initial setting: 0 Change in value per step: 0.32 ms When staple positions are off toward the front side of the machine (sample 1), increase the preset value. When staple positions are off toward the rear side of the machine (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</li> </ol> <div> <p style="text-align: center;">Sample 1                      Sample 2</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-3</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: adjustment of slanted stapling home position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [ &gt;&gt;T-Staple HP].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. Setting range: -10 to 10 Initial setting: 0 Change in value per step: 0.99° To increase the angle for slanted stapling (sample 1), decrease the preset value. To decrease the angle for slanted stapling (sample 2), increase the preset value.</li> </ol> <div> <p style="text-align: center;">Sample 1                      Sample 2</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-4</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U246	<p><b>Setting: adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [&gt;&gt;Width U HP] or [&gt;&gt;Width L HP].</li><li>2. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</li><li>3. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. Adjustment of upper side registration home position Setting range: -20 to 20 Initial setting: 0 Change in value per step: 0.1 mm Adjustment of lower side registration home position Setting range: -46 to 46 Initial setting: 0 Change in value per step: 0.1 mm</li><li>4. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li></ol> <p><b>Setting: adjustment of booklet stapling position</b></p> <p>Make sure that the center folding position is correct after adjustment. If the position is not correct, execute the adjustment of center folding position.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [&gt;&gt;Staple Pos 1], [&gt;&gt;Staple Pos 2] or [&gt;&gt;Staple Pos 3].</li><li>2. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</li><li>3. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. Setting range: -10 to 10 Initial setting: 0 Change in value per step: 0.55 mm When staples are placed too far right (sample 1), decrease the preset value. When staples are placed too far left (sample 2), increase the preset value. Reference value: within <math>\pm 2</math> mm</li></ol> <div><p style="text-align: center;">Sample 1                      Sample 2</p></div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-5</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li></ol>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U246	<p><b>Setting: adjustment of center folding position</b></p> <p>Check the booklet stapling position is correct before adjusting the center folding position.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [ &gt;&gt;Booklet Pos 1], [ &gt;&gt;Booklet Pos 2] or [ &gt;&gt;Booklet Pos 3].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. Setting range: -10 to 10 Initial setting: 0 Change in value per step: 0.55 mm When the centerfold position too far right (sample 1), increase the preset value. When the centerfold position too far left (sample 2), decrease the setting value. Reference value: within <math>\pm 3</math> mm</li> </ol> <div> <p>The diagram consists of three parts. The first part, labeled 'Center line', shows a booklet with a vertical dashed line in the center. The second part, labeled 'Sample 1', shows a booklet where the center fold is shifted to the right, with a horizontal arrow and '3 mm' indicating the deviation. The third part, labeled 'Sample 2', shows a booklet where the center fold is shifted to the left, with a horizontal arrow and '3 mm' indicating the deviation.</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-6</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>
U391	<p><b>Setting the face-up unit</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether or not to perform face-up output through the optional face-up unit.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set this mode for special users who install only the face-up unit to perform face-up output. For users who use both the finisher and the face-up unit, do not set this mode.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U391].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>&gt;Face-Up Option [U391] ? Off</pre> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item. Initial setting: Off</li> <li>4. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>

Maintenance item No.	Description						
<b>U392</b>	<p><b>Outputs of the history of events of the service calls and paper jam</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Outputs the history of events conditions of the service calls and paper jam.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the event conditions of the service calls and paper jam.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U392].  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;Print Menu     &gt;  [U392] </div> </li> <li>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</li> <li>3. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;&gt;Print Event  [392.1] Log? </div> </li> <li>4. Press the OK key. History output starts. If it will not start, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>						
<b>U393</b>	<p><b>Initializing data for FRPO</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Initializes each preset value of FRPO or NVRAM.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To reset each preset value of FRPO to the initial values or setting NVRAM for the factory default.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U393].  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;Initialize     &gt;  [U393] </div> </li> <li>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item.  <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Submenu display</th><th style="text-align: left;">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;FRPO INIT</td><td>Initializes value of FRPO.</td></tr> <tr> <td>&gt;&gt;NVRAM Reset</td><td>Resets the setting NVRAM for the factory default.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> </li> <li>4. Press the OK key. [ ? ] will be displayed.  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> &gt;FRPO INIT ?  [393.3] </div> </li> <li>5. Press the OK key. Each setting will be initialized. To keep the setting, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>	Submenu display	Description	>>FRPO INIT	Initializes value of FRPO.	>>NVRAM Reset	Resets the setting NVRAM for the factory default.
Submenu display	Description						
>>FRPO INIT	Initializes value of FRPO.						
>>NVRAM Reset	Resets the setting NVRAM for the factory default.						



Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U394	<p><b>Adjusting the leading edge margin of image printing for each paper cassette</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the leading edge margin of image printing for each paper cassette.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To adjust the leading edge margin if it is displaced depending on the paper cassette.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U394].</p> <div><div>&gt;Set Paper Feed&gt; [U394] Top Reg.</div></div> <p>2. Press the cursor right/left keys to display the submenu screen.</p> <p>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item for which the preset value is to be changed.</p> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 2</td><td>Leading edge margin for lower cassette of the printer</td><td>-128 to +127</td><td>10</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 3</td><td>Leading edge margin for upper cassette of optional paper feeder</td><td>-128 to +127</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 4</td><td>Leading edge margin for lower cassette of optional paper feeder</td><td>-128 to +127</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;MP</td><td>Leading edge margin for MP tray</td><td>-128 to +127</td><td>35</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Duplex</td><td>Leading edge margin for duplex printing</td><td>-128 to +127</td><td>5</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</p> <div><div>&gt;&gt;Cassette 2 [394.1]        ###</div></div> <p>5. Press the cursor up/down keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. If the preset value is increased, the margin will be larger. If the preset value is decreased, the margin will be smaller.</p> <p>6. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</p>	Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	>>Cassette 2	Leading edge margin for lower cassette of the printer	-128 to +127	10	>>Cassette 3	Leading edge margin for upper cassette of optional paper feeder	-128 to +127	0	>>Cassette 4	Leading edge margin for lower cassette of optional paper feeder	-128 to +127	0	>>MP	Leading edge margin for MP tray	-128 to +127	35	>>Duplex	Leading edge margin for duplex printing	-128 to +127	5
Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																						
>>Cassette 2	Leading edge margin for lower cassette of the printer	-128 to +127	10																						
>>Cassette 3	Leading edge margin for upper cassette of optional paper feeder	-128 to +127	0																						
>>Cassette 4	Leading edge margin for lower cassette of optional paper feeder	-128 to +127	0																						
>>MP	Leading edge margin for MP tray	-128 to +127	35																						
>>Duplex	Leading edge margin for duplex printing	-128 to +127	5																						
U395	<p><b>Checking the size in MP tray</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the size of paper set in the MP tray.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check to see if the size switch of the MP tray operates correctly.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U395]. The size of paper set in the MP tray will be displayed.</p> <div><div>&gt;Check MP tray [U395] Size ###</div></div> <table><tr><th>Paper size</th><th>Display</th><th>Paper size</th><th>Display</th></tr><tr><td>A3/Ledger</td><td>010</td><td>B4</td><td>011</td></tr><tr><td>A4R/Letter-R</td><td>008</td><td>B5R</td><td>009</td></tr><tr><td>A4/Letter</td><td>108</td><td>B5</td><td>109</td></tr><tr><td>A5</td><td>013</td><td>B6</td><td>015</td></tr><tr><td>A6</td><td>014</td><td>Folio/Legal</td><td>051</td></tr></table>	Paper size	Display	Paper size	Display	A3/Ledger	010	B4	011	A4R/Letter-R	008	B5R	009	A4/Letter	108	B5	109	A5	013	B6	015	A6	014	Folio/Legal	051
Paper size	Display	Paper size	Display																						
A3/Ledger	010	B4	011																						
A4R/Letter-R	008	B5R	009																						
A4/Letter	108	B5	109																						
A5	013	B6	015																						
A6	014	Folio/Legal	051																						

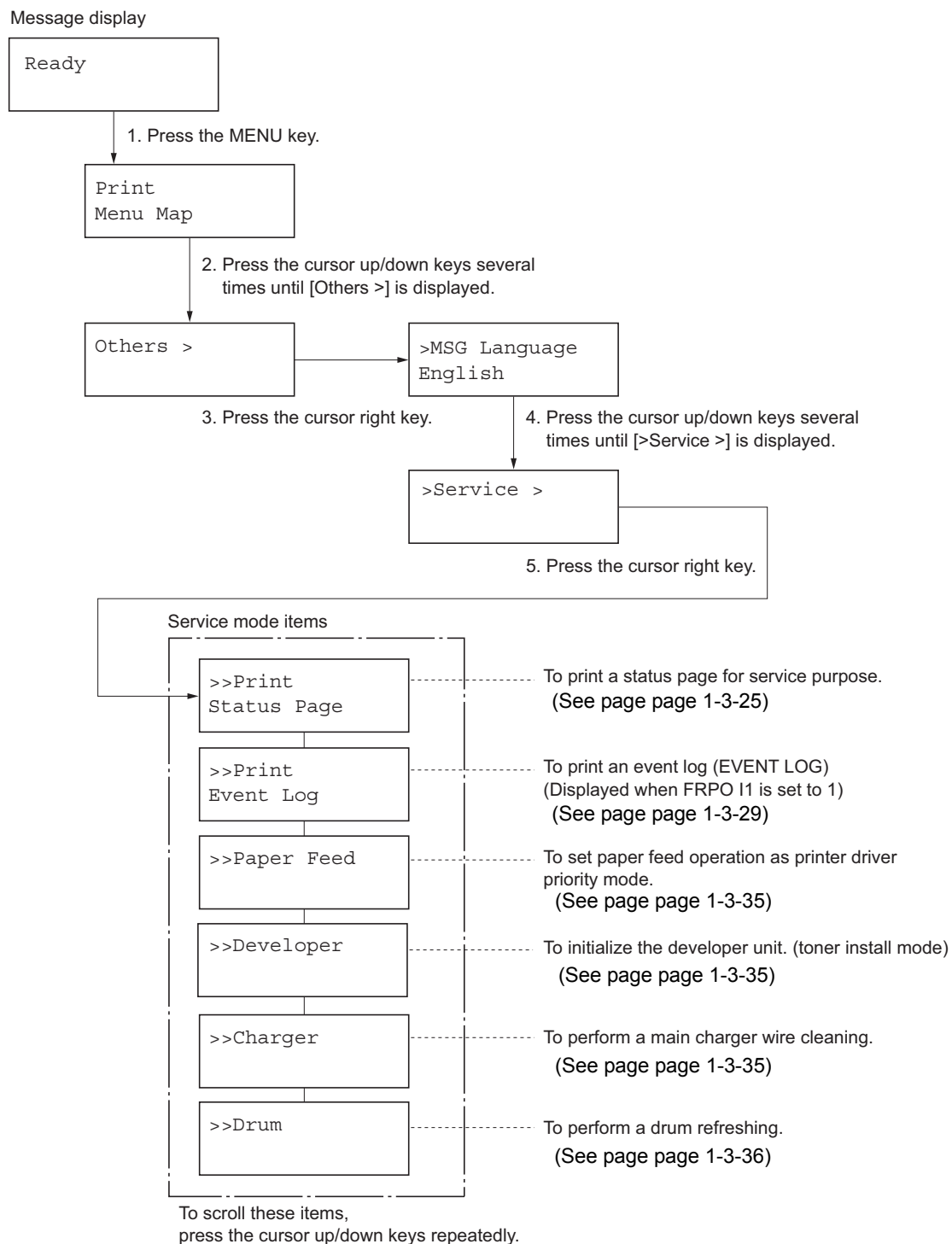
Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U396	<p><b>Displaying the amount of paper remaining in each paper cassette</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the amount of paper remaining in each paper cassette.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the amount of paper remaining in each paper cassette.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U396].</p> <div><pre>&gt;Check Cassette&gt; [U396] Remain</pre></div> <p>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</p> <p>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item to check.</p> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 1</td><td>Amount of paper remaining in cassette 1 (%)</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 2</td><td>Amount of paper remaining in cassette 2 (%)</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 3</td><td>Amount of paper remaining in optional cassette 3 (%)</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 4</td><td>Amount of paper remaining in optional cassette 4 (%)</td></tr></table> <div><pre>&gt;&gt;Cassette 1 [396.1]      ###%</pre></div> <p>Display range: 0 - 100% (0: no paper / 100: full)</p>	Submenu display	Description	>>Cassette 1	Amount of paper remaining in cassette 1 (%)	>>Cassette 2	Amount of paper remaining in cassette 2 (%)	>>Cassette 3	Amount of paper remaining in optional cassette 3 (%)	>>Cassette 4	Amount of paper remaining in optional cassette 4 (%)														
Submenu display	Description																								
>>Cassette 1	Amount of paper remaining in cassette 1 (%)																								
>>Cassette 2	Amount of paper remaining in cassette 2 (%)																								
>>Cassette 3	Amount of paper remaining in optional cassette 3 (%)																								
>>Cassette 4	Amount of paper remaining in optional cassette 4 (%)																								
U398	<p><b>Adjusting left margin of image printing for each paper cassette</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the left margin of image printing for each paper cassette.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To adjust the left margin if it is displaced depending on the paper cassette.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U398].</p> <div><pre>&gt;Set Paper Feed&gt; [U398] Left Reg.</pre></div> <p>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</p> <p>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item for which the preset value is to be changed.</p> <table><tr><th>Submenu display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 2</td><td>Left margin for cassette 2</td><td>-600 to +600</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 3</td><td>Left margin for optional cassette 3</td><td>-600 to +600</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Cassette 4</td><td>Left margin for optional cassette 4</td><td>-600 to +600</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;MP</td><td>Left margin for MP tray</td><td>-600 to +600</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>&gt;&gt;Duplex</td><td>Left margin for duplex printing</td><td>-600 to +600</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</p> <div><pre>&gt;&gt;Cassette 2 [398.1]      ###_</pre></div> <p>5. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value. If the preset value is increased, the margin will be larger. If the preset value is decreased, the margin will be smaller.</p> <p>6. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</p>	Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	>>Cassette 2	Left margin for cassette 2	-600 to +600	0	>>Cassette 3	Left margin for optional cassette 3	-600 to +600	0	>>Cassette 4	Left margin for optional cassette 4	-600 to +600	0	>>MP	Left margin for MP tray	-600 to +600	0	>>Duplex	Left margin for duplex printing	-600 to +600	0
Submenu display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																						
>>Cassette 2	Left margin for cassette 2	-600 to +600	0																						
>>Cassette 3	Left margin for optional cassette 3	-600 to +600	0																						
>>Cassette 4	Left margin for optional cassette 4	-600 to +600	0																						
>>MP	Left margin for MP tray	-600 to +600	0																						
>>Duplex	Left margin for duplex printing	-600 to +600	0																						

Maintenance item No.	Description
U399	<p><b>Setting FRPO</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Set the firmware again.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the preset values of firmware.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the maintenance mode and press the cursor up/down keys to display [U399].</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>&gt;Set FRPO      &gt; [U399] Parameter</pre> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the cursor right key to display the submenu screen.</li> <li>3. Press the cursor up/down keys to select the item for which the preset value is to be changed.</li> <li>4. Press the OK key. [ _ ] will blink.</li> </ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>&gt;&gt;FRPO  HO [399.1]</pre> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Press the cursor right/left keys to move [ _ ] to the digit position at which the value is to be changed and press the cursor up/down keys to change the preset value.</li> <li>6. Press the OK key. The value is set. To keep the preset value, press the CANCEL key.</li> </ol>

### 1-3-2 Service mode

The printer is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

#### (1) Executing a service item



**(2) Description of service mode**

Service items	Description
<div>&gt;&gt;Print Status Page</div>	<p><b>Printing a status page for service purpose</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Prints a status page for service purpose. The status page includes various printing settings and service cumulative.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To acquire the current printing environmental parameters and cumulative information.</p> <p><b>Procedure</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the service mode [&gt;&gt;Print Status Page].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [Print Status Page?] will be displayed.</li> <li>3. Press the OK key. Two pages will be printed. (The second page includes service information).</li> </ol>

Service information  
(Refer to next page)

Main PWB firmware version

Firmware release date

Figure 1-3-7 Service status page

Service items	Description												
	<div><div>Service information</div><div><div>Service information</div><div><div>[XXXXXXXX/XXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXX] [01/00]</div><div>Printed Page(s) 9690</div><div>① ② ③ ④ ⑤</div><div>/t/P00/S00/U00/F00/N00/D50:DM0301.DAN:0002001001210052</div><div>⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫</div><div>/0020/0020/1061/0811/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/</div><div>⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯</div><div>⑰/AAAAAA/AAAAAA/AAAAAA/</div><div>⑱/AAAAAA/AAAAAA/AAAAAA/</div><div>㉑/AAAAAA/</div><div>㉒/AAAAAA/</div><div>㉓/AAAAAA/AAAAAA/AAAAAA/</div><div>㉔/AAAAAA/AAAAAA/AAAAAA/AAAAAA/</div><div>㉕/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/</div><div>㉖/0000/</div><div>/RS2/FF/ [0003-0003] /81/31/50/0</div><div>㉗ ㉘ ㉙ ㉚ ㉛ ㉜ ㉝ ㉞</div><div>㉟00.00.00.00.00.00</div><div>㊱A:1234567890123456</div><div>㊲/03030303/03030303/03030303/03000000/00000000/03030303/03030303/</div><div>㊳SPD1:0203040508090A0B0C0D0F101112131415161718191A1B1C1D1E1F202122235E</div><div>㊴/00000000/00000000/00000000000000000000000000000000/00000000000000000000000000000000/0000/00/00</div><div>㊵/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/</div><div>/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/</div><div>/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/</div><div>/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/</div><div>DN:SPL9200007 SN:SPL9200010</div><div>㊶ ㊷</div></div></div></div>												
	<div>Detail of service information</div> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>No.</th><th>Items</th><th>Description</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>1</td><td>Engine ROM information</td><td>[Mask ROM version/Flash ROM version]</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>Operation panel ROM information</td><td>[Operation panel mask ROM version]</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>Boot ROM information</td><td>[Boot ROM version]</td></tr></tbody></table>	No.	Items	Description	1	Engine ROM information	[Mask ROM version/Flash ROM version]	2	Operation panel ROM information	[Operation panel mask ROM version]	3	Boot ROM information	[Boot ROM version]
No.	Items	Description											
1	Engine ROM information	[Mask ROM version/Flash ROM version]											
2	Operation panel ROM information	[Operation panel mask ROM version]											
3	Boot ROM information	[Boot ROM version]											

Service items		Description	
No.	Items	Description	
4	Software jumper switch information (hexadecimal)	[First byte/second byte] First byte bit 0 = 1: (Fixed) bit 1 = 0: Overseas, 1: Domestic (Japan) bit 2, 3 (Not used) bit 4 = 0: KC, 1: OEM bit 5 = 0: For Europe, 1: For US bit 6 = 0: Non MICR mode, 1: MICR mode bit 7 (Not used) Second byte: Displayed in OEM mode only.	
5	Total page	-	
6	Toner install information	-	
7	Parallel I/O information	-	
8	Serial information	00: Not connected bit0: Framing error	bit1: Overrun error bit2: Parity error
9	USB information	00: Not connected 01: Full-Speed 02: Hi-Speed	
10	Operation panel lock status (displayed only when locked)	01: Partial lock 02: Full lock	
11	NVRAM error (displayed only when any error has occurred)	01: ID error 02: Version error	03: Checksum error 04: NVRAM crush error
12	NVRAM download	00: Normal bit0: Font data bit1: Host data bit2: Macro data bit3: Program data bit4: Operation panel message data download (file name displayed) bit5: OEM data bit6: Web template data (version displayed) bit7: Error occurred	
13	Printable area setting	/Top offset/Left offset/Page length/Page width	
14	Left offset for each paper source	/MP tray/Cassette 1/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4/Cassette 5/Duplex (1/600 inches unit)	
15	Top offset for each paper source	/MP tray/Cassette 2/Cassette 3/Cassette 4/Cassette 5/Duplex (1/600 inches unit)	
16	Offset for rotation	/Top offset/Left offset/ (1/600 inches unit)	
17	Paper cassette life counter	/Total counter (large)/Total counter (small)/MP tray/	
18	Paper cassette life counter	/Cassette 1 total/Cassette 2 total/Cassette 3 total/	
19	Paper cassette life counter	/Cassette 4 total/	

Service items		Description																					
No.	Items	Description																					
20	Paper source position counter	/Duplex/																					
21	Life counter of each unit	/Drum unit/Developer unit/Fuser unit/																					
22	Document finisher counter	/Document finisher total/Main tray total/Centerfold unit/Punch unit/Stapler/																					
23	Version of each unit	/3000-sheet paper feeder/Document finisher (software)/Mailbox/Centerfold unit/Internal tray (3000-sheet document finisher)																					
24	Drum ID	-																					
25	Serial interface information	RS2: RS-232C RS4: RS-422A																					
26	Drum sensitivity information	-																					
27	Optional paper feeder/stacker information	[First 2 bytes - Second 2 bytes] First 2 bytes bit0: MP tray bit1 to 4: Cassette 1 to 4 bit5 to 6: Reserved bit7: Duplex bit8: 3000-sheet paper feeder bit9: Reserved bit10: Paper feeder bit11 to 15: Reserved Second 2 bytes bit0: Face up bit1: Face down bit2: Reserved bit3: Mailbox bit4: Document finisher bit5 to 15: Reserved																					
28	Operation panel message language	PMSG command setting (decimal)																					
29	Current temperature	0 to 100 °C/32 to 212 °F (in 1 °C/1.8 °F increment, “-” = Temperature/humidity sensor is abnormal.)																					
30	Current humidity	0 to 100% RH (in 1% increment)																					
31	Number of rebooting for vertical distortion check	-																					
32	MAC address	-																					
33	Fixed asset number	(maximum 16 characters)																					
34	Media type attributes	Media type setting value from 1 to 28 (paper weight) (unused media type (18 to 20) are always 0x00.)																					
35	Memory SPD information (slot 1)	2 to 6 bytes, 8 to 36 bytes, 94 to 95 bytes (total 32 bytes)																					
36	Toner container information	-																					
37	Parameters of maintenance mode	-																					
38	Drum serial number	-																					
39	Machine serial number	-																					
NOTE:																							
Code conversion																							
<table><tr><td>A</td><td>B</td><td>C</td><td>D</td><td>E</td><td>F</td><td>G</td><td>H</td><td>I</td><td>J</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>4</td><td>5</td><td>6</td><td>7</td><td>8</td><td>9</td></tr></table>				A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J														
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9														



Service items	Description
<div>&gt;&gt;Print Event Log</div>	<p><b>Printing an event log (EVENT LOG)</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Prints the history of paper misfeeds and self-diagnostic errors including up to 16 items from the latest occurrence of such an error. (If the number of errors exceeds 16, errors will be deleted sequentially from the oldest one.)</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To allow machine malfunction analysis based on the frequency of paper misfeeds and self diagnostic errors.</p> <p><b>Procedure</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the service mode [&gt;&gt;Print Event log].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [&gt;&gt;Print Event Log?] will be displayed.</li> <li>3. Press the OK key. A sheet of event log will be printed.</li> </ol>

**EVENT LOG**

[0000000000000000] [0000000000000000] [0000000000000000] [01] Firmware version: 130.00eval020A-8

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)

Printed Page(s) 12345 DN: ABCDEFG/ABCDEFG/ABCDEFG/ABCDEFG/ Released: 29/AUG/2006

(7) (8) (6)

**(10) Paper Jam Log**

#	Count.	Event
16	11111	10.31.01.88.15.01
15	10000	10.31.01.88.15.01
14	9999	10.31.01.88.15.01
13	9998	10.31.01.88.15.01
12	9997	10.31.01.88.15.01
11	9996	10.31.01.88.15.01
10	9995	10.31.01.88.15.01
9	9994	10.31.01.88.15.01
8	9993	10.31.01.88.15.01
7	9992	10.31.01.88.15.01
6	9991	10.31.01.88.15.01
5	9990	10.31.01.88.15.01
4	9989	10.31.01.88.15.01
3	9979	10.31.01.88.15.01
2	9969	10.31.01.88.15.01
1	1	10.31.01.88.15.01

**(11) Service Call Log**

#	Count.	Service Code
8	11234	01.6000
7	10000	01.6000
6	9999	01.6000
5	9998	01.6000
4	9997	01.6000
3	9996	01.6000
2	9995	01.6000
1	9994	01.6000

**(12) Maintenance Log**

#	Count.	item
8	11234	01.00
7	10000	01.00
6	9999	01.00
5	9998	01.00
4	9997	01.00
3	9996	01.00
2	9995	01.00
1	9994	01.00

**(13) Counter Log**

J00:	0	J43:	0
J05:	0	J44:	0
J09:	0	J46:	
J10:	0	J47:	
J11:	0	J50:	
J12:	0	J51:	
J13:	0	J52:	
J14:	0	J53:	
J15:	0	J60:	
J16:	0	J61:	
J17:	0	J80:	
J18:	0	J81:	
J19:	0	J82:	
J20:	0	J83:	
J21:	0	J84:	
J22:	0	J85:	
J23:	0	J86:	
J30:	0	J87:	
J35:	0	J88:	
J40:	0	J89:	
J41:	0		
J42:	0		

SN: ABCDEFG

(9)

Figure 1-3-8 Event log

Service items		Description		
		Detail of event log (EVENT LOG) information		
No.	Items	Description		
(1)	Engine PWB mask version	[Engine mask version/Engine software version]		
(2)	Operation panel PWB mask version	-		
(3)	BROM version	-		
(4)	Software jumper switch information (hexadecimal)	[First byte/Second byte]  First byte bit 0 = 1: (Fixed) bit 1 = 0: Overseas, 1: Domestic (Japan) bit 2, 3 (Not used) bit 4 = 0: KC, 1: OEM bit 5 = 0: For Europe, 1: For US bit 6 = 0: Non MICR mode, 1: MICR mode bit 7 (Not used)  Second byte: Displayed in OEM mode only		
(5)	Main PWB firmware mask version	-		
(6)	Main PWB firmware release date	-		
(7)	Total page counter	-		
(8)	Drum serial number	-		
(9)	Machine serial number	-		
(10)	Paper Jam Log	#	Count.	Event
		Remembers 1 to 16 of occurrence. If the occurrence of the previous paper jam is less than 16, all of the paper jams are logged. When the occurrence exceeded 16, the oldest occurrence is removed.	The total page count at the time of the paper jam.	Log code (2 digit, hexadecimal, 6 categories)  (a) Cause of a paper jam (b) Position of paper jam (c) Paper source (d) Paper size (e) Paper type (f) Paper exit  Refer to the next page for the details of each log code.

Service items		Description
No.	Items	Description
(10) cont.		(a) Cause of paper jam (Hexadecimal)  04: Cover opened. [00] 05: Memory read ready time-out (secondary paper feed does not start). [4D] 09: Sequence error (3000-sheet paper feeder). [33] 10: No paper feed (cassette 1). [31] 11: No paper feed (cassette 2). [32] 12: No paper feed (cassette 3: paper feeder/3000-sheet paper feeder). [33] 13: No paper feed (cassette 4: paper feeder). [34] 14: No paper feed (MP tray). [42] 15: Jam in horizontal paper conveying section. Paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) non-arrival jam (3000-sheet paper feeder). [33] 16: Jam in horizontal paper conveying section. Paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) non-arrival jam (3000-sheet paper feeder). [33] 17: Jam in horizontal paper conveying section. Paper path sensor 1 (PPSENS1) non-arrival jam (3000-sheet paper feeder). [33] 18: Jam in vertical paper feed section. [4D] 19: Jam in vertical paper feed section (paper feeder). [43] 20: Jam in MP tray paper conveying section. [48] 21: Multiple sheets in paper feed section. [4D] 22: Multiple sheets in vertical paper conveying section. [4D] 23: Multiple sheets in MP tray paper conveying section. [48] 30: Jam in registration/transfer section. [4D] 40: Jam in fuser section (paper feed from MP tray). [4D] 41: Jam in fuser section (paper feed from cassette 1). [4D] 42: Jam in fuser section (paper feed from cassette 2). [4D] 43: Jam in fuser section (paper feed from cassette 3: paper feeder). [4D] 44: Jam in fuser section (paper feed from cassette 4: paper feeder). [4D] 45: Jam in fuser section (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder). [4D] 46: Jam in fuser section (paper refeed from duplex section). [4D] 50: Jam in eject section. [4D] 52: Jam in feedshift section. [4D] 60: Jam in duplex paper conveying section 1. [4D] 61: Jam in duplex paper conveying section 2. [4D] 80: Jam between the printer and 3000-sheet document finisher. [46] 81: Paper entry sensor (PES) non-arrival jam (3000-sheet document finisher). [46] Paper entry sensor1/2 (PES1/PES2) non-arrival jam (document finisher). [46] 82: Jam in stapler (3000-sheet document finisher/document finisher). [46] 83: Exit sensor (ESW1) stay jam (3000-sheet document finisher). [46] Exit sensor (EXS) stay jam (document finisher). [46] 84: Jam in eject section of right sub tray (3000-sheet paper feeder). [46] 85: Jam in eject section of left sub tray (3000-sheet paper feeder). [46] 86: Jam in eject section of internal tray 1 (3000-sheet paper feeder). [46] 87: Jam in eject section of internal tray 2 (3000-sheet paper feeder). [46] 88: Jam in eject section of main tray (3000-sheet paper feeder). [46] 89: Jam in centerfold unit (3000-sheet document finisher). [50] 90: Jam in mailbox (3000-sheet document finisher). [51] 91: Document finisher cover opened. [46] 92: Exit sensor (EXS) non-arrival jam (document finisher). [46] 93: Reverse sensor (REVS) jam (document finisher). [46] 94: Paper entry sensor (PES) stay/remaining jam (document finisher). [46] 95: Paper conveying sensor (PCS) jam (document finisher). [46]  Note: Values (hexadecimal) within [ ] indicate paper misfeed locations, see next page.

Service items		Description
(10) cont.	Items	(b) Detail of jam location (Hexadecimal)
		<p>(Trays 1 to 7)</p> <p>(Left sub tray)</p> <p>(Main tray)</p> <p>3000-sheet document finisher</p> <p>51 Mailbox</p> <p>TEJS</p> <p>MPESW</p> <p>(Right sub tray)</p> <p>ESW3</p> <p>ESW2</p> <p>(Feedshift)</p> <p>Printer</p> <p>FSSW (Eject)</p> <p>ESW (Fuser)</p> <p>PES1</p> <p>PES2</p> <p>(Duplex)</p> <p>DUP</p> <p>PCSW</p> <p>(Registration/transfer)</p> <p>RSW</p> <p>(MP tray)</p> <p>FSW1</p> <p>MPFSW</p> <p>(Cassette 1)</p> <p>FSW2</p> <p>(Cassette 2)</p> <p>FSW3</p> <p>PPS</p> <p>PPS1</p> <p>ENS2</p> <p>ENS3</p> <p>CPES</p> <p>CSRS2</p> <p>CPDS</p> <p>CESW</p> <p>CSRS1</p> <p>(Stapler)</p> <p>PCBMDs</p> <p>SRHPS1</p> <p>SRHPS2</p> <p>ITPES1</p> <p>ITPES2</p> <p>Centerfold unit</p> <p>3000-sheet paper feeder</p> <p>(Cassette 3)</p> <p>(Cassette 4)</p> <p>Paper feeder</p>
		(c) Detail of paper source (Hexadecimal)
00: MP tray	07: Duplex	
01: Cassette 1	08: 3000-sheet paper feeder	
02: Cassette 2	05/06/09: Reserved	
03: Cassette 3 (paper feeder)		
04: Cassette 4 (paper feeder)		

Service items		Description		
(10) cont.		(d) Detail of paper size (Hexadecimal)		
		01: Monarch	0C: Ledger	23: Special 2
		02: Business	0D: A5R	24: A3 wide
		03: International DL	8D: A5E	25: Ledger wide
		04: International C5	0E: A6	26: Full bleed paper (12 × 8)
		05: Executive	0F: B6	27: 8K
		06: Letter-R	10: Commercial #9	28: 16K-R
		86: Letter-E	11: Commercial #6	A8: 16K-E
		07: Legal	12: ISO B5	32: Statement-R
		08: A4R	13: Custom size	B2: Statement-E
(10) cont.		88: A4E	1E: C4	33: Folio
		09: B5R	1F: Postcard	34: Western type 2
		89: B5E	20: Reply-paid postcard	35: Western type 4
		0A: A3	21: Oficio II	
		0B: B4	22: Special 1	
		(e) Detail of paper type (Hexadecimal)		
		00: (Not specified)	09: Letter head	15: Custom 1
		01: Plain	0A: Color	16: Custom 2
		02: Transparency	0B: Prepunched	17: Custom 3
		03: Preprint	0C: Envelope	18: Custom 4
(10) cont.		04: Labels	0D: Cardstock	19: Custom 5
		05: Bond	0E: Coated	1A: Custom 6
		06: Recycle	0F: 2nd side	1B: Custom 7
		07: Vellum	10: Media 16	1C: Custom 8
		08: Rough	11: High quality	
		(f) Detail of paper exit location (Hexadecimal)		
		01: Face down (FD)	15: Mailbox tray 2 (FD)	
		02: Face up (FU)/ Document finisher face up (FU)/ 3000-sheet document finisher left sub tray (FU)	16: Mailbox tray 2 (FU)	
		03: Document finisher face-down (FD)	1F: Mailbox tray 3 (FD)	
		04: Document finisher sub tray (FD)	20: Mailbox tray 3 (FU)	
(10) cont.		05: Reserved	29: Mailbox tray 4 (FD)	
		06: 3000-sheet document finisher right sub tray (FU)	2A: Mailbox tray 4 (FU)	
		07: 3000-sheet document finisher left sub tray (FD)	33: Mailbox tray 5 (FD)	
		09: 3000-sheet document finisher right sub tray (FD)	34: Mailbox tray 5 (FU)	
		0B: Mailbox tray 1 (FD)	3D: Mailbox tray 6 (FD)	
		0C: Mailbox tray 1 (FU)	3E: Mailbox tray 6 (FU)	
		0D: Mailbox all tray (FD)	47: Mailbox tray 7 (FD)	
		0E: Mailbox all tray (FU)	48: Mailbox tray 7 (FU)	

Service items		Description		
No.	Items	Description		
(11)	Service Call (Self diagnostic error) Log	#	Count.	Self diagnostic error code
		Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of self diagnostics error. If the occurrence of the previous diagnostics error is less than 8, all of the diagnostics errors are logged.	The total page count at the time of the self diagnostics error.	Indicates the self diagnostic errors and codes. (See page 1-4-18)  Example: 01.6000  01: Self diagnostic error 6000: Self diagnostic error code number
(12)	Maintenance Log	#	Count.	Item
		Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of replacement. If the occurrence of the previous replacement of toner container is less than 8, all of the occurrences of replacement are logged.	The total page count at the time of the replacement of the toner container. This is virtually logged as the occurrence of the Toner Empty condition since the replacement of the toner container is not precisely detectable.	Code of maintenance replacing item (1 byte, 2 categories)  First byte (Replacing item) 01: Toner container 02: Maintenance kit  Second byte (Type of replacing item) 00: (fixed)
(13)	Counter Log  Comprised of three log counters including paper jams, self diagnostics errors, and replacement of the toner container.	(g) Jam	(h) Self diagnostic error	(i) Maintenance item replacing
		Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location.  Refer to Paper Jam Log.  All instances including those are not occurred are displayed.	Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause. (See page 1-4-18)  Example: C6000: 4  Self diagnostics error 6000 has happened four times.	Indicates the log counter depending on the maintenance item for maintenance.  T: Toner container 00: Black  M: Maintenance kit 00: (fixed)  Example: T00: 1 The (black) toner container has been replaced once.

Service items	Description				
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">&gt;&gt;Paper Feed</div>	<p><b>Setting the paper feed operation (printer driver priority mode)</b></p> <p><b>Description</b>          With printer driver priority mode, when selecting the specific paper feed location (a cassette or MP tray) with the printer driver (it is not automatic selection), paper is fed from the selected location. Message "Add Paper" is displayed when there is no paper in that location. When selecting the MP tray as the paper feed location, paper is fed with the timing of maximum size. As for the setting media type (setting the paper type), setting of the printer driver is notified to the engine PWB. Duplex printing operation is still the ordinary operation, and paper jam occurs if paper size is different from the setting of the printer.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b>          To set the printer driver priority mode which priority is given to the setup of a printer driver when the ordinary paper feed operation mode is not suitable for the usage condition of the user.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the service mode [&gt;&gt;Paper feed].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. Message [Paper feed?] will be displayed.</li> <li>3. Select the mode (Normal? or Special?) pressing the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td>Normal</td><td>Ordinary paper feed operation mode</td></tr> <tr> <td>Special</td><td>Printer driver priority mode</td></tr> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the OK key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b></p>	Normal	Ordinary paper feed operation mode	Special	Printer driver priority mode
Normal	Ordinary paper feed operation mode				
Special	Printer driver priority mode				
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">&gt;&gt;Developer</div>	<p><b>Initializing the developer unit (toner install mode)</b></p> <p><b>Description</b>          The new developer unit is shipped from the factory with no toner contained. The developer can be automatically replete with toner when a toner container is installed onto it and the printer is turned on. However, because the toner reservoir in the developer has a large capacity, it requires a lengthy period of time until a substantial amount of toner has been fed to get the printer ready. (A new developer needs approximately 200 g for triggering the sensor inside.)</p> <p><b>Purpose</b>          To execute when the developer unit has been replaced.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the service mode [&gt;&gt;Developer].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [&gt;&gt;Developer?] will be displayed.</li> <li>3. Press the OK key. [Ready] will be displayed.</li> <li>4. Turn off and on the main switch. [Self test] [Please wait (Adding toner)] will displayed. The printer continually engages in this mode for a period of approximately 10 minutes, after which the printer reverts to the [Ready] state. [Ready] will displayed. Developer initialization is finished.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b></p>				
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">&gt;&gt;Charger</div>	<p><b>Main charger wire cleaning</b></p> <p><b>Description</b>          The main charger wire cleaning system is operated to remove oxide developed on the main charger wire.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b>          To execute when black streaks are printed lengthwise.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the service mode [&gt;&gt;Charger].</li> <li>2. Press the OK key. [&gt;&gt;Charger?] will be displayed.</li> <li>3. Press the OK key. The message display shows [Please wait], and then the main charger wire cleaning starts and stops after approx.45 seconds. The printer reverts to [Ready], main charger wire cleaning is finished.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b></p>				

Service items	Description
<div>&gt;&gt;Drum</div>	<p><b>Drum surface refreshing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b></p> <p>Rotates the drum approximately 3 minutes with toner lightly on the overall drum using the high-voltage output control of the engine PWB. The cleaning blade in the drum unit scrapes toner off the drum surface to clean it.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b></p> <p>To clean the drum surface when image failure occurs due to the drum. This mode is effective when dew condensation on the drum occurs.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Enter the service mode [&gt;&gt;Drum].</li><li>2. Press the OK key. [&gt;&gt;Drum?] will be displayed.</li><li>3. Press the OK key. Drum surface refreshing will start and finish after approximately 3 minutes, after which the printer reverts to the [Ready] state. [Ready] will displayed. Drum surface refreshing is finished.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b></p>



## 1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

### (1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops printing and displays the jam location on the operation panel.

To remove paper jammed in the machine, open the front cover, left cover or pull the cassette out.

To remove the jammed paper in optional document finisher, detach the finisher from the machine.

Paper misfeed detection can be reset by opening and closing the respective covers to turn safety switch off and on.

### (2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

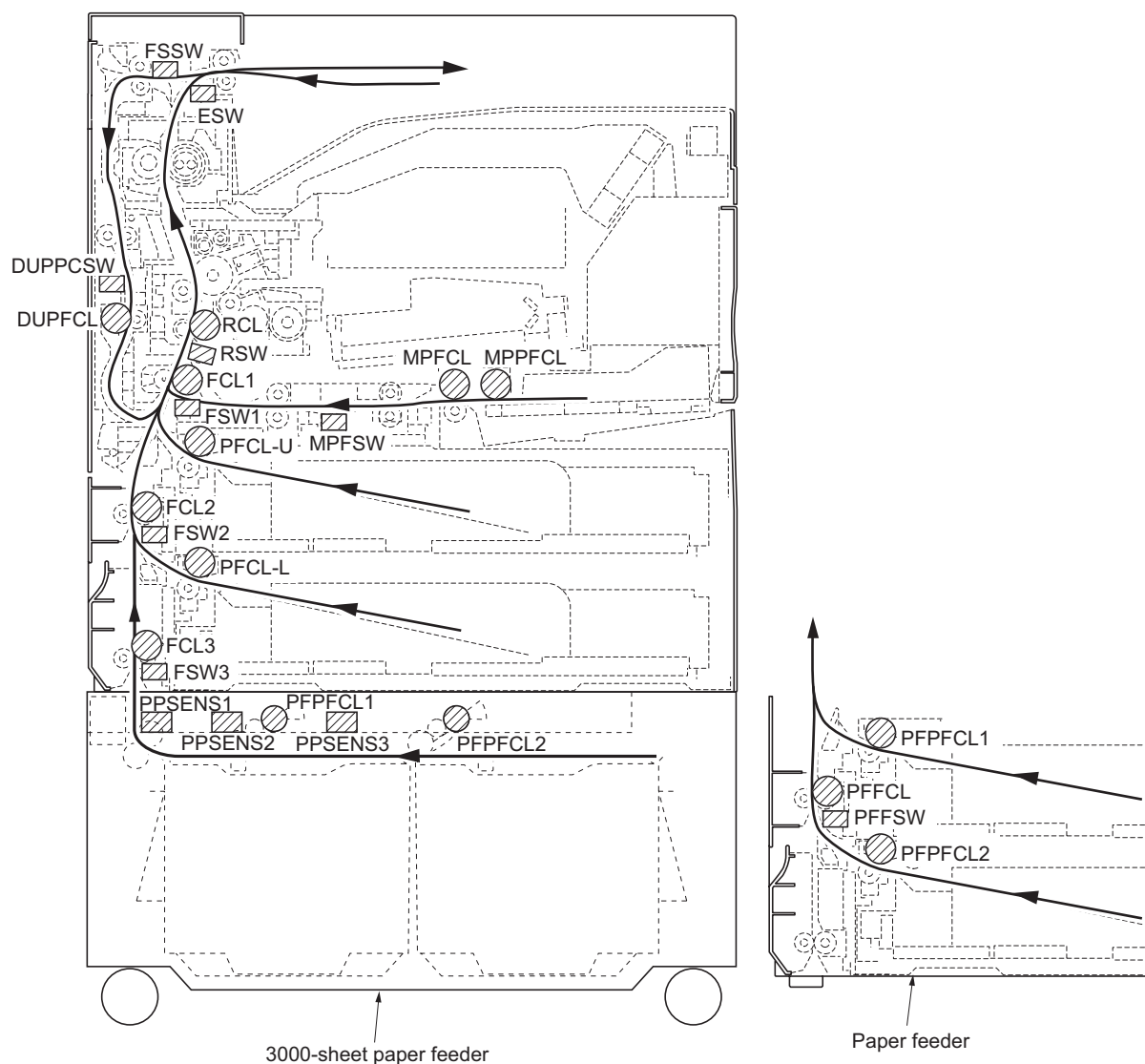


Figure 1-4-1

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
System	04 Cover open	Cover is open during printing.	-
	05 Secondary paper feed does not start	Secondary paper feed does not start within specified time of arrival of paper at the registration section.	30 s
	09 3000-sheet paper feeder sequence error jam	A communication sequence error occurs between the machine and the 3000-sheet paper feeder.	-
Paper feed section	10 No paper feed from cassette 1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within the specified time of upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1152 ms
	11 No paper feed from cassette 2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within the specified time of lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1209 ms
	12 No paper feed from optional cassette 3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from optional paper feeder).	1209 ms
		Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	1582 ms
	13 No paper feed from optional cassette 4	The paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from optional paper feeder).	1209 ms
	14 No paper feed from MP tray	The MP feed switch (MPPFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of the MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	3913 ms
	15 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 1	Paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) does not turn on within specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	637 ms
	16 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 2	Paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	681 ms
	17 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 3	Paper path sensor 1 (PPSENS1) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	417 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	18 Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1283 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on.	1478 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	1474 ms
	19 Misfeed in paper feeder vertical paper conveying section	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within specified time of the paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) turning on.	1217 ms
	20 Misfeed in MP tray vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning on.	3043 ms
	21 Multiple sheets in paper feed section	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	3357 ms - paper length
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	3357 ms - paper length
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional paper feeder).	2617 ms
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	1234ms
		The paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	2617 ms
		The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	3357 ms - paper length
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) turning on.	1152 ms
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) turning on.	1209 ms
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of the paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on.	2643 ms
		The paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn off within specified time of the paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on.	3913 ms
		The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) turning on.	3913 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	22 Multiple sheets in vertical conveying section	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning off.	1478 ms
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning off.	1539 ms
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on	1478 ms
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	1474 ms
	23 Multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning off.	2739 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning on.	3043 ms
Paper conveying section	30 Misfeed in registration/transfer section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning off.	1170 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1278 ms
Fuser section	40 Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray) 41 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1) 42 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2) 43 Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 3) 44 Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 4) 46 Misfeed in fuser section (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder) 47 Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
Eject section	50 Misfeed in eject section	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.	2243 ms
		The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Feedshift section	52 Misfeed in feedshift section	The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the start of eject motor (EM) reverse rotation.	1196 ms
		During paper switchback operation, the feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	2313 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
Duplex section	60 Duplex paper conveying section 1	The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2196 ms
		The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	2196 ms
	61 Duplex paper conveying section 2	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning on.	1543 ms
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning off.	1543 ms
Optional finisher	80 Jam between the finisher and machine (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	15 s
	81 Paper entry sensor non arrival jam	(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1052 ms
		The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1052 ms
		The paper entry sensor (PES) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
		(Document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	2627 ms
	82 Jam in stapler	(3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected within the specified time when driving the staple motor.	600 ms
		(Document finisher) The staple home position sensor (STSPS) is not turned on within the specified time when driving the staple motor (STM).	1000 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	83 Exit sensor stay jam	(3000-sheet document finisher) Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1182 ms
		(Document finisher) In the straight mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1680 ms
		(Document finisher) In the offset or staple mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	5375 ms
	84 Jam in eject section of right sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1209 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1209 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
	85 Jam in eject section of left sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1426 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1426 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
	86 Jam in eject section of internal tray 1 (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Internal tray entry sensor 1 (ITPES1) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the eject signal was received.	2070 ms
	87 Jam in eject section of internal tray 2 (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Internal tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn on within specified time of internal tray entry sensor 1 (ITPES1) turning on.	1322 ms
		Internal tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn off within specified time of internal tray entry sensor 1 (ITPES1) turning off.	676 ms
	88 Jam in eject section of main tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned on within specified time.	1324 ms
		Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	500 ms
		Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	500 ms
		The paper conveying belt detection sensor (PCBDS) is not turned off within specified time.	2000 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	89 Jam in centerfold unit (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn off within specified time of centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) turning on.	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn on within specified time of centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) turning on.	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned on within specified time.	3040 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	4213 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms
		The home position is not detected within the specified time after driving the centerfold staple motor (CSTM).	1000 ms
		The centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) is not turned off within specified time.	3504 ms
		The centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) is not turned on within specified time.	3504 ms
		The centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
	90 Jam in mailbox (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The mail paper entry switch (MPESW) is not turned on within specified time.	1017 ms
		The mail paper entry switch (MPESW) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time of mail paper entry switch (MPESW) turning on.	Tray 1 to 4 2026 ms Tray 5 to 7 1148 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
	91 Finisher cover open	(3000-sheet document finisher) The front cover, top cover or right sub tray is opened when starting the finisher operation. The centerfold unit top cover is opened when starting the centerfold operation. The mailbox cover is opened when starting the operation.	-
		(Document finisher) The finisher cover becomes open during paper is running. Paper is remaining in paths at power on.	-
	92 Exit sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher only)	In the straight mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the paper entry sensor (PES) was turned on.	1770 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	93 Reverse sensor jam (document finisher only)	The reverse sensor (REVS) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1071 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) is not turned on within specified time.	435 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning off.	622 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	Depends on paper size
	94 Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher only)	The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	Depends on paper size
	95 Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher only)	The paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn on within specified time of reverse sensor (REVS) turning on.	735 ms
		The paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn off within specified time of reverse sensor (REVS) turning off.	1004 ms



**(3) Paper misfeeds**

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed, conveying or eject section is indicated as soon as the main power switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from print paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, eject switch or feedshift switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, eject switch, feedshift switch
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (no paper feed from cassette 1). Jam code 10	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the upper paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the cassette 1 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the upper paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the upper paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the upper paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-38).
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (no paper feed from cassette 2). Jam code 11	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the lower paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the cassette 2 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the lower paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the lower paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the lower paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-38).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (no paper feed from optional cassette 3). Jam code 12	Optional paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of optional cassette 3 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1/2 and paper feeder paper conveying clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (no paper feed from optional cassette 4). Jam code 13	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of optional cassette 4 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (no paper feed from MP tray). Jam code 14	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the MP paper feed pulley, MP forwarding pulley and MP separation pulley are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective MP feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn MP feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the MP paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select MP paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the MP paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-38).
(7) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 15	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 3.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-12 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN6-11 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when paper path sensor 3 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 3.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(8) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 16	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 2.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-9 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN6-8 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when paper path sensor 2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 2.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(9) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 17	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 1.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-6 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN6-5 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when paper path sensor 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 1.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper conveying clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(10) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (jam in vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 18	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (jam in optional paper feeder vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 19	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
(12) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (jam in MP tray vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 20	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP feed switch, registration switch
(13) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (multiple sheets in paper feed section). Jam code 21	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 or MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, MP feed switch
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at CN2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
	Check if the clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select following clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Upper paper feed clutch, lower paper feed clutch, MP paper conveying clutch
	Electrical problem with clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-38).
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(14) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (multiple sheets in vertical conveying section). Jam code 22	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
(15) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during printing (multiple sheets in bypass conveying section). Jam code 23	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP feed switch, registration switch
(16) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during printing (jam in registration/transfer section). Jam code 30	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1, registration switch
	The contact between the right and left registration rollers is not correct.	Check visually and replace.
(17) A paper jam in the fuser section is indicated during printing (jam in fuser section). Jam codes 40 to 44, 46 and 47	Broken eject switch or feed-shift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Eject switch, feedshift switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-38).
(18) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during printing (jam in eject section). Jam code 50	Broken eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Registration switch, eject switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-38).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(19) A paper jam in the feedshift section is indicated during printing (jam in feedshift section). Jam code 52	Electrical problem with the feedshift solenoid.	Check (see page 1-4-38).
	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, registration switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-38).
(20) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during printing (jam in duplex paper conveying section 1). Jam code 60	Broken feedshift switch or duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, duplex paper conveying switch
(21) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during printing (jam in duplex paper conveying section 2). Jam code 61	Broken duplex paper conveying switch or feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Duplex paper conveying switch, feed switch 1
(22) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 80	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at YC19-6 on the finisher main PWB, check if YC19-7 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
(23) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher). Jam code 81	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	(3000-sheet document finisher) With 5 V DC present at YC19-6 on the finisher main PWB, check if YC19-7 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
		(Document finisher) With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(24) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (finisher stapler jam). Jam code 82	Defective staple home position sensor.	With 5 V DC present at YC22-6 on the finisher main PWB, check if YC22-5 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the staple home position sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the staple home position sensor.
(25) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (eject sensor stay jam). Jam code 83	3000-sheet document finisher	
	Defective eject switch 1.	With 5 V DC present at YC16-A7 on the finisher main PWB, check if YC16-A6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject switch 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject switch 1.
	Document finisher	
	Defective eject sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN5-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject roller and eject pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
(26) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (sub tray eject jam). Jam code 84	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Defective eject switch 2.	With 5 V DC present at YC19-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if YC19-2 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject switch 2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject switch 2.
(27) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (sub tray eject jam). Jam code 85	Defective eject switch 3.	With 5 V DC present at YC16-A4 on the finisher main PWB, check if YC16-A3 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject switch 3 is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject switch 3.
(28) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (internal tray paper entry sensor 1 jam). Jam code 86	Defective internal tray paper entry sensor 1.	With 5 V DC present at YC11-1 on the internal tray PWB, check if YC11-2 on the internal tray PWB remains low or high when the internal tray paper entry sensor 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace the internal tray paper entry sensor 1.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(29) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (internal tray paper entry sensor 2 jam). Jam code 87	Defective internal tray paper entry sensor 2.	With 5 V DC present at YC11-4 on the internal tray PWB, check if YC11-5 on the internal tray PWB remains low or high when the internal tray paper entry sensor 2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace the internal tray paper entry sensor 2.
(30) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (main tray eject jam). Jam code 88	Defective eject switch 1.	With 5 V DC present at YC16-A7 on the finisher main PWB, check if YC16-A6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject switch 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject switch 1.
	Defective side registration home position sensor 1/2.	With 5 V DC present at YC12-6 and YC10-3 on the internal tray PWB, check if YC12-5 and YC10-2 on the internal tray PWB remains low or high when the side registration home position sensor 1/2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace the side registration home position sensor 1/2.
	Defective paper conveying belt position detection sensor.	With 5 V DC present at YC12-9 on the internal tray PWB, check if YC12-8 on the internal tray PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying belt position detection sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying belt position detection sensor.
(31) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (centerfold unit jam). Jam code 89	Defective centerfold paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at YC13-3 on the centerfold main PWB, check if YC13-2 on the centerfold main PWB remains low or high when the centerfold paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the centerfold paper entry sensor.
	Defective centerfold eject switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC4-6 on the centerfold main PWB, check if YC4-5 on the centerfold main PWB remains low or high when the centerfold eject switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the centerfold eject switch.
	Defective centerfold paper detection switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC5-3 on the centerfold main PWB, check if YC5-2 on the centerfold main PWB remains low or high when the centerfold paper detection switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the centerfold paper detection switch.
(32) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (mailbox jam). Jam code 90	Defective mail paper entry switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC4-30 on the mailbox main PWB, check if YC4-21 on the mailbox main PWB remains low or high when the mail paper entry switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the mail paper entry switch.
	Defective tray eject sensor.	With 5 V DC present at YC4-19 on the mailbox main PWB, check if YC4-17 on the mailbox main PWB remains low or high when the tray eject sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the tray eject sensor.



Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(33) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (eject sensor non-arrival jam). Jam code 92	Defective eject sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN5-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the eject roller and eject pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(34) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (reverse sensor jam). Jam code 93	Defective reverse sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-5 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-7 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the reverse sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the reverse sensor.
	Check if the reverse motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the reverse roller and reverse pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the reverse guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(35) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (paper entry sensor stay jam). Jam code 94	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the main PCB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Check if the paper entry guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(36) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during printing (paper conveying sensor jam). Jam code 95	Defective paper conveying sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN4-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the paper conveying roller and paper conveying pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the paper conveying guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

## 1-4-2 Self-diagnosis

### (1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, printing is disabled and the problem displayed a number, indicating the nature of the problem.

A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning safety switches off and back on.

### (2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
0150	<b>Backup memory device problem (Engine PWB)</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
0160	<b>Backup memory data problem (Engine PWB)</b> Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal. Read and write data does not match five times continuously.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
1010	<b>Upper lift motor error</b> When cassette 1 is inserted, upper lift limit switch does not turn on within 12 s of upper lift motor turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of upper lift motor and the connector YC13 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of upper lift motor.	Replace upper lift motor.
		Defective upper lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace upper lift motor.
		Defective upper lift limit switch.	Check if YC13-B9 on the engine PWB goes low when upper lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace upper lift limit switch.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of upper lift limit switch and the connector YC13 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1020	<b>Lower lift motor error</b> When cassette 2 is inserted, lower lift limit switch does not turn on within 12 s of lower lift motor turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lower lift motor and the connector YC13 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of lower lift motor.	Replace lower lift motor.
		Defective lower lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace lower lift motor.
		Defective lower lift limit switch.	Check if YC13-B15 on the engine PWB goes low when lower lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace lower lift limit switch.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lower lift limit switch and the connector YC13 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
1030	<b>Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder)</b> When optional cassette 3 is inserted, paper feeder lift switch 1 does not turn on within 12 s of paper feeder lift motor 1 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of paper feeder lift motor 1.	Replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 1.	Check if YC1-5 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 1.
1040	<b>Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder)</b> When optional cassette 4 is inserted, paper feeder lift switch 2 does not turn on within 12 s of paper feeder lift motor 2 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of paper feeder lift motor 2.	Replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 2.	Check if YC1-7 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 2.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1100	<b>Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Paper feeder lift motor 1 does not rotate correctly (the motor is over-loaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
1110	<b>Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Paper feeder lift motor 2 does not rotate correctly (the motor is over-loaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
1120	<b>Paper feeder left lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> Paper feeder switch 2 does not turn on within 30 s of paper feeder lift motor 1 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 2.	Check if YC5-7 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		The paper feeder left lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
1130	<b>Paper feeder right lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> Paper feeder switch 1 does not turn on within 30 s of paper feeder lift motor 2 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 1.	Check if YC5-4 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		The paper feeder right lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1800	<b>Paper feeder unit communication problem (optional paper feeder/3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> No communication: there is no reply after 5 retries. Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feeder main PWB.	Replace the paper feeder main PWB and check for correct operation.
1900	<b>Paper feeder EEPROM error (optional paper feeder)</b> When writing the data, the write data and the read data is not continuously in agreement three times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feeder.	Replace the paper feeder with another unit and check the operation. If the operation is normal, replace or repair optional paper feeder.
2000	<b>Drive motor problem</b> Stable OFF is detected for 1 s continuously after drive motor stability.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective drive motor.	Replace the drive motor.
2250	<b>Main charger cleaning motor error</b> The lock signal is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the engine PWB and the connector on the main charger cleaning motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective main charger cleaning motor.	Replace the main charger cleaning motor.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>2500</b>	<b>Paper feed motor error</b> Stable OFF is detected for 1 s continuously after paper feed motor stability.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feed motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feed motor.	Replace the paper feed motor.
<b>2600</b>	<b>Paper feeder paper conveying motor error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> The lock signal of the motor is detected for 450 ms continuously. <b>Paper feeder drive motor error (optional paper feeder)</b> The lock signal of the motor is detected for 500 ms continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Paper feeder paper conveying motor / paper feeder drive motor does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the paper feeder main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective motor.	Replace the paper feeder paper conveying motor / paper feeder drive motor.
<b>4000</b>	<b>Polygon motor synchronization problem</b> The polygon motor does not reach the stable speed within 20 s of the START signal turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>4010</b>	<b>Polygon motor steady-state problem</b> The polygon motor rotation is not stable for 20 s after the polygon motor rotation has been stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
4200	<b>BD steady-state problem</b> ASIC detects a BD error A for 2 s after the polygon motor rotation has been stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
5300	<b>Broken cleaning lamp wire</b> While the cleaning lamp is on, the broken cleaning lamp wire detection signal is detected for 2 s continuously.	Defective cleaning lamp.	Replace the cleaning lamp.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
6000	<b>Fuser heater break</b> Fuser unit thermistor 1 is detected 40°C/104°F below with 10 s continuously during warm-up and ready in.	Defective fuser heater M or S.	Replace the fuser heater M or S.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser unit thermistor 1.	Check the mounting state of the fuser unit thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser unit thermostat.	Replace the fuser unit thermostat.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
6020	<b>Abnormally high fuser unit thermistor temperature</b> Fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2 is detected 230°C/446°F or more for 40 ms.	Installation defectiveness on fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.	Check the mounting state of the fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.	Replace the fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
6030	<b>Fuser unit thermistor break error</b> The thermistor break signal is detected continuously for 500 ms.	Installation defectiveness on fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.	Check the mounting state of the fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.	Replace the fuser unit thermistor 1 or 2.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
6050	<b>Abnormally low fuser unit thermistor 3 temperature</b> Fuser unit thermistor 1 is detected 100°C/212°F less than 1 s continuously during printing.	Defective fuser heater M or S.	Replace the fuser heater M or S.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser unit thermistor 1.	Check the mounting state of the fuser unit thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
6400	<b>Zero-cross signal error</b> While fuser heater ON/OFF control is performed, the zero-cross signal is not input within 3 s.	Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or power source PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
6410	<b>Fuser unit connector insertion problem</b> Absence of the fuser unit is detected.	Fuser unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the fuser unit connector if necessary.
		Defective fuser unit connector.	Replace the fuser unit.
6420	<b>Fuser unit fuse cut problem</b> The fuse cannot be cut, When replacing the fuser unit, the fuse cannot be cut in 3 s after the fuse cut signal is turned on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Fuser unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the fuser unit connector if necessary.
7400	<b>Developing unit connector insertion problem</b> Absence of the developing unit is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Defective developing unit connector.	Replace the developing unit.
7410	<b>Drum unit connector insertion problem</b> Absence of the drum unit is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Defective drum unit connector.	Replace the drum unit.
7800	<b>Broken external thermistor wire</b> The thermistor output value is 4.5 V or more.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC14 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective humidity sensor.	Replace the humidity sensor.
7810	<b>Short-circuited external thermistor</b> The thermistor input value is 0.5 V or less.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC14 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective humidity sensor.	Replace the humidity sensor.
7900	<b>Drum EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum unit.	Replace the drum unit.
7910	<b>Developing unit EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing unit.	Replace the developing unit.



Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
8020	<b>Punch motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The LOCK signal of the punch motor is detected for more than 500 ms while the punch motor is operating.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch motor.	Replace the punch motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the punch PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8030	<b>Tray upper limit detection problem (optional document finisher)</b> When the tray elevation motor raises a tray, the ON status of the tray upper limit sensor is detected.	The tray upper limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray upper limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8050	<b>Paper conveying belt motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn on within 2.5 s. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the internal tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8060	<b>Paper conveying belt motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn on within 2.5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the internal tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
8070	<b>Internal tray communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Communication with the internal tray is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the finisher main PWB and the connector YC1 on the internal tray PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8140	<b>Main tray problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The main tray is not detected by the main tray top limit detection sensor or the main tray capacity detection sensor within 20 s since the tray has started ascending. The main tray upper limit detection sensor to the main tray load detection sensor is not detected to be turned off in 20 s after the main tray has descended. The main tray low limit detection sensor is not detected to be turned on in 20 s after the main tray has descended. During main tray ascent, the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray load detection sensor stays on for more than 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the main tray motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main tray motor.	Replace the main tray motor.
		Defective main tray upper limit detection sensor/main tray load detection sensor/main tray lower limit detection sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Tray elevation motor problem (optional document finisher)</b> When the tray elevation motor is driving, the ON status of the tray lower limit sensor or surface view sensor cannot be detected even if a specified time has elapsed.	The tray elevation motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The tray elevation motor malfunctions.	Replace the tray elevation motor.
		The tray lower limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray lower limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
8170	<b>Side registration motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the internal tray PWB and the connector on side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 1.	Replace side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Adjustment motor problem (optional document finisher)</b> When the adjustment motor is driving, the ON status of the adjustment home position sensor cannot be detected even if a specified time has elapsed. When adjustment operation starts, the ON status of the adjustment home position sensor is not detected.	The adjustment motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment motor.	Replace adjustment motor.
		The adjustment home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment home position sensor.	Replace the adjustment home position sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8180	<b>Side registration motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the internal tray PWB and the connector of side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 2.	Replace side registration motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
8210	<b>Stapler shift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler shift motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler shift motor 1.	Replace stapler shift motor 1.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Stapler problem (optional document finisher)</b> When the stapler motor is driving, the ON status of the stapler home position sensor cannot be detected even if a specified time has elapsed.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8220	<b>Stapler shift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler shift motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler shift motor 2.	Replace stapler shift motor 2.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8230	<b>Stapler motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Jam 82 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler motor.	Replace the stapler motor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8300	<b>Centerfold unit communication error (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Communication with the centerfold unit is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC22 on the finisher main PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold unit set switch.	Replace the centerfold unit set switch.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

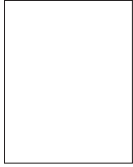
Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
8310	<b>Centerfold side registration motor 1 problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1000 ms passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 1.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8320	<b>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 2500 ms passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6/ YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.	Replace centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8330	<b>Blade motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1500 ms passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the blade motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective blade motor.	Replace the blade motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8340	<b>Centerfold staple motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Jam 89 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold staple motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold staple motor.	Replace the centerfold staple motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8350	<b>Centerfold side registration motor 2 problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1000 ms passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 2.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
8360	<b>Centerfold main motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The motor lock signal is detected above 1000 ms during driving the centerfold main motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC12 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold main motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold main motor.	Replace the centerfold main motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8440	<b>Sensor adjusting problem (optional document finisher)</b> The sensor cannot be adjusted within the specified range.	The paper entry sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective paper entry sensor.	Replace the paper entry sensor and check for correct operation.
		The optical path of the paper entry sensor is blocked by foreign matter.	Remove the foreign matter.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8460	<b>EEPROM problem (optional document finisher)</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective EEPROM or finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8500	<b>Mailbox communication error (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Communication with the mailbox is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of the connector of the mailbox and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8510	<b>Mailbox drive motor problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The motor lock signal is detected above 500 ms during driving the mailbox drive motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the mailbox main PWB and the connector of the mailbox drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox drive motor.	Replace the mailbox drive motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8800	<b>Document finisher communication problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> No communication: there is no reply after 5 retries. Abnormal communication: a communication error (parity or checksum error) is detected five times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
8900	<b>Backup memory data problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
8910	<b>Backup memory data problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the connector YC4 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch PWB.	Replace the punch PWB and check for correct operation.
8920	<b>Backup memory data problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the mailbox main PWB and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox main PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB and check for correct operation.
8930	<b>Backup memory data problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the centerfold main PWB and the connector YC5 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold main PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB and check for correct operation.
F000	<b>Operation panel PWB communication error</b>	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective operation panel PWB.	Replace the operation panel PWB and check for correct operation.
F010	<b>Main PWB checksum error</b>	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F020	<b>Memory checksum error</b>	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective expansion memory.	Replace the expansion memory and check for correct operation.
F030	<b>Main PWB system error</b>	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F040	<b>Engine PWB communication error</b>	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F226	<b>VIDEO output error</b>	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.

### 1-4-3 Image formation problems

(1) No image appears (entirely white).



See page 1-4-33.

(2) No image appears (entirely black).



See page 1-4-33.

(3) Image is too light.



See page 1-4-34.

(4) Background is visible.



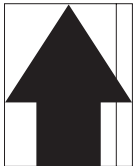
See page 1-4-34.

(5) A white line appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-34.

(6) A black line appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-34.

(7) A black line appears laterally.



See page 1-4-35.

(8) One side of the print image is darker than the other.



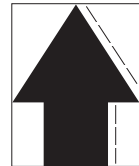
See page 1-4-35.

(9) Black dots appear on the image.



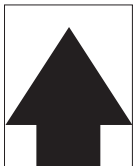
See page 1-4-35.

(10) Image is blurred.



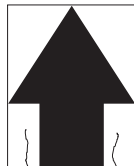
See page 1-4-35.

(11) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned.



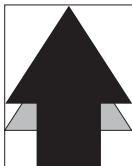
See page 1-4-36.

(12) Paper creases.



See page 1-4-36.

(13) Offset occurs.



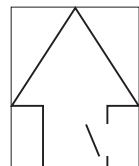
See page 1-4-36.

(14) Image is partly missing.



See page 1-4-36.

(15) Fusing is poor.



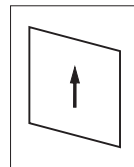
See page 1-4-37.

(16) Image is out of focus.



See page 1-4-37.


(17) Image is not square.




See page 1-4-37.




**(1) No image appears (entirely white).**

Print example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No transfer charging.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC7-10 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-5 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	No LSU laser is output.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-11).
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB.
	No developing bias output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC7-1 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if developing bias is output when CN1-14 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.

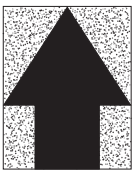
**(2) No image appears (entirely black).**

Print example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No main charging.	Broken main charger wire.	Replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-15).
		Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
		The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC7-4 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if main charging takes place when CN1-11 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	Video data problem.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB.


**(3) Image is too light.**

Print example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Insufficient toner.		If the display shows the message requesting toner replenishment, replace the container.
	Deteriorated toner.		Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Defective transfer charging output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC7-10 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	Defective high voltage PWB.		Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-5 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.

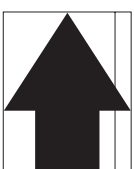
**(4) Background is visible.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Deteriorated toner.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-15).


**(5) A white line appears longitudinally.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Foreign matter in the developing unit.	Check if the magnetic brush is formed uniformly. Replace the developing unit if any foreign matter (see page 1-5-17).
	Defective laser beam output.	Replace the laser scanner unit.


**(6) A black line appears longitudinally.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-14).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-14).
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-15).


**(7) A black line appears laterally.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Flawed drum.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-14).
	Dirty developing section.	Clean any part contaminated with toner in the developing section.
	Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
	Leaking separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.

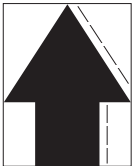
**(8) One side of the print image is darker than the other.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-15).


**(9) Black dots appear on the image.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-14).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-14).
	Dirty drum separation claws.	Clean the drum separation claws.
	Dirty the heat roller separation claws.	Clean the heat roller separation claws.

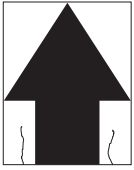
**(10) Image is blurred.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Deformed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-21).
	Paper conveying section drive problem.	Check the gears and belts and, if necessary, grease them.

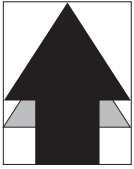
**(11) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Feed clutch, paper feed clutch, MP paper feed clutch or registration clutch installed or operating incorrectly.	Check the installation position and operation of each clutch. If any of them operates incorrectly, replace it.


**(12) Paper creases.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper curled.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Defective separation.	Check the drum separation claws and heat roller separation claws.

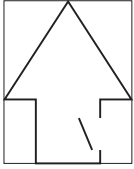
**(13) Offset occurs.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-14).
	Defective fuser unit.	Check the heat roller and press roller.
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.


**(14) Image is partly missing.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper creased.	Change the paper.
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-14).

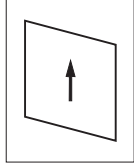
**(15) Fusing is poor.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Flawed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-21).
	Flawed fuser heater.	Replace the fuser heater (see page 1-5-22).

**(16) Image is out of focus.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.

**(17) Image is not square.**

Print example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Laser scanner unit positioned incorrectly.	Adjust the installation position of the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-13).

### 1-4-4 Electric problems

Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does not operate when the main power switch is turned on.	1. The power cord is not plugged in properly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	2. No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
	3. Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	4. Defective main power switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the main power switch.
	5. Defective power source PWB.	With AC present, check for 24 V DC at YC1-7 on the power source PWB, 5 V DC at YC1-6 and 3.3 V DC at YC1-5. If none, replace the power source PWB.
(2) The eject motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective eject motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the eject motor.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(3) The scanner motor or cooling fan motor 1 to 10 does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the motor.
(4) The upper/lower paper feed clutch, feed clutch 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch, MP feed clutch, registration clutch or duplex feed clutch does not operate.	1. Broken clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the clutch.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Upper paper feed clutch: YC14-B1 on the engine PWB Lower paper feed clutch: YC14-B4 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 1: YC11-14 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 2: YC13-A12 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 3: YC13-A5 on the engine PWB MP paper feed clutch: YC6-A9 on the engine PWB MP feed clutch: YC6-A11 on the engine PWB Registration clutch: YC14-B6 on the engine PWB Duplex feed clutch: YC10-B2 on the engine PWB
(5) The feedshift solenoid or toner feed solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(6) Main charging is not performed.	1. Broken main charger wire.	(See page 1-4-33.)
	2. Leaking main charger housing.	
	3. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	
	4. Defective engine PWB.	
	5. Defective high voltage PWB.	
(7) No developing bias is output.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	(See page 1-4-33.)
	2. Defective engine PWB.	
	3. Defective high voltage PWB.	
(8) Transfer charging is not performed.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	(See page 1-4-33.)
	2. Defective engine PWB.	
	3. Defective high voltage PWB.	
(9) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cassette 1/2 or MP tray.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of upper/lower paper switch or MP paper switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective upper/lower paper switch or MP paper switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not go low when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Upper paper switch: YC13-B12 on the engine PWB Lower paper switch: YC13-B18 on the engine PWB MP paper switch: YC6-A6 on the engine PWB
(10) The size of paper on the cassette 1/2 or MP tray is not displayed correctly.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of upper/lower paper size length switch, upper/lower paper size width switch, MP paper size length switch or MP paper size width switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective upper/lower paper size length switch or MP paper size length switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not go low when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Upper paper size length switch: YC13-B2 on the engine PWB Lower paper size length switch: YC13-A19 on the engine PWB MP paper size length switch: YC6-B11 on the engine PWB
	3. Defective upper/lower paper size width switch or MP paper size width switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the width guide in the cassette 1/2 or insert guide on the MP tray is moved, replace the switch. Upper paper size width switch: YC12-3, 4, 5 on the engine PWB Lower paper size width switch: YC12-9, 10, 11 on the engine PWB MP paper size width switch: YC6-A1, A2, A3 on the engine PWB

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying, fuser, eject or duplex section is indicated when the main power switch is turned on.	1. A piece of paper torn from print paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, feed-shift switch, eject switch or duplex paper conveying switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, feedshift switch, eject switch or duplex paper conveying switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn each switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(12) The message requesting cover to be closed is displayed when the front cover or left cover 1/2 is closed.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of front cover switch, left cover 1 switch or left cover 2 switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective front cover switch, left cover 1 switch or left cover 2 switch.	Check for continuity across each switch. If there is no continuity when the switch is on, replace it.
(13) Others.	1. Wiring is broken, shorted or makes poor contact.	Check for continuity. If none, repair.



## 1-4-5 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following rollers or pulleys are dirty with paper powder: upper/lower forwarding pulleys, upper/lower paper feed pulleys, upper/lower separation pulleys, feed rollers, registration rollers, MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the upper/lower forwarding pulleys, upper/lower paper feed pulleys or upper/lower separation pulleys is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-2).
	Check if the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or MP separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-4).
	Electrical problem with the following clutches: upper/lower paper feed clutches, feed clutches 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch and MP feed clutch.	See page 1-4-38.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the right and left registration rollers are dirty with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	See page 1-4-38.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Width guide in a cassette installed incorrectly.	Check the width guide visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed width guide in a cassette.	Check visually and replace any deformed guide.
	Check if a pressure spring along the paper conveying path is deformed or out of place.	Repair or replace.
(4) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the upper or lower separation pulley is worn.	Replace the upper or lower separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-2).
	Check if the MP separation pulley is worn.	Replace the MP separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-4).
(5) Paper jams.	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace any deformed guides.
	Check if the contact between the right and left registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the feed roller and feed pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the press roller is extremely dirty or deformed.	Clean or replace the press roller.
	Check if the contact between the heat roller and its separation claws is correct.	Repair if any springs are off the separation claws.
	Check if the contact between the eject roller and pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	The feedshift solenoid malfunctions.	See page 1-4-38.
	Check if the duplex feed pulley, upper duplex feed roller or lower duplex feed roller is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the developing unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the developing unit.
(7) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.
	Check if the following clutches are installed correctly: upper/lower paper feed clutches, feed clutches 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch and MP feed clutch.	Correct.

## **1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly**

### **(1) Precautions**

Be sure to turn the main switch off and disconnect the power plug before starting disassembly.

When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands.

The PWBs are susceptible to static charge. Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.

Use only the specified parts to replace the fuser unit thermostat. Never substitute electric wires, as the machine may be seriously damaged.

When replacing battery on a PWB, dispose properly according to laws and regulations.

When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.

### **(2) Drum**

Note the following when handling or storing the drum.

When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.

Keep the drum at an ambient temperature between 0°C/32°F and 35°C/95°F and at a relative humidity not higher than 85% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.

Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum.

Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Should it be touched by hands or stained with oil, clean it.

### **(3) Toner**

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place.

Avoid direct light and high humidity.

## 1-5-2 Paper feed section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.

#### Procedure

##### Removing the primary paper feed units

1. Open the front cover and pull out the cassettes 1 and 2.
2. Remove the screw and remove the primary paper feed unit.

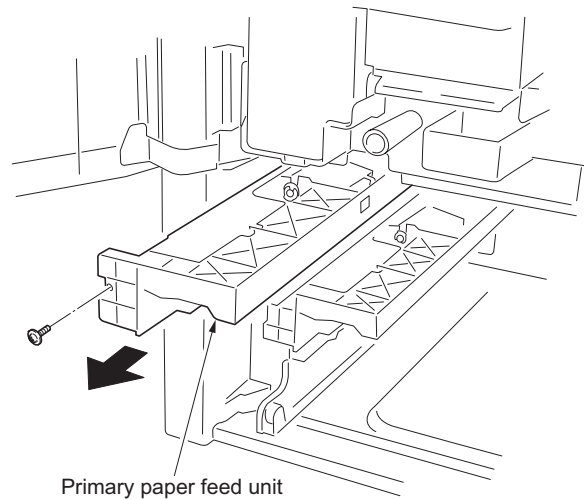


Figure 1-5-1

##### Removing the forwarding pulley

3. Remove the stopper from the primary paper feed unit.
4. Raise the forwarding pulley retainer in the direction the arrow, and remove from the primary paper feed unit.

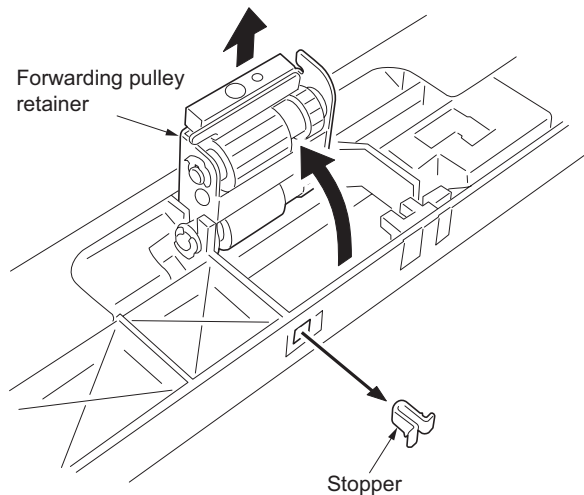


Figure 1-5-2

5. Remove the stop ring from the forwarding pulley retainer.
6. Remove the forwarding pulley from the forwarding pulley shaft.

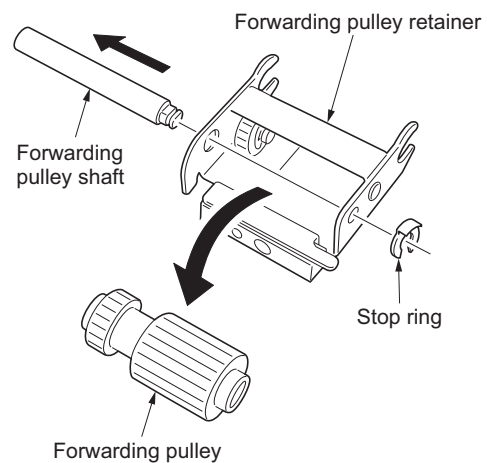


Figure 1-5-3

### Removing the paper feed pulley

7. Remove two stop rings from the primary paper feed unit.
8. Pull the paper feed pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the paper feed pulley.

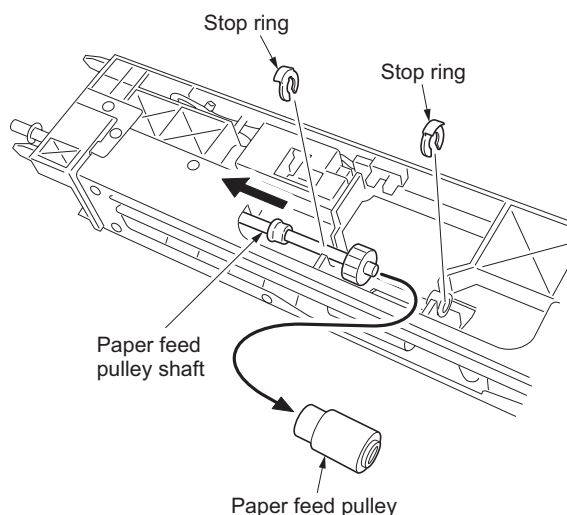


Figure 1-5-4

### Removing the separation pulley

9. Remove the stop ring from the primary paper feed unit.
10. Pull the separation pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the separation pulley.

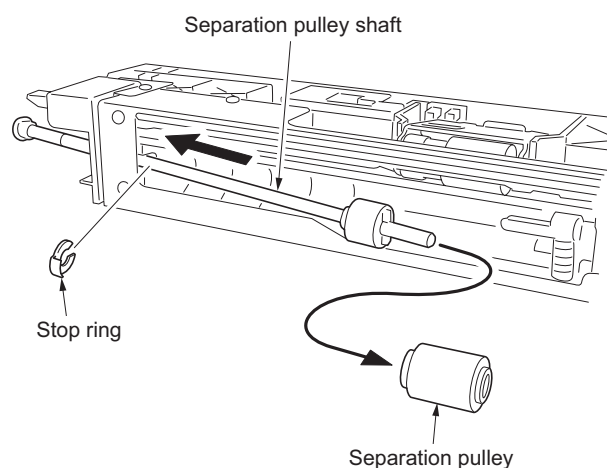


Figure 1-5-5

11. Replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.
12. Install the separation and paper feed pulleys to the primary paper feed unit.
13. Install the forwarding pulley to the forwarding pulley retainer.  
When refitting the forwarding pulley, orient it correctly as shown in Figure 1-5-6.
14. Refit the forwarding pulley retainer to the primary paper feed unit.
15. Refit the primary paper feed unit.

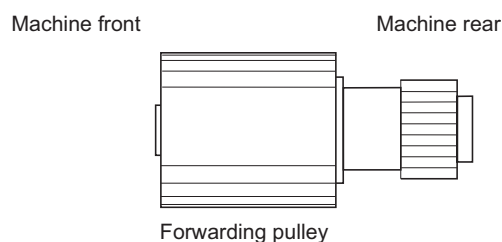


Figure 1-5-6

## (2) Detaching and refitting the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.

### Procedure

#### Removing the MP unit

1. Remove four screws and remove the right lower cover.

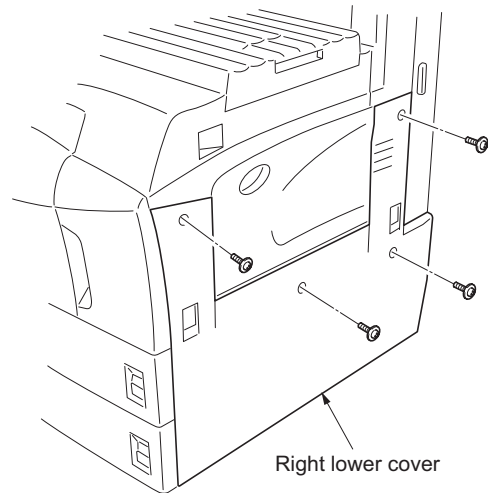


Figure 1-5-7

2. Remove two screws and two MP holder plates.
3. Remove two pins, two screws and two connectors, and then remove the MP unit.

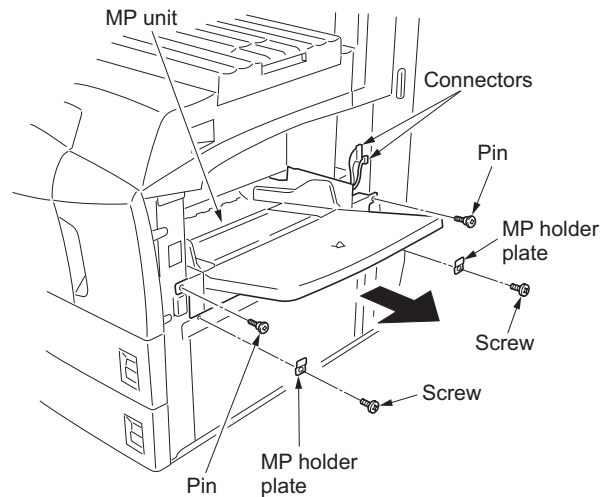


Figure 1-5-8

#### Removing the MP separation pulley

4. Reverse the MP unit and remove the spring and stop ring from the MP separation pulley shaft and move the bushing inside.

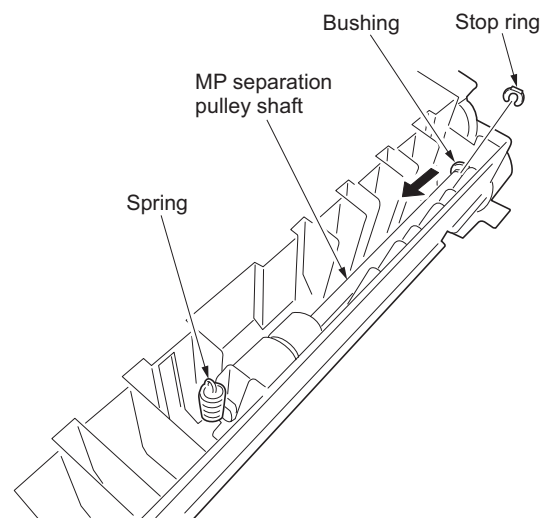
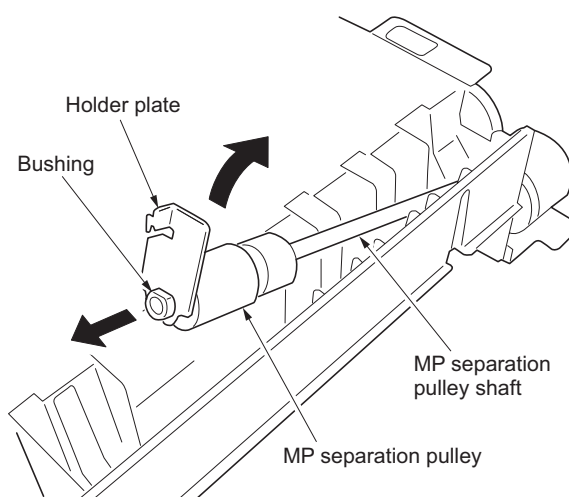


Figure 1-5-9

5. Raise the MP separation shaft as shown in the figure, remove the holder plate and the bushing, and then remove the MP separation pulley.

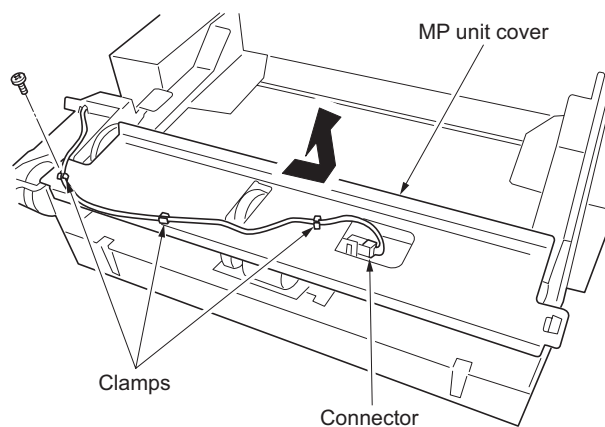
Take care not to remove the spring pin of the gear at the rear of the MP separation pulley shaft. If it is removed, refit it to its original position.



**Figure 1-5-10**

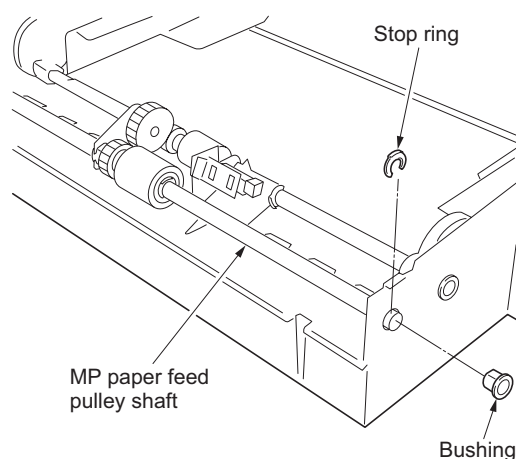
#### **Removing the MP paper feed pulley**

6. Remove the connector of the MP paper switch and remove the wire from the three clamps.
7. Remove the screw and remove the MP unit cover.



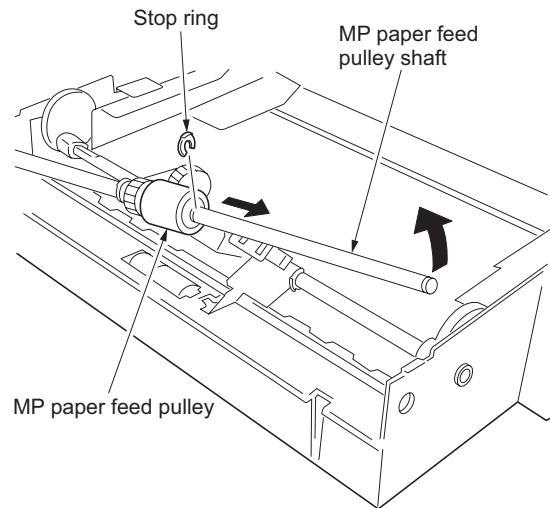
**Figure 1-5-11**

8. Remove the stop ring and bushing on the front of the MP paper feed pulley shaft.



**Figure 1-5-12**

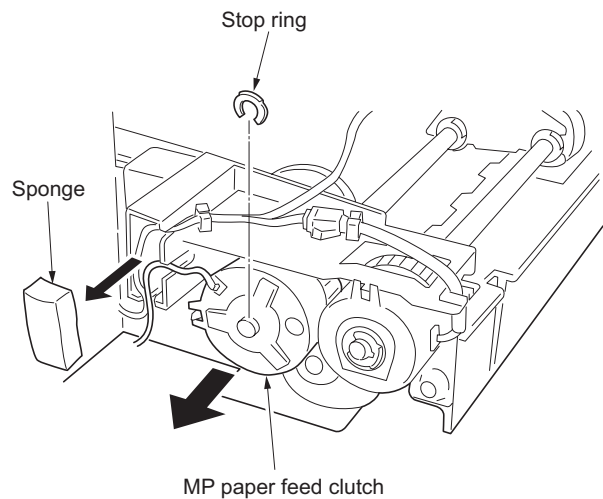
9. Raise the MP paper feed pulley shaft as shown in the figure, remove the stop ring, and then remove the MP paper feed pulley.



**Figure 1-5-13**

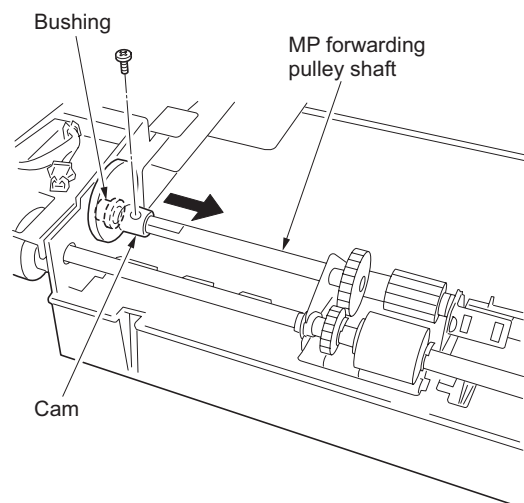
#### **Removing the MP forwarding pulley**

10. Remove the sponge.
  11. Remove the stop ring and MP paper feed clutch.
- When refitting, insert the cutout in the MP paper feed clutch over the stopper on the machine.



**Figure 1-5-14**

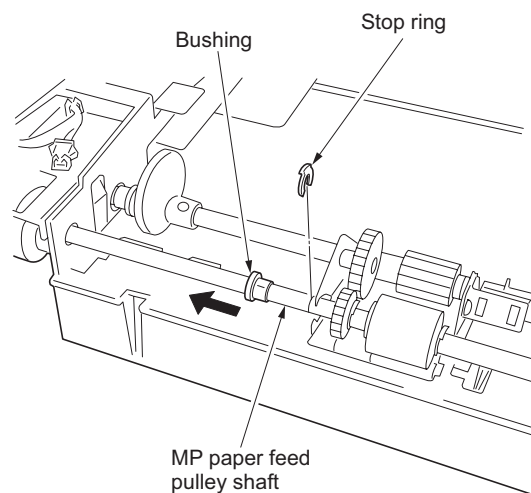
12. Remove the screw from the cam at the rear of the MP forwarding pulley shaft and move the cam and the bushing toward the inner side.



**Figure 1-5-15**

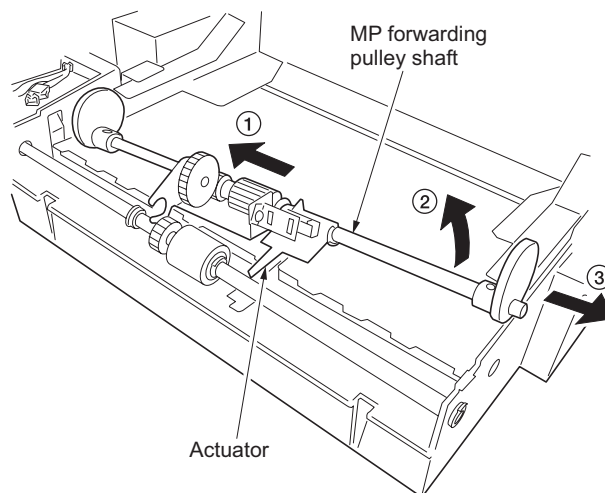


13. Remove the stop ring of the MP paper feed pulley shaft and slide the bushing in the direction of the arrow.



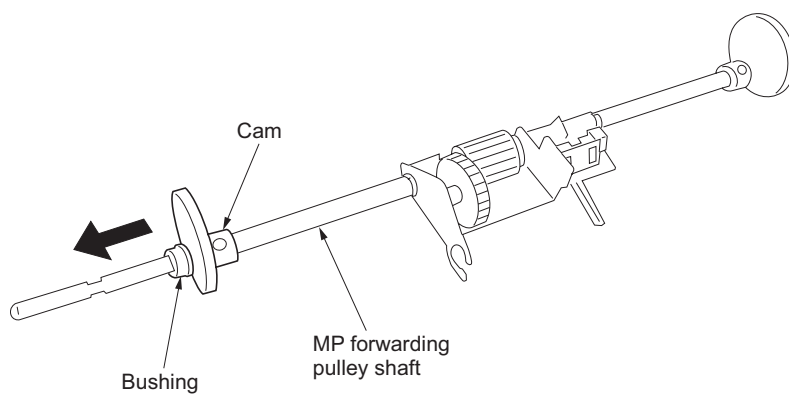
**Figure 1-5-16**

14. Slide the MP forwarding pulley shaft temporarily toward the rear side and then raise it to remove from the MP unit. Remove the shaft while raising the actuator of the MP paper switch.



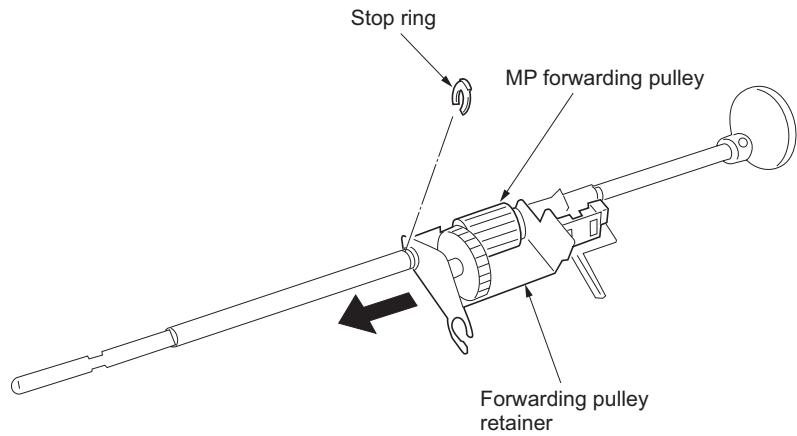
**Figure 1-5-17**

15. Remove the bushing and cam on the rear of the MP forwarding pulley shaft.



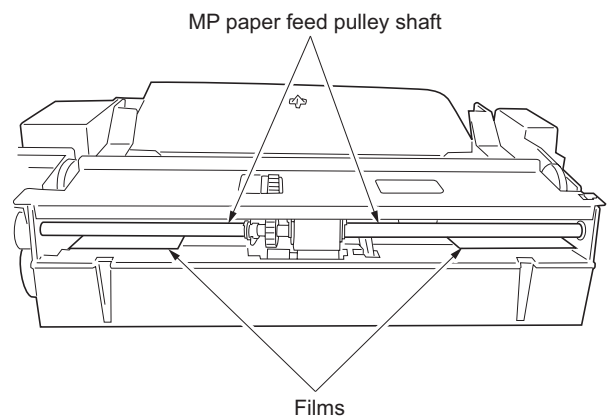
**Figure 1-5-18**

16. Remove the stop ring and slide the MP forwarding pulley with the forwarding pulley retainer from the shaft to remove it.
17. Replace the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.



**Figure 1-5-19**

18. Install the MP forwarding pulley to the MP forwarding pulley shaft.
19. Refit the MP forwarding pulley shaft to the MP unit.
20. Install the MP paper feed pulley to the MP unit.
21. Refit the MP unit cover to the MP unit.  
When refitting the MP unit cover, the films on the cover are positioned under the MP paper feed pulley shaft.
22. Install the MP separation pulley to the MP unit.
23. Refit the MP unit.



**Figure 1-5-20**

### (3) Detaching and refitting the left and right registration cleaner

Take the following procedure when the left or right registration cleaner is to be replaced.

#### Procedure

##### Removing the left registration cleaner

1. Open the left cover 1 and remove the transfer roller unit. (see page 1-5-18).
2. Remove two roller stoppers and remove the left registration roller.
3. Remove two registration guides.

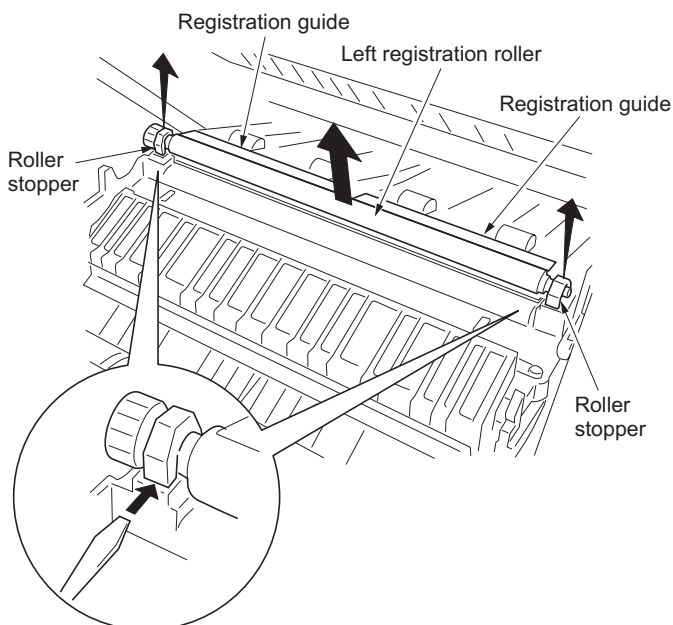


Figure 1-5-21

4. Remove the left registration cleaner.
5. Replace the left registration cleaner and registration guides.  
Install the left registration cleaner and registration guides.
6. Refit the left registration roller, roller stoppers and transfer roller unit.

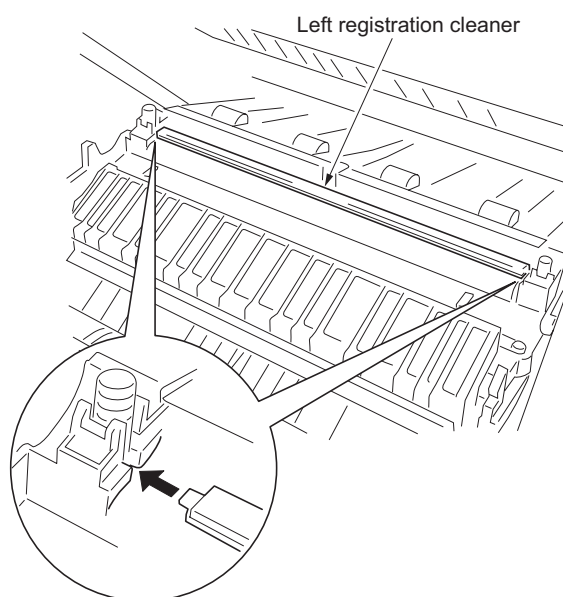
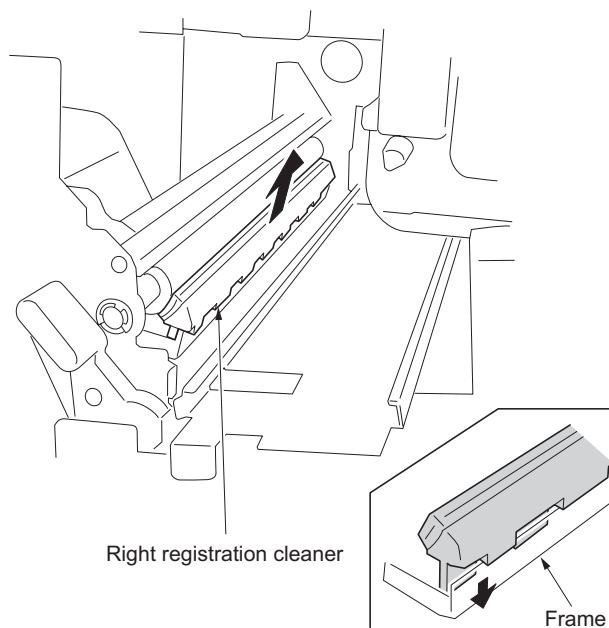


Figure 1-5-22

**Removing the right registration cleaner**

1. Remove the developing unit and drum unit.  
(see pages 1-5-17 and 14).
2. Remove the right registration cleaner.
3. Replace the right registration cleaner and  
Install the cleaner.
4. Refit the drum unit and developing unit.



**Figure 1-5-23**

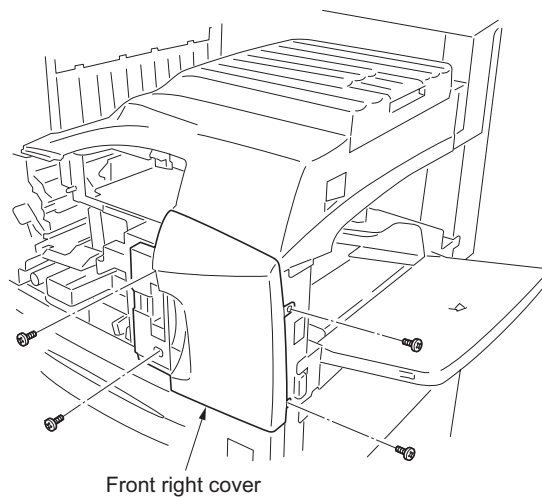
### 1-5-3 Laser scanner unit

#### (1) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit

Take the following procedure when the laser scanner unit is to be replaced.

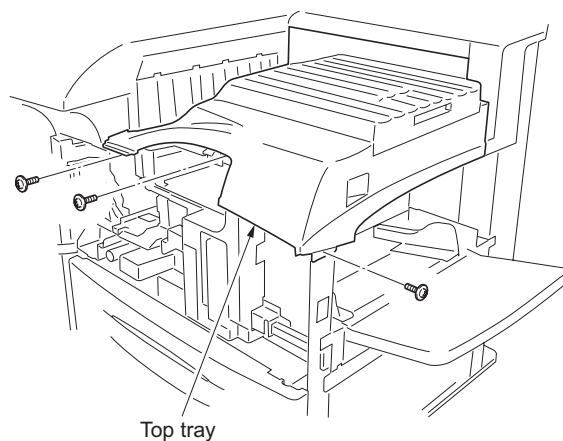
##### Procedure

1. Remove the developing unit and drum unit (see pages 1-5-14 and 17).
2. Remove the right lower cover (see pages 1-5-4).
3. Remove four screws and remove the front right cover.



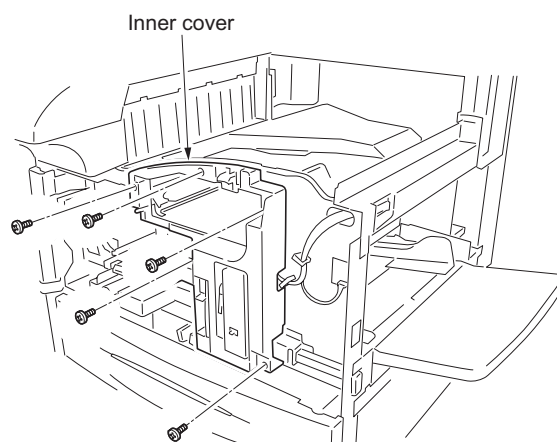
**Figure 1-5-24**

4. Remove three screws and remove the top tray.



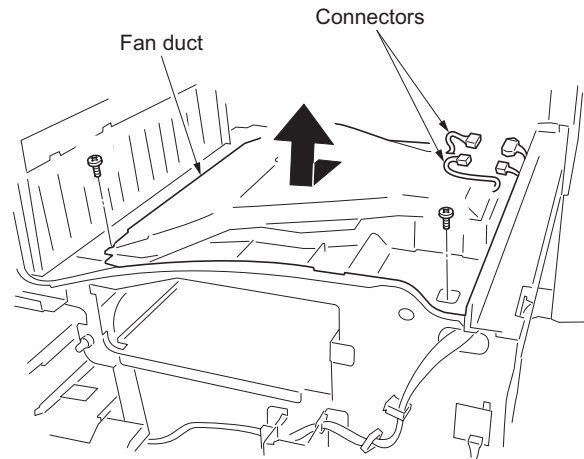
**Figure 1-5-25**

5. Remove five screws and remove the inner cover.



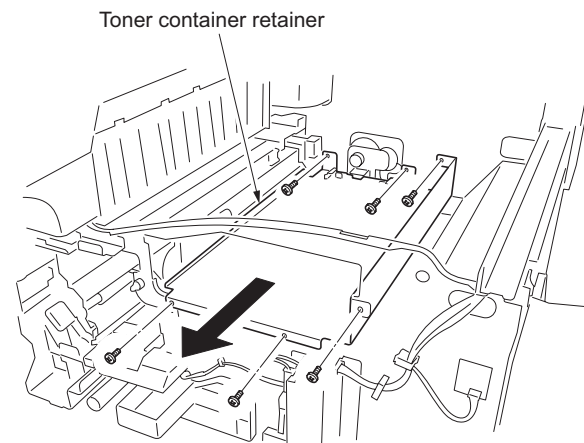
**Figure 1-5-26**

6. Remove two screws and two connectors, and then remove the fan duct.



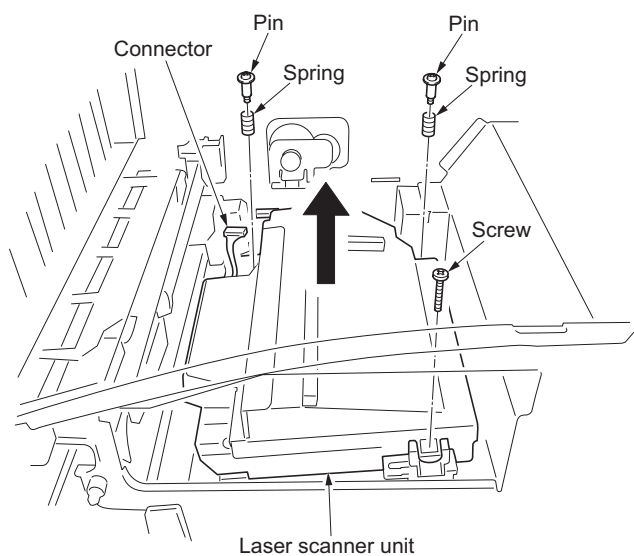
**Figure 1-5-27**

7. Remove six screws and remove the toner container retainer.



**Figure 1-5-28**

8. Remove two pins and two spring. Remove the screw and the connector, and then remove the laser scanner unit.
9. Replace the laser scanner unit and install the unit.
10. Refit the toner container retainer, fan duct and inner cover.
11. Refit the top tray, front right cover and right lower cover.
12. Refit the drum unit and the developing unit.



**Figure 1-5-29**

## (2) Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if the leading and trailing edges of the print image are laterally skewed (lateral squareness not obtained).

Since this adjustment uses the test page that is output from the maintenance mode, prepare the compact flash card to which the maintenance mode has been written and load the maintenance mode to the printer to carry out this adjustment (See page 1-3-1).

### Procedure

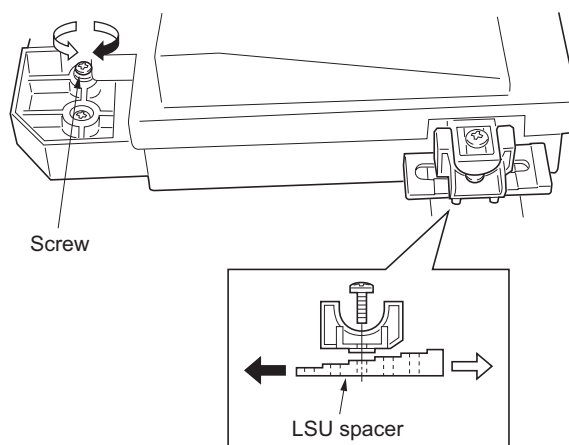
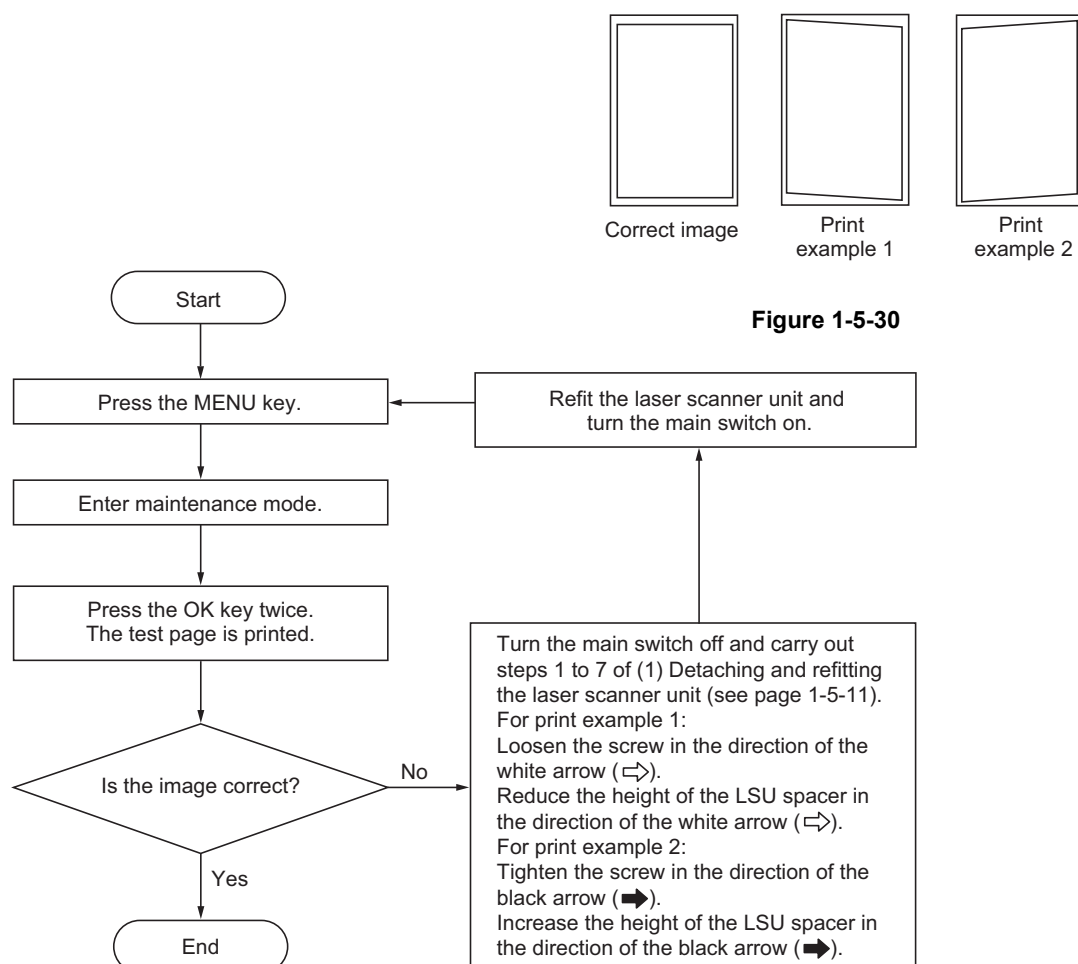


Figure 1-5-31

## 1-5-4 Drum section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit

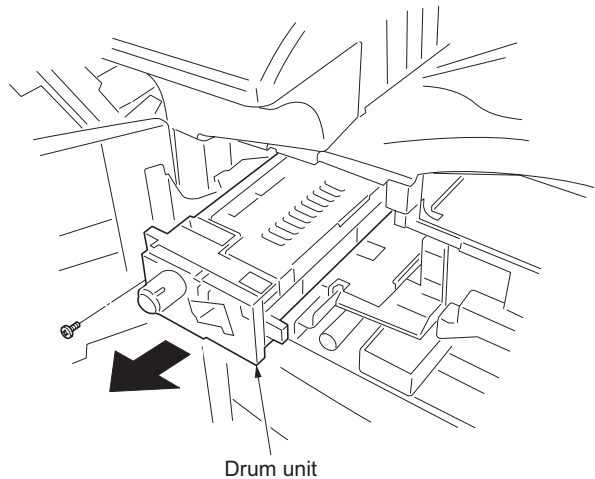
Follow the procedure below to replace the drum unit.

#### Cautions:

Avoid direct sunlight or strong light when detaching and refitting the drum unit.  
Never touch the drum surface when holding the drum unit.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the developing unit (see page 1-5-17).
2. Remove the main charger unit (see page 1-5-15).
3. Remove the screw and the drum unit.
4. Replace the drum unit and install the unit.



**Figure 1-5-32**

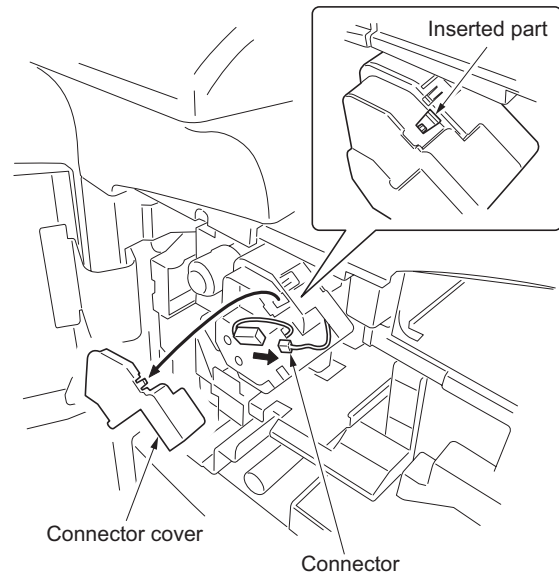


**(2) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit**

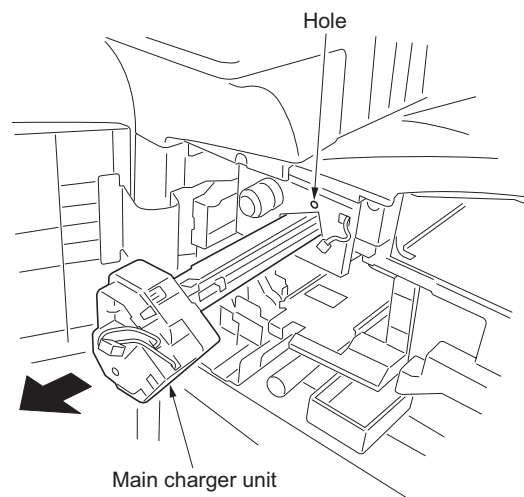
Follow the procedure below to replace the main charger unit.

**Procedure**

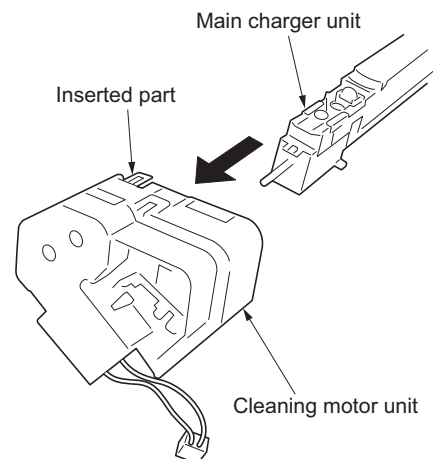
1. Remove the developing unit (see page 1-5-17).
2. Release the inserted part and remove the connector cover.
3. Remove the connector.

**Figure 1-5-33**

4. While pushing the hole with a sharp-pointed object, remove the main charger unit.

**Figure 1-5-34**

5. Release the inserted part and remove the cleaning motor unit from the main charger unit.
6. Replace the main charger unit.
7. Refit the cleaning motor unit to the main charger unit.
8. Install the main charger unit.

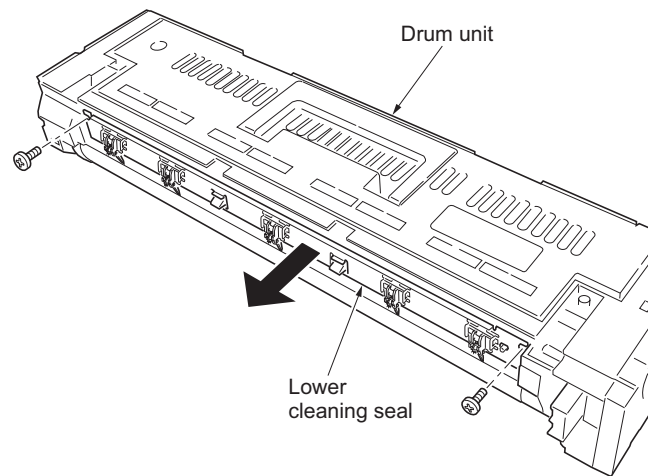
**Figure 1-5-35**

**(3) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws**

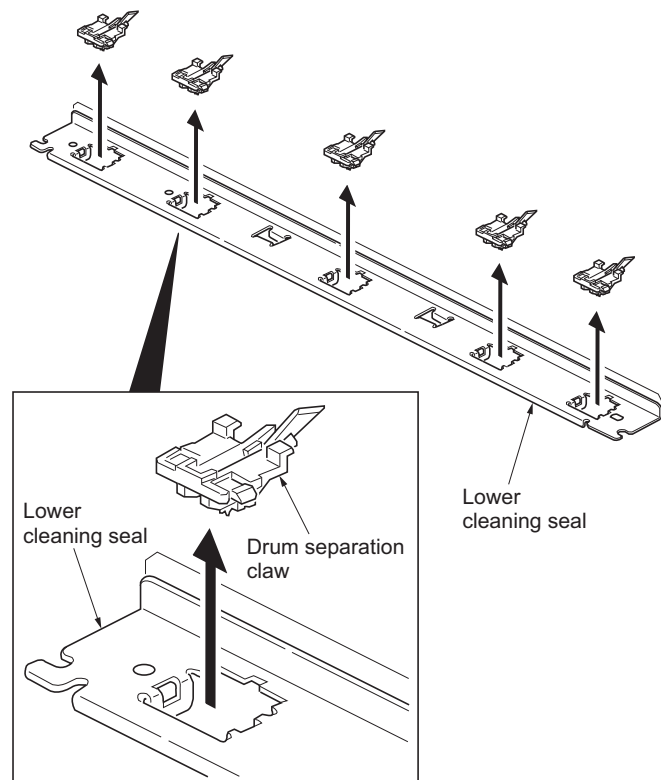
Follow the procedure below to replace the drum separation claws.

**Procedure**

1. Remove the developing unit (see page 1-5-17).
2. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-14).
3. Remove two screws and remove the lower cleaning seal.

**Figure 1-5-36**

4. Release the inserted part and remove the drum separation claws from the lower cleaning seal.
5. Replace the drum separation claws and install the claws.
6. Refit the lower cleaning seal to the drum unit.
7. Refit the drum unit and developing unit.

**Figure 1-5-37**

## 1-5-5 Developing section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the developing unit.

#### Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the toner container and waste toner box.
3. Remove the pin and turn the developing release lever in the direction of the arrow.

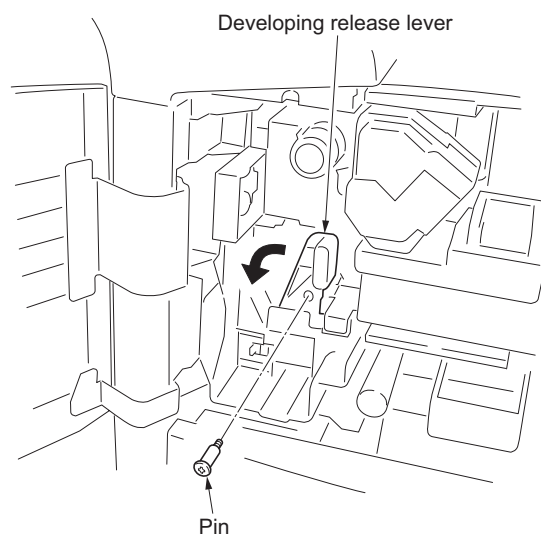


Figure 1-5-38

4. Remove the developing unit.
5. Replace the developing unit and install the unit.

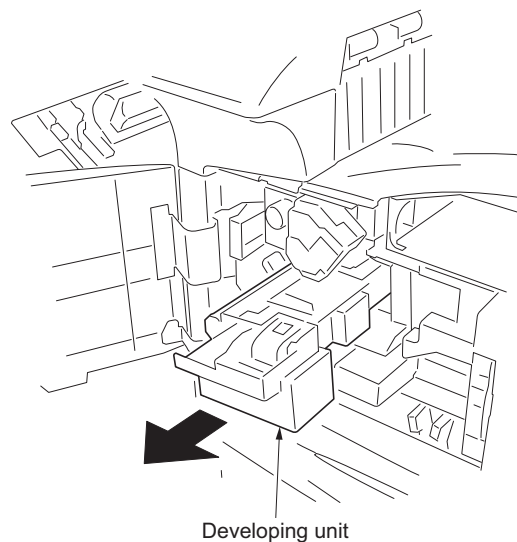


Figure 1-5-39

## 1-5-6 Transfer section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer roller unit.

#### Procedure

1. Open the left cover 1.
2. While holding down the projection, slide the transfer roller unit toward the front to remove it.
3. Replace the transfer roller unit and install the unit.

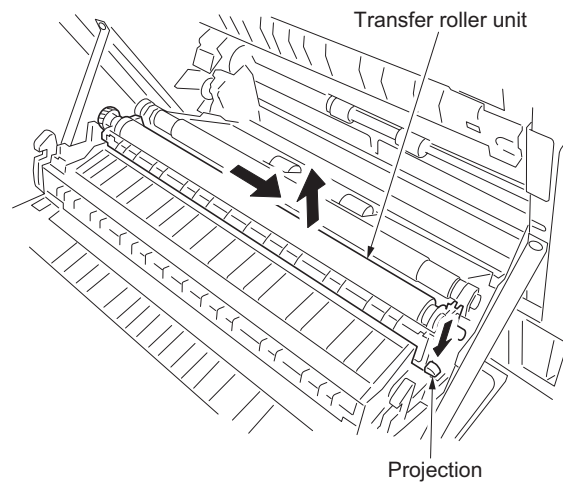


Figure 1-5-40

## 1-5-7 Fuser section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit

Follow the procedure below to check or replace the fuser unit.

#### Procedure

1. Open the front cover and left cover 1.
2. Remove two screws and remove front left cover.

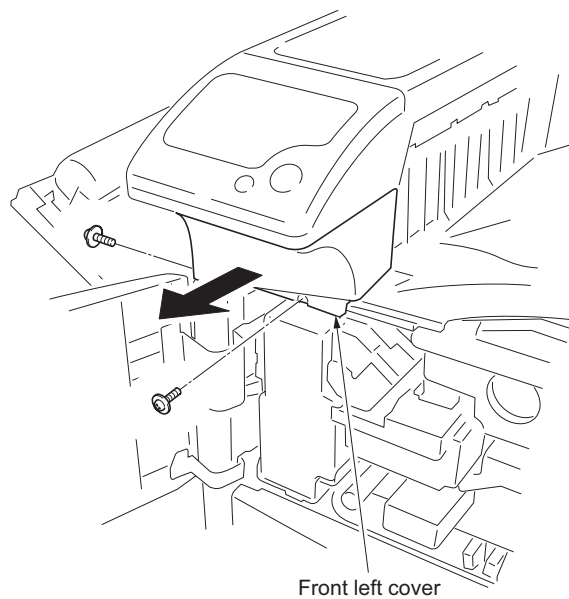


Figure 1-5-41

3. Remove the screw and remove the fuser unit.
4. Check or replace the fuser unit and install the unit.

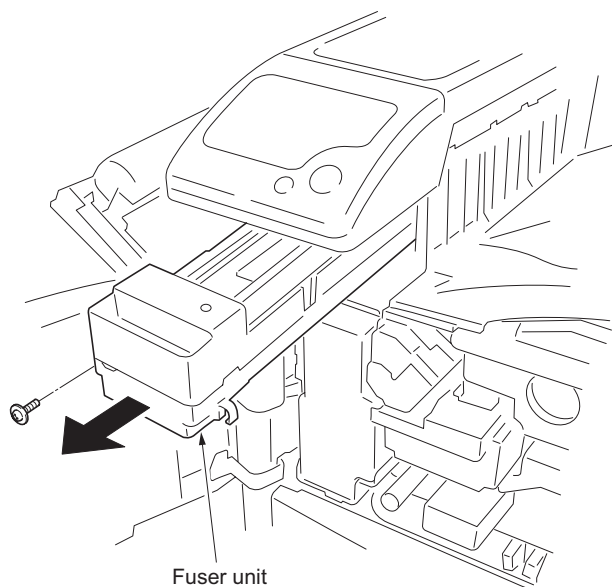


Figure 1-5-42

## (2) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller separation claws.

### Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit. (see page 1-5-19)
2. Remove the two pins and remove the upper fuser cover while holding the four claws.

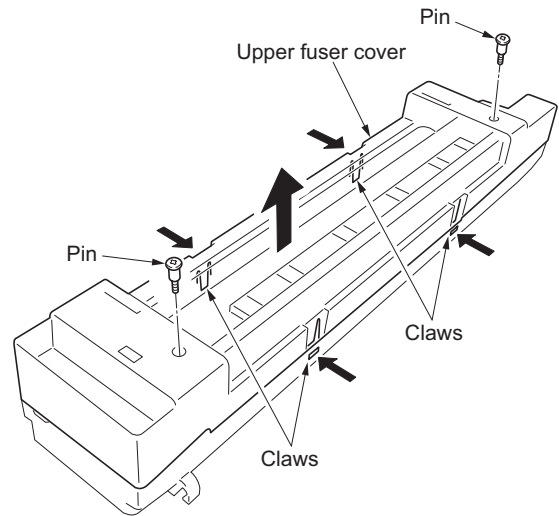


Figure 1-5-43

3. Remove the heat roller separation claws from the upper fuser cover.
4. Replace the heat roller separation claws and install the claws to upper fuser cover.
5. Refit the upper fuser cover.
6. Refit the fuser unit.

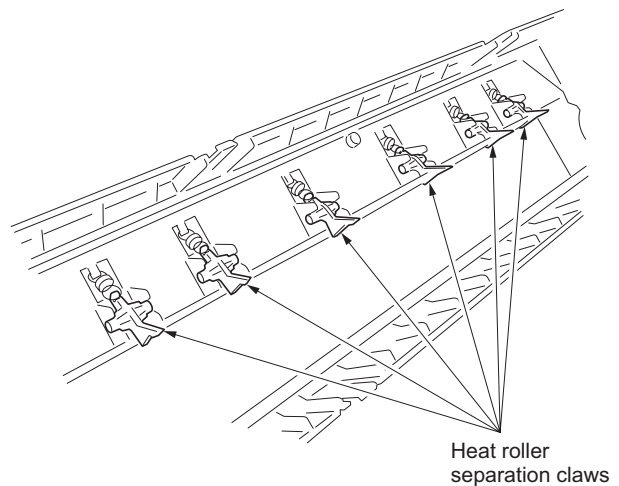


Figure 1-5-44

### (3) Detaching and refitting the press roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the press roller.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-19).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-20).
3. Remove the front and rear press springs.

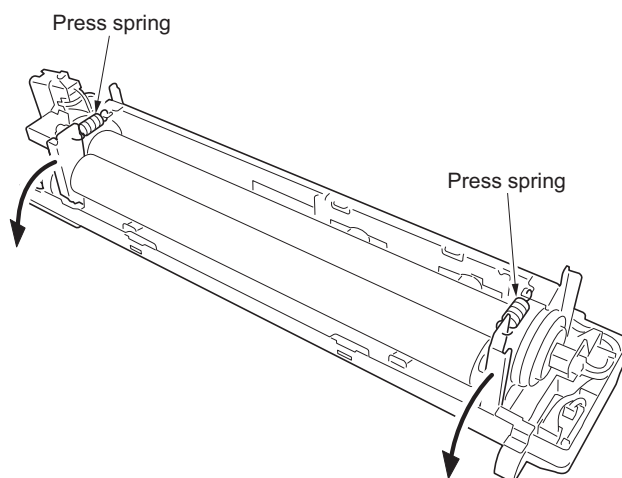


Figure 1-5-45

4. Remove the press roller from the fuser unit.
5. Replace the press roller and install the roller to fuser unit.
6. Refit the upper fuser cover.
7. Refit the fuser unit.

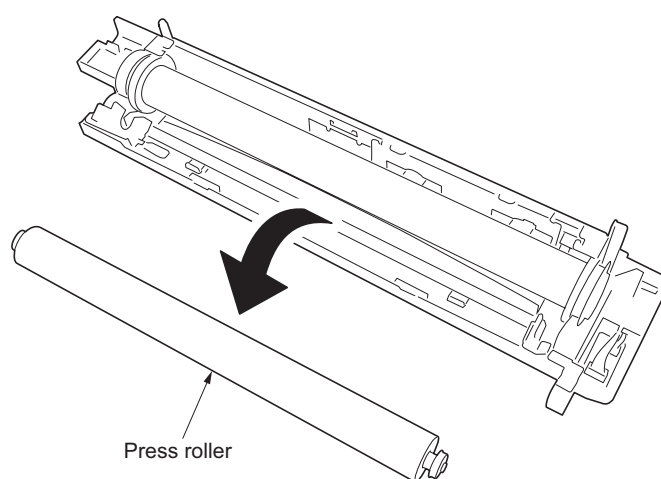


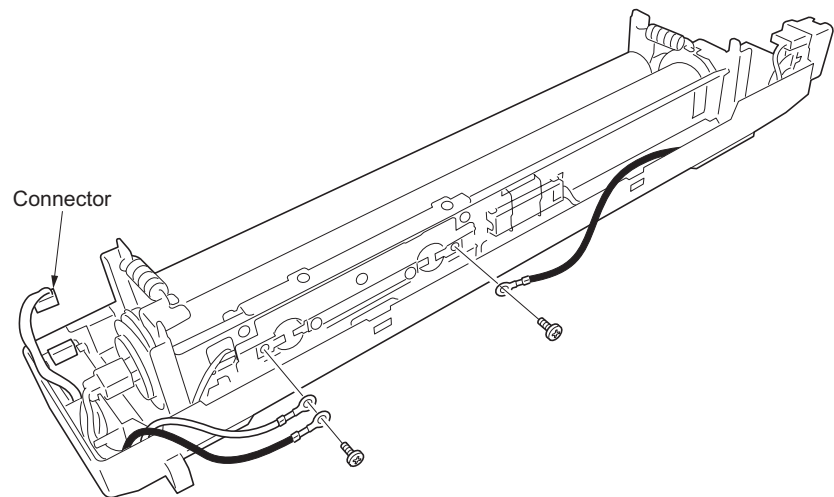
Figure 1-5-46

#### (4) Detaching and refitting the fuser heater

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser heater.

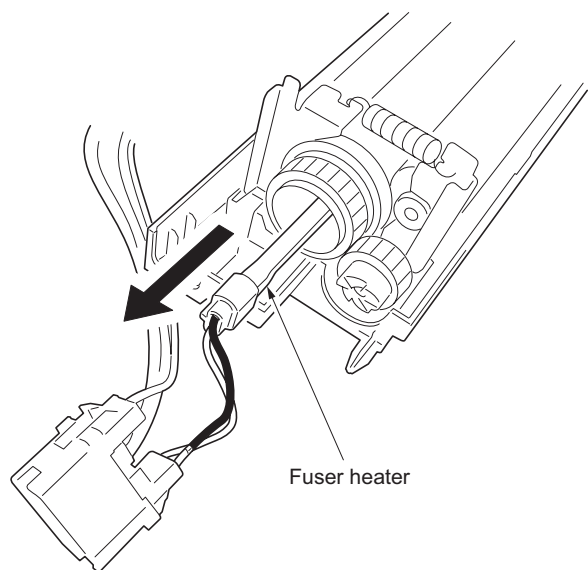
##### Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-19).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-20).
3. Remove two screws and the connector.



**Figure 1-5-47**

4. Pull out the fuser heater from the fuser unit.



**Figure 1-5-48**

5. Replace the fuser heater and install the heater to fuser unit.
6. Refit the upper fuser cover.
7. Refit the fuser unit.

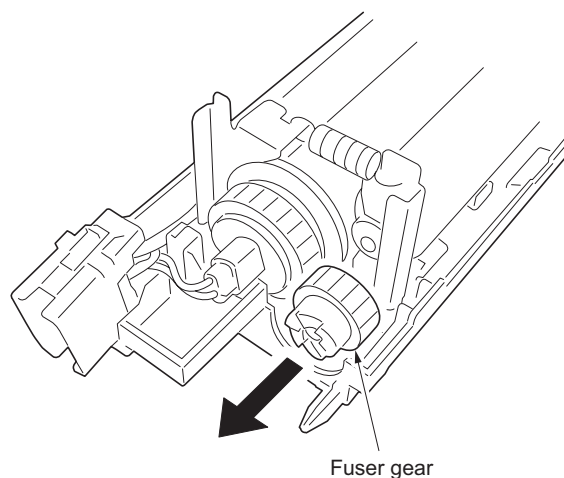


### (5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller.

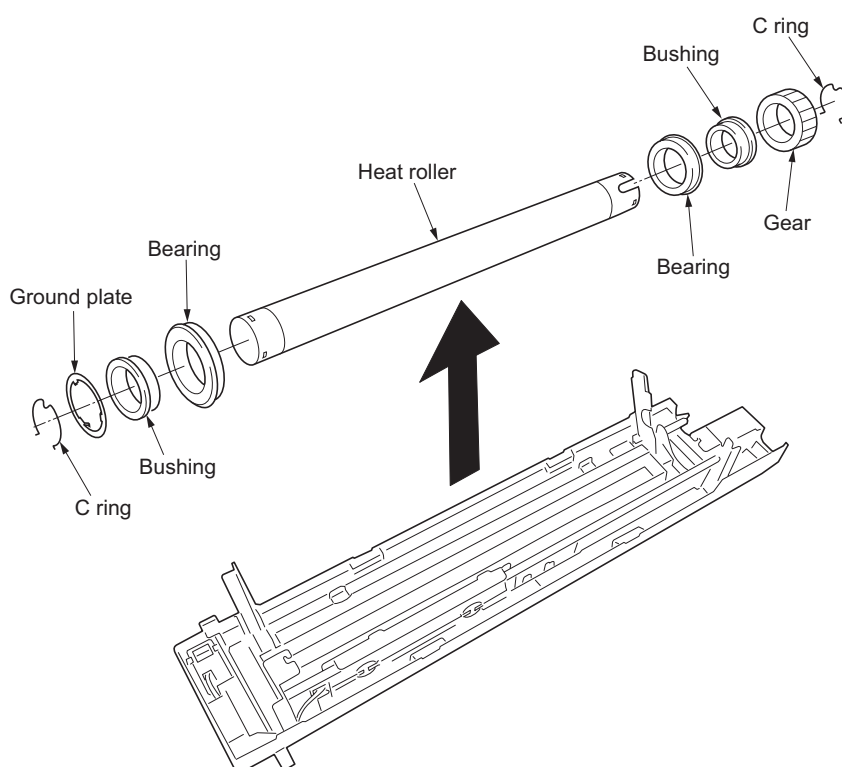
#### Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-19).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-20).
3. Remove the press roller and fuser heater (see page 1-5-21 and 22).
4. Remove the fuser gear.



**Figure 1-5-49**

5. Remove the heat roller from the fuser unit. Remove the C ring, gear, bearing and bushing on the rear side of the heat roller and remove the C ring, ground plate, bearing and bushing on the front side.
6. Replace the heat roller and install the roller to fuser unit.



**Figure 1-5-50**

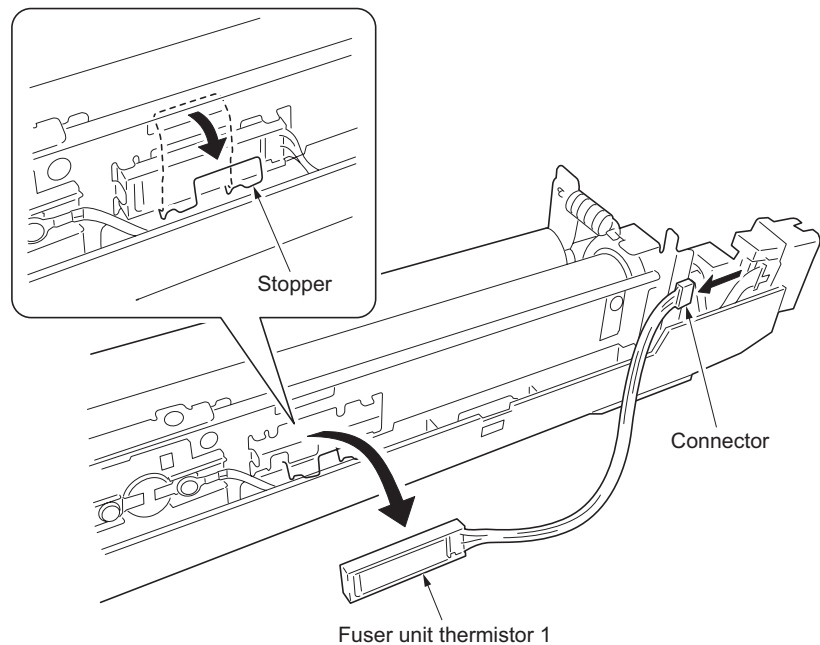
7. Refit the fuser gear.
8. Refit the fuser heater, press roller and upper fuser cover.
9. Refit the fuser unit.

**(6) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit thermistor 1 and 2**

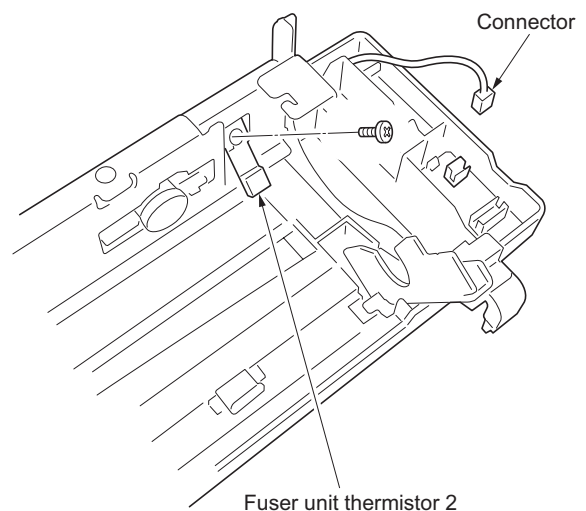
Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser unit thermistor 1 and 2.

**Procedure**

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-19).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-20).
3. Release the stopper of the fuser unit thermistor 1.
4. Remove the connector and remove the fuser unit thermistor 1.
5. Replace the fuser unit thermistor 1 and install the thermistor to fuser unit.

**Figure 1-5-51**

6. Remove the press roller and fuser heater (see page 1-5-21 and 22).
7. Remove the heat roller (see page 1-5-23).
8. Remove the screw and the connector, and then remove the fuser unit thermistor 2.
9. Replace the fuser unit thermistor 2 and install the thermistor to fuser unit.
10. Refit the heat roller, fuser heater, press roller and upper fuser cover.
11. Refit the fuser unit.

**Figure 1-5-52**

## 1-5-8 Others

### (1) Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the ozone filter 1 and 2.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the ozone filter 1 from the machine left side.

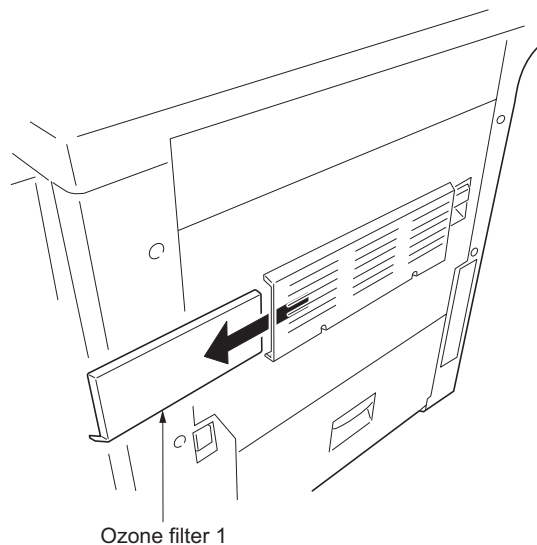


Figure 1-5-53

2. Remove the screw and remove the filter upper cover.
3. Open the filter cover and remove the ozone filter 2.
4. Replace the ozone filter 1 and 2 and install the filters.

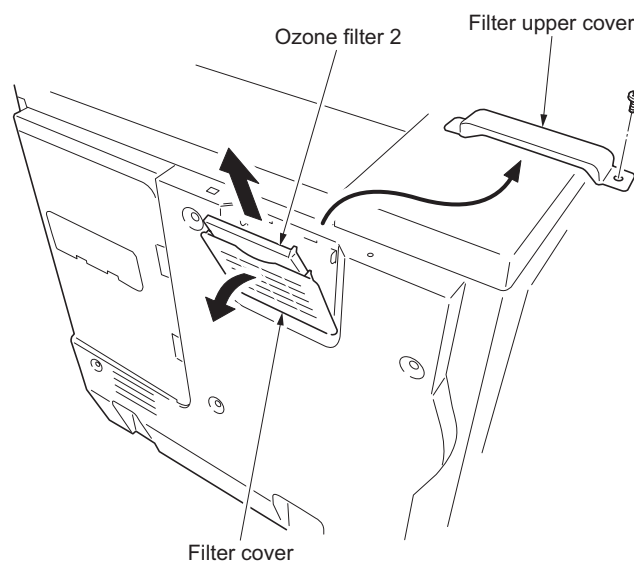


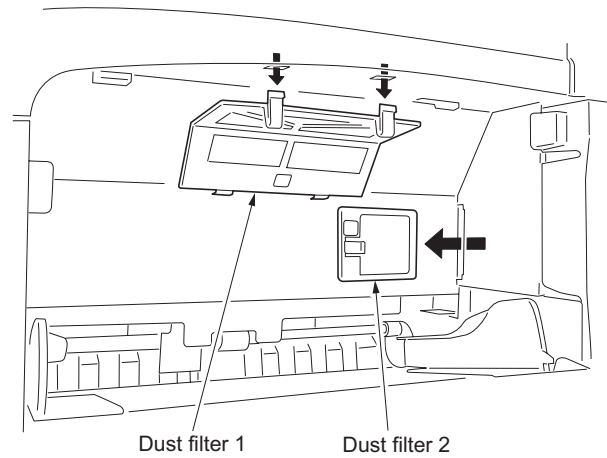
Figure 1-5-54

## (2) Detaching and refitting the dust filter 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the dust filter 1 and 2.

### Procedure

1. Open the MP tray.
2. Remove the dust filter 1 and 2 from the machine.
3. Replace the dust filter 1 and 2 and install the filters.

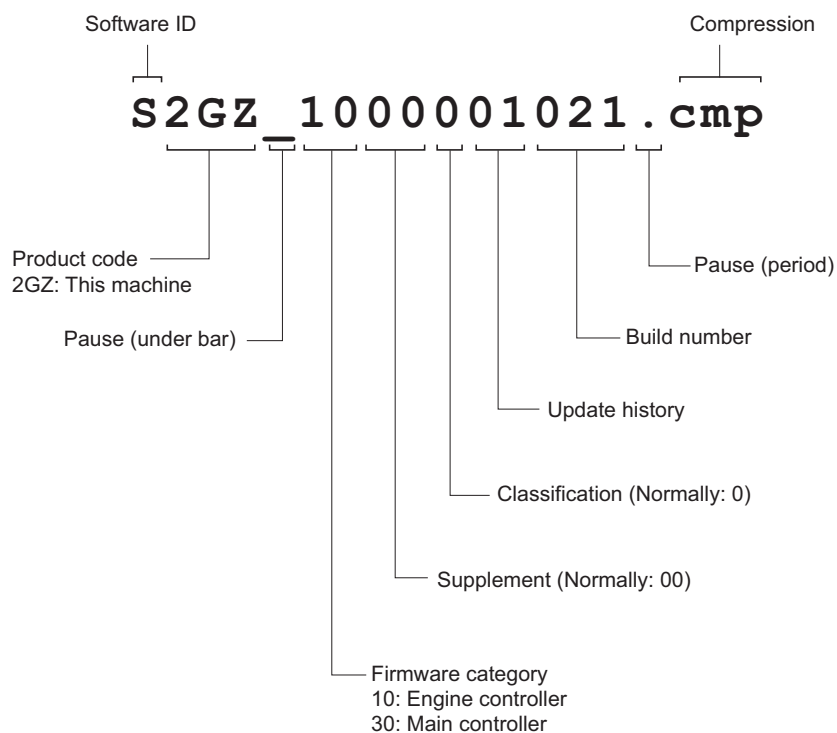


**Figure 1-5-55**

## 1-6-1 Downloading firmware

The system firmware can be update by downloading new firmware. Downloading can be made either by directly sending the new firmware from PC via the parallel interface or using a memory card that contains the new firmware.

### Firmware file name example



**Figure 1-6-1**

### (1) Downloading the firmware from the parallel interface

To download the system firmware using the parallel interface, use the procedure below.

#### Procedure

1. Turn printer and PC power off.
2. Connect the parallel printer cable between the PC and the printer.

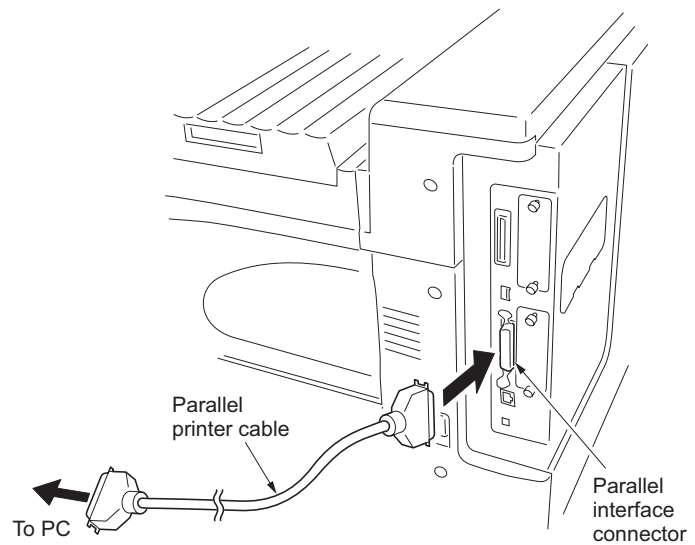


Figure 1-6-2

3. Turn the main switch on.
4. Confirm that display (1) is displayed.
5. At the DOS prompt, enter command (2).  
\* Enter UPGR "SYS" in capitals.
6. Confirm that message display (3) is displayed.
7. At the DOS prompt, enter command (4) so that the system firmware (example: S2GZ\_3000001021.cmp) is copied to the printer.
8. Message display (5) is displayed during downloading. When message display (6) is displayed to indicate downloading is finished, turn the main switch off and then turn on.
9. Confirm that message display (7) is displayed after warm-up.
10. Print a status page. Check that the status page shows the updated firmware version.

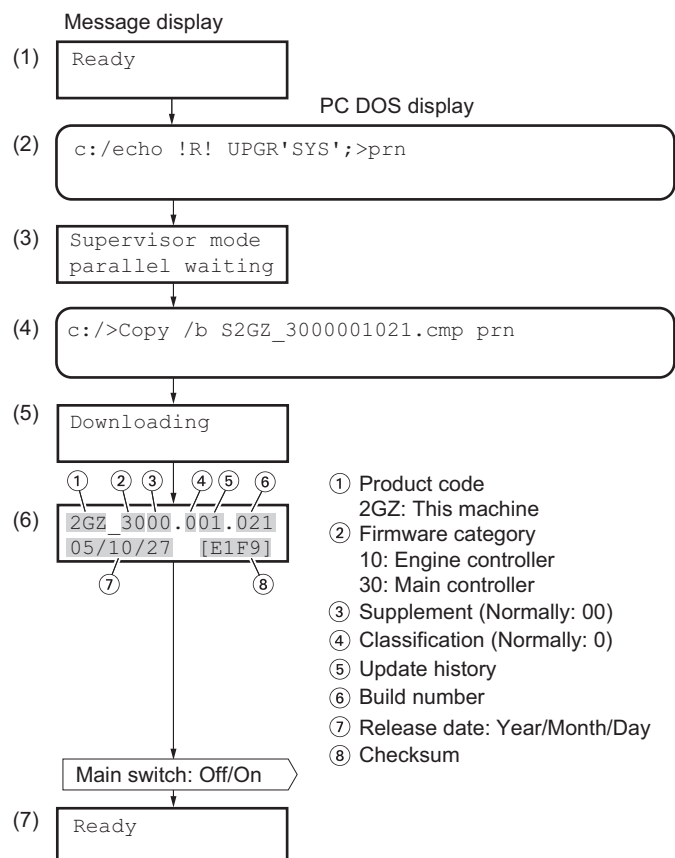


Figure 1-6-3

## (2) Downloading the firmware from the memory card

The procedure below provides how to download firmware from a memory card.

### Procedure

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Insert the memory card into the printer's memory card slot.

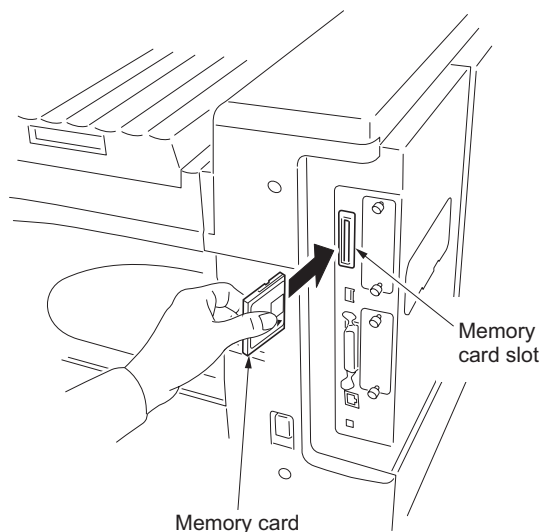


Figure 1-6-4

3. Turn the main switch on.
4. Press Menu key on the printer's operation panel and carry out the memory card formatting procedure (1).
5. When formatting is complete, turn the main switch off.

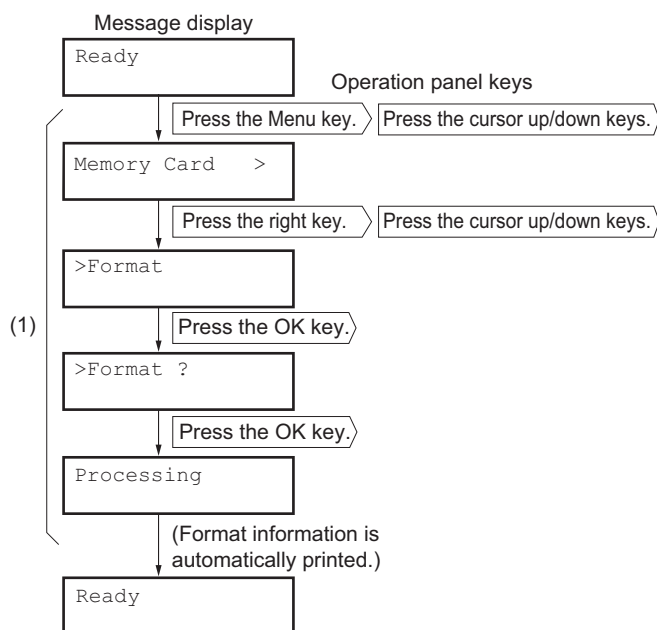


Figure 1-6-5

6. Remove the formatted memory card from the memory card slot.
7. Insert the memory card to the PC's slot or to the adaptor.
8. Copy the firmware file to download to the root directory of the memory card.
9. Remove the memory card from the PC's slot or the adaptor.

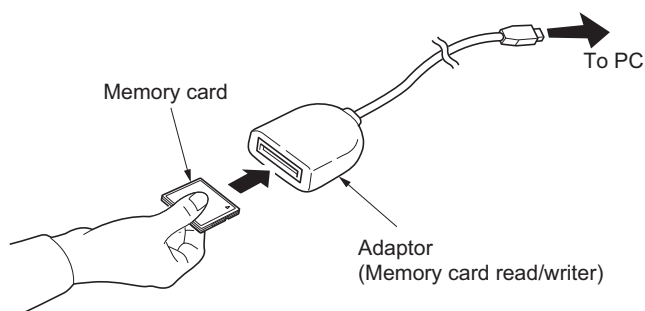


Figure 1-6-6

10. Confirm that the main switch is set to off.
11. Insert the memory card into the printer's memory card slot.

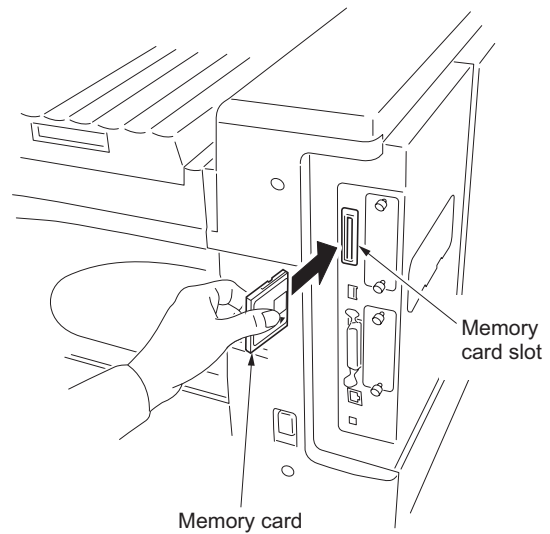


Figure 1-6-7

12. Turn the main switch on.
13. When message display (1) is displayed to detect firmware in the memory card.
14. Message display (2) is displayed during downloading.
15. When message display (3) is displayed to indicate downloading is finished.
16. Turn the main switch off.
17. Remove the memory card from memory card slot.
18. Turn the main switch on.
19. Confirm that message display (4) is displayed after warm-up.
20. Print the status page. Print the status page to check that the firmware version has been updated.

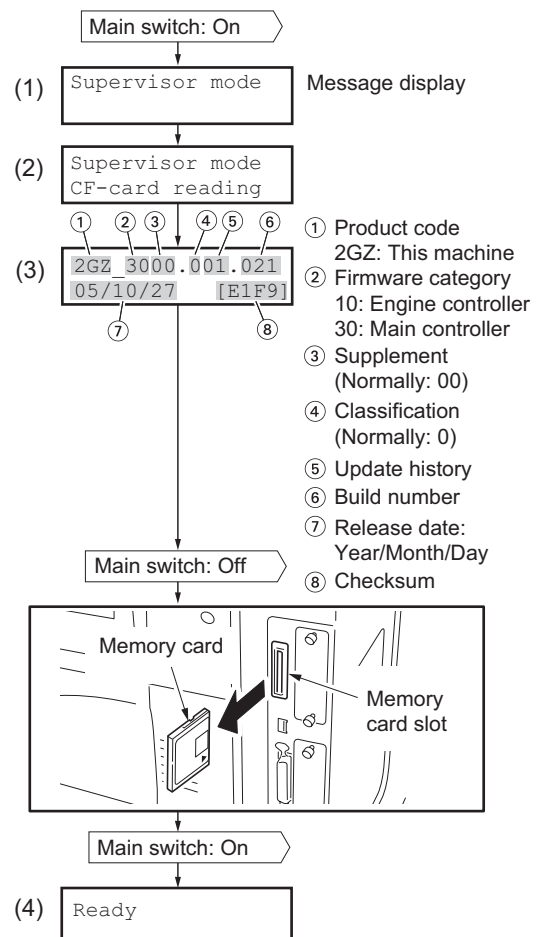


Figure 1-6-8



### (3) Downloading the firmware from the USB memory

The procedure below provides how to download firmware from a USB memory.

#### Procedure

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Connect the USB memory to the PC.  
Copy the firmware file to the root directory of the USB memory.
3. Remove the USB memory from the PC and then insert the USB memory into the printer's USB memory slot.

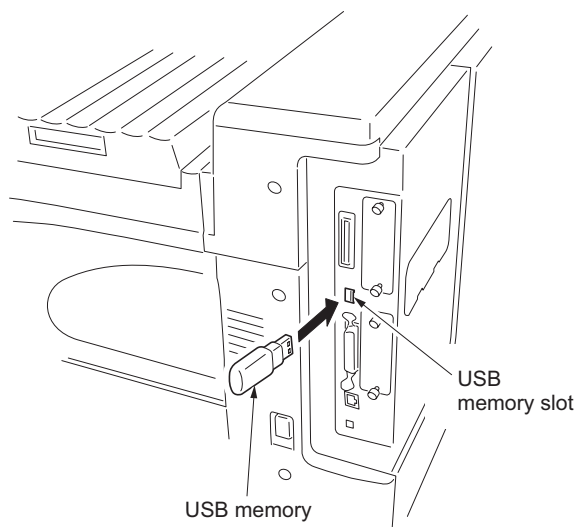


Figure 1-6-9

4. Turn the main switch on.
5. When message display (1) is displayed to detect firmware in the USB memory.
6. Message display (2) is displayed during downloading.
7. When message display (3) is displayed to indicate downloading is finished.
8. Turn the main switch off.
9. Remove the USB memory from USB memory slot.
10. Turn the main switch on.
11. Confirm that message display (4) is displayed after warm-up.
12. Print the status page. Print the status page to check that the firmware version has been updated.

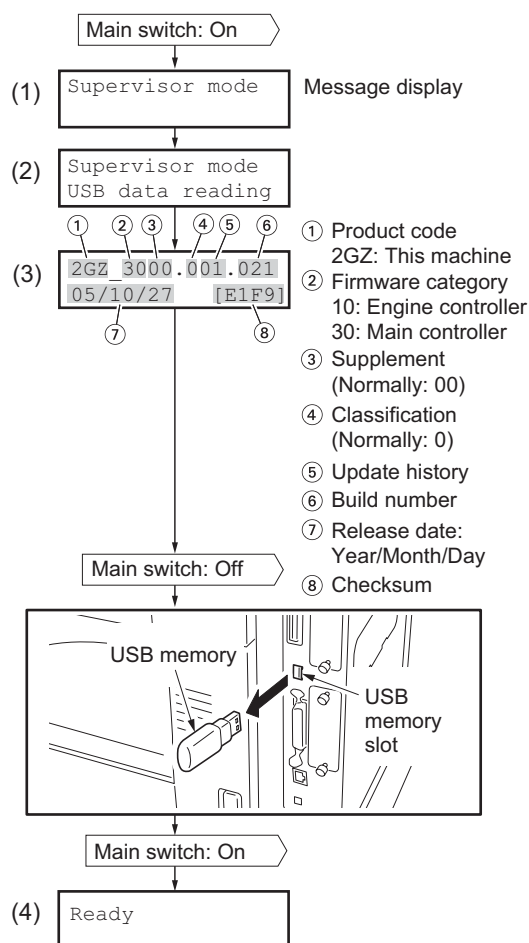


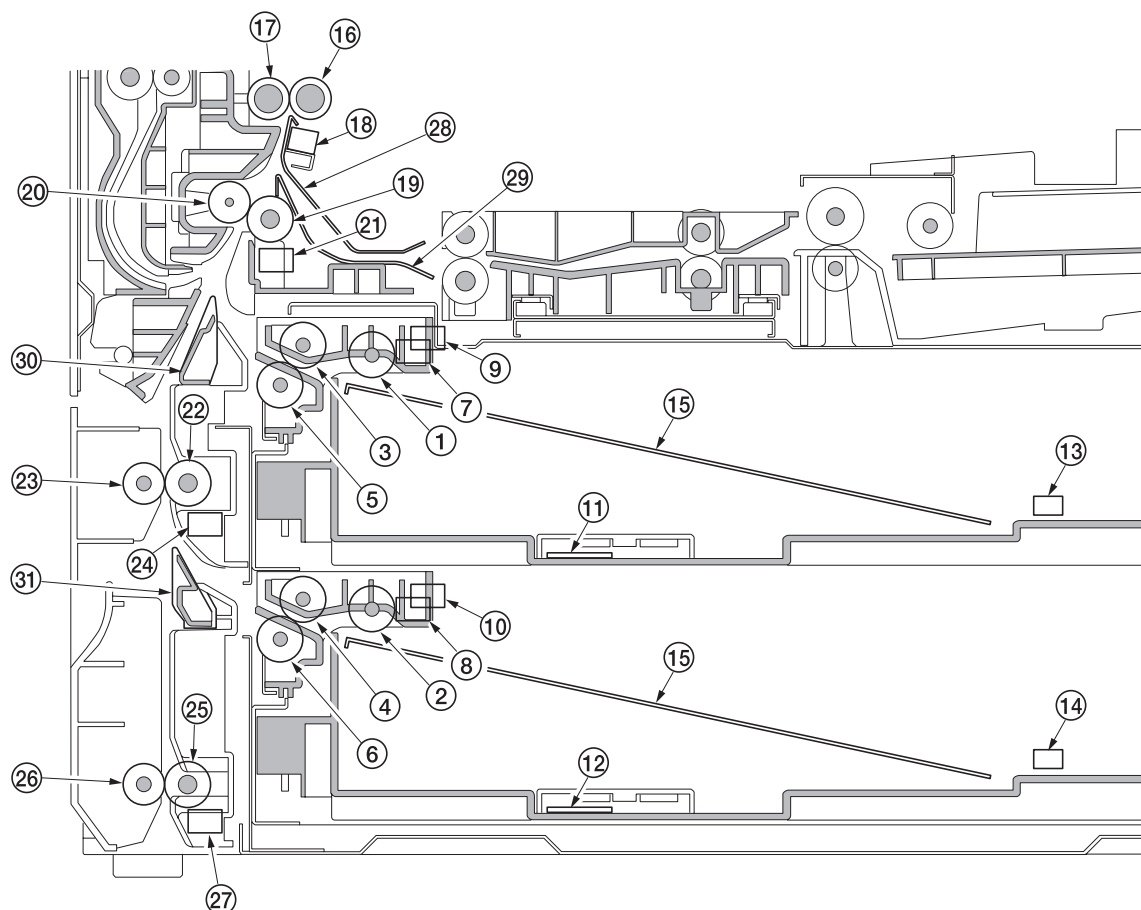
Figure 1-6-10

This page is intentionally left blank.

## 2-1-1 Paper feed section

The paper feed section consists of the primary feed and secondary feed subsections. Primary feed conveys paper from the cassettes 1, 2 or MP tray to the left and right registration rollers, at which point secondary feed takes place and the paper travels to the transfer section in sync with the printing timing.

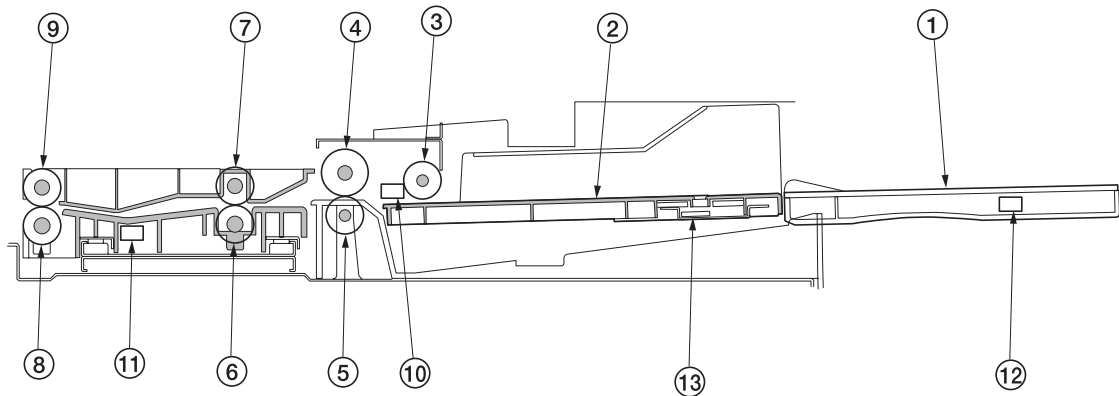
Each cassette consists of a lift driven by the lift motor and other components. Each cassette can hold up to 500 sheets of paper. Paper is fed from the cassette by the rotation of the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley. The separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time, via the torque limiter.



**Figure 2-1-1 Paper feed from the cassettes 1 and 2**

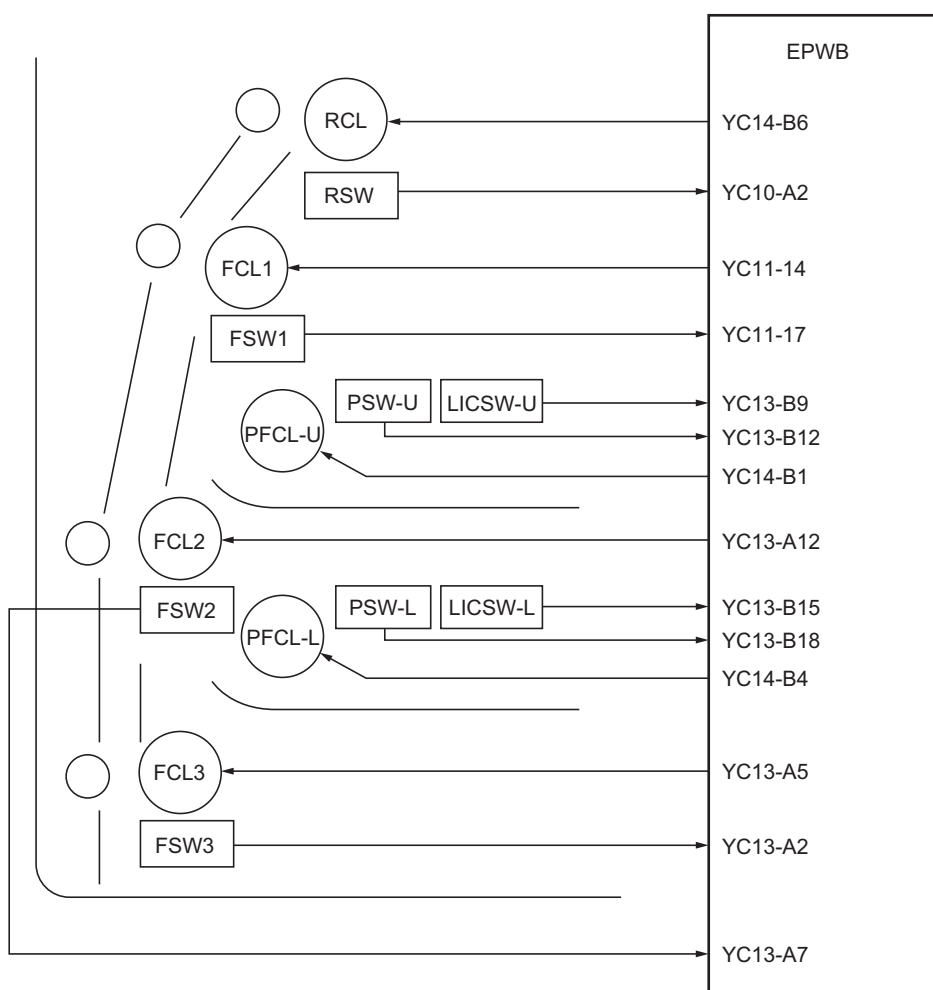
- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Upper forwarding pulley             | (17) Left registration roller         |
| (2) Lower forwarding pulley             | (18) Registration switch (RSW)        |
| (3) Upper paper feed pulley             | (19) Feed roller 1                    |
| (4) Lower paper feed pulley             | (20) Feed pulley                      |
| (5) Upper separation pulley             | (21) Feed switch 1 (FSW1)             |
| (6) Lower separation pulley             | (22) Feed roller 2                    |
| (7) Upper paper switch (PSW-U)          | (23) Feed pulley                      |
| (8) Lower paper switch (PSW-L)          | (24) Feed switch 2 (FSW2)             |
| (9) Upper lift limit switch (LICSW-U)   | (25) Feed roller 3                    |
| (10) Lower lift limit switch (LICSW-L)  | (26) Feed pulley                      |
| (11) Upper paper width switch (PWSW-U)  | (27) Feed switch 3 (FSW3)             |
| (12) Lower paper width switch (PWSW-L)  | (28) Front registration guide         |
| (13) Upper paper length switch (PLSW-U) | (29) Paper conveying guide            |
| (14) Lower paper length switch (PLSW-L) | (30) Vertical paper conveying guide 1 |
| (15) Cassette lifts                     | (31) Vertical paper conveying guide 2 |
| (16) Right registration roller          |                                       |

The MP tray can hold up to 200 sheets of paper at one time. Paper is fed from the MP tray by the rotation of the MP forwarding pulley and MP paper feed pulley. Also during paper feed, the MP separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time by the torque limiter.

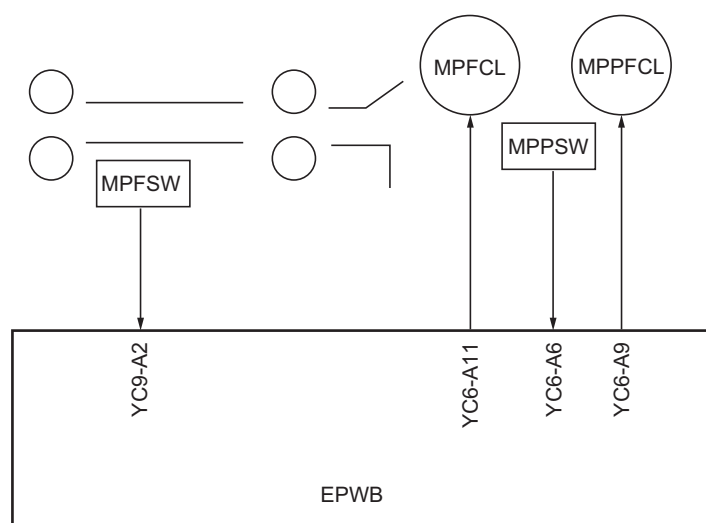


**Figure 2-1-2 Paper feed from the MP tray**

- |                          |                                      |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (1) MP tray              | (9) MP feed pulley                   |
| (2) MP lift guide        | (10) MP paper switch (MPPSW)         |
| (3) MP forwarding pulley | (11) MP feed switch (MPFSW)          |
| (4) MP paper feed pulley | (12) MP paper length switch (MPPLSW) |
| (5) MP separation pulley | (13) MP paper width switch (MPPWSW)  |
| (6) MP feed roller 1     |                                      |
| (7) MP feed pulley       |                                      |
| (8) MP feed roller 2     |                                      |



**Figure 2-1-3 Paper feed section block diagram (cassettes 1 and 2)**



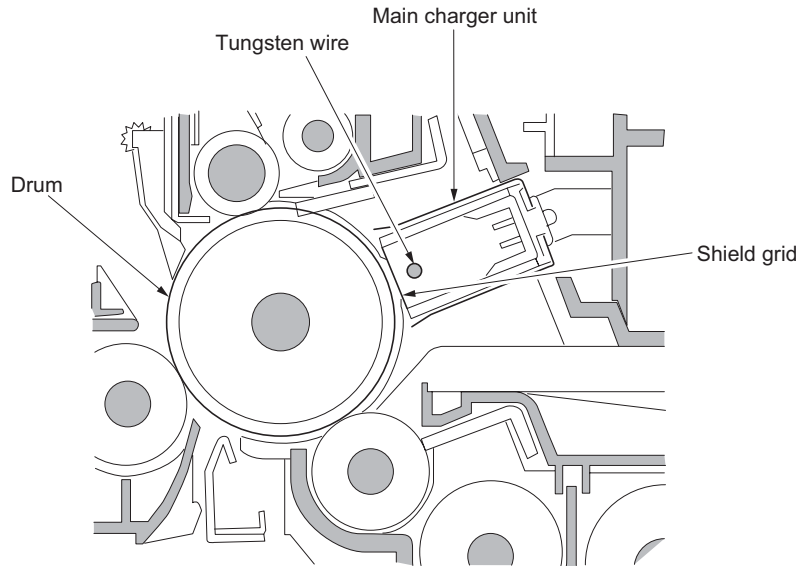
**Figure 2-1-4 Paper feed section block diagram (MP tray)**

**2-1-2 Main charging section**

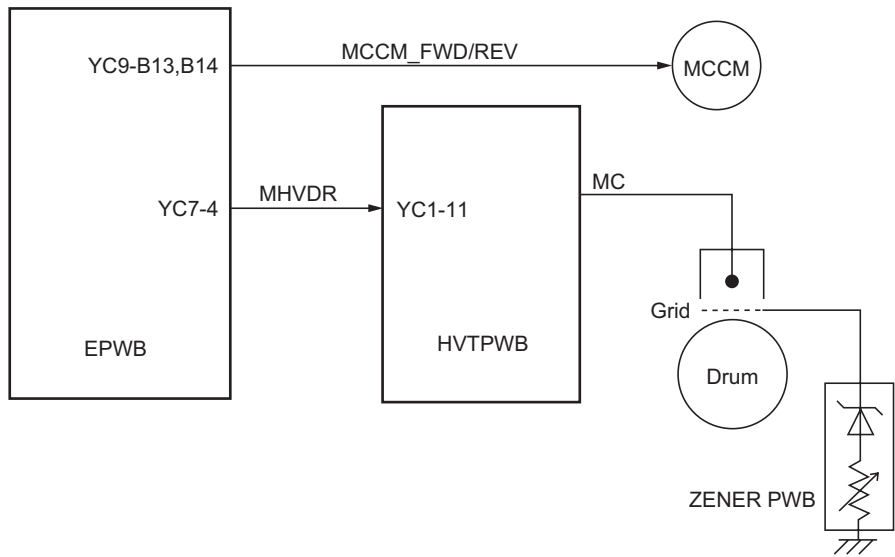
The main charging section consists of the main charger assembly, drum and so on. The drum is electrically charged uniformly by means of a grid to form a latent image on the surface.

The main charger unit charges the drum so that a latent image is formed on the surface, the shield grid ensuring the charge is applied uniformly.

In addition, the main charger unit is equipped with the main charger cleaning motor, and it is cleaning automatically.



**Figure 2-1-5 Main charging section**

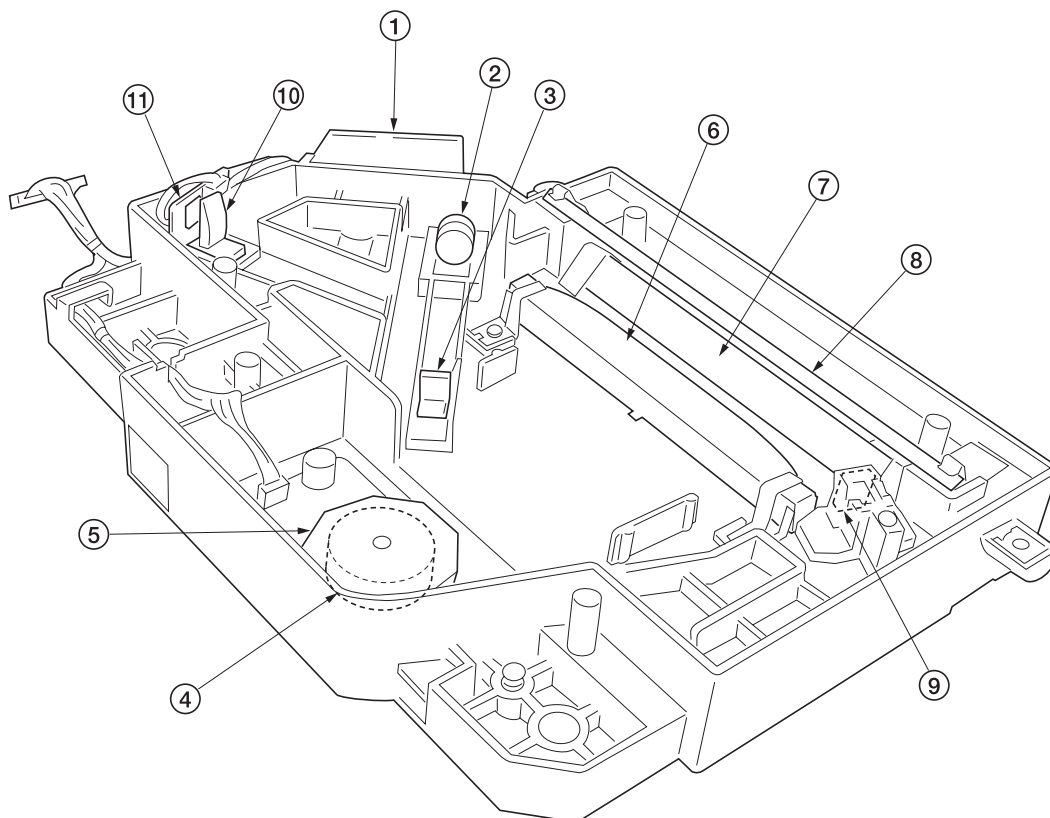


**Figure 2-1-6 Main charging section block diagram**

## 2-1-3 Optical section

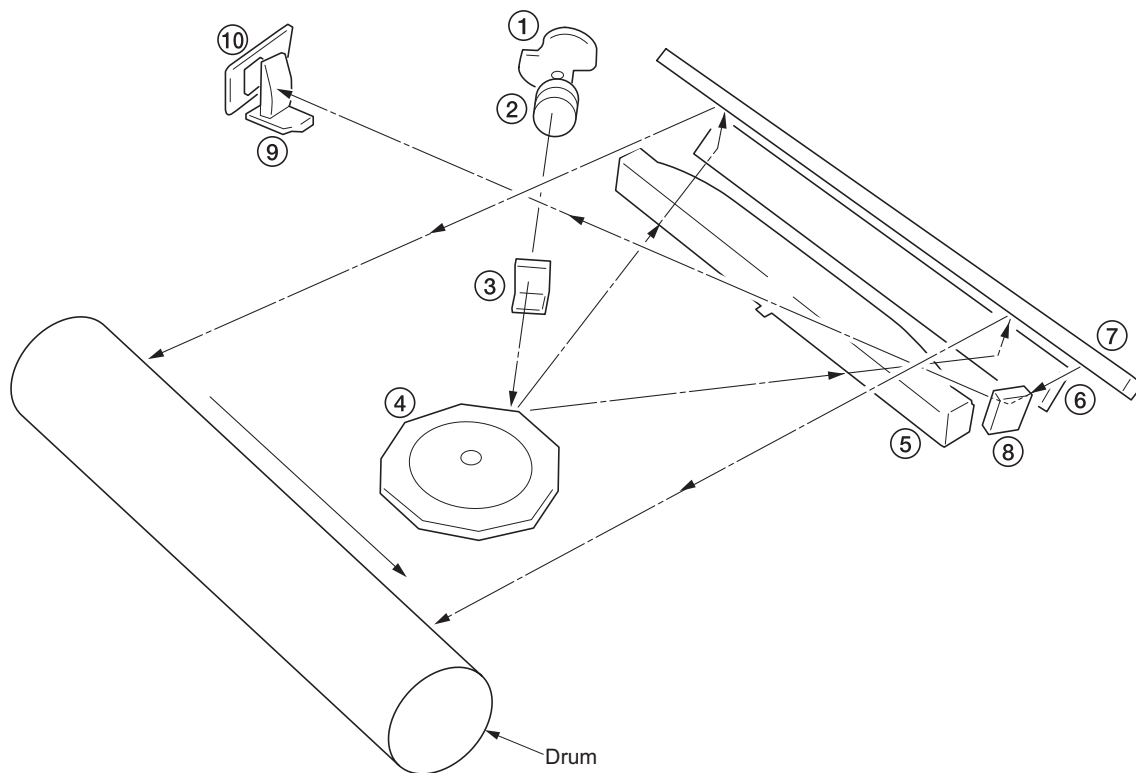
### (1) Laser scanner unit

The image data is processed on the main PWB (MPWB) and transmitted as image printing data to the laser scanner unit (LSU). By repeatedly turning the laser on and off, the laser scanner unit forms a latent image on the drum surface.



**Figure 2-1-7 Laser scanner unit (1)**

- (1) Laser diode PWB (LDPWB)
- (2) Collimator lens
- (3) Cylindrical lens
- (4) Polygon motor (PM)
- (5) Polygon mirror
- (6)  $f\theta$  lens
- (7) Mirror
- (8) Mirror
- (9) BD sensor mirror
- (10) Cylindrical correcting lens
- (11) BD sensor

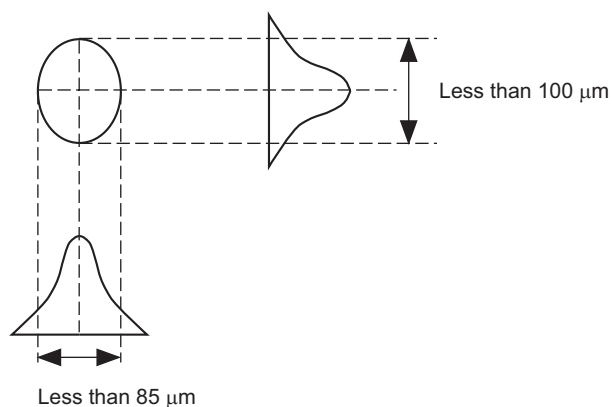


**Figure 2-1-8 Laser scanner unit (2)**

1. Laser diode: Generates the laser beam which forms a latent image on the drum.
2. Collimator lens: Collimates the diffused laser beam emitted from the laser diode to convert it into a cylindrical beam.
3. Cylindrical lens: Shapes the collimated laser beam to suit the printing resolution.
4. Polygon mirror: Nine-facet mirror that rotates with each face reflecting the laser beam toward the drum for one main-direction scan.
5.  $f\theta$  lens: Corrects for non-linearity of the laser beam scanning speed on the drum surface, keeps the beam diameter constant and corrects for the vertical alignment of the polygon mirror to ensure that the focal plane of the laser beam is on the drum surface.
6. Mirror: Reflects the laser beam and changes the irradiation direction.
7. Mirror: Reflects the laser beam and changes the irradiation direction.
8. BD sensor mirror: Reflects the laser beam to the BD sensor to generate the main-direction (horizontal) sync signal.
9. Cylindrical correcting lens: Corrects for the deviation of the laser beam reflected by the BD sensor mirror to the BD sensor.
10. BD sensor: Detects the beam reflected by the BD sensor mirror, outputting a signal to the main PWB (MPWB) to provide timing for the main-direction sync signal.



The dimensions of the laser beam are as shown in Figure 2-1-9.

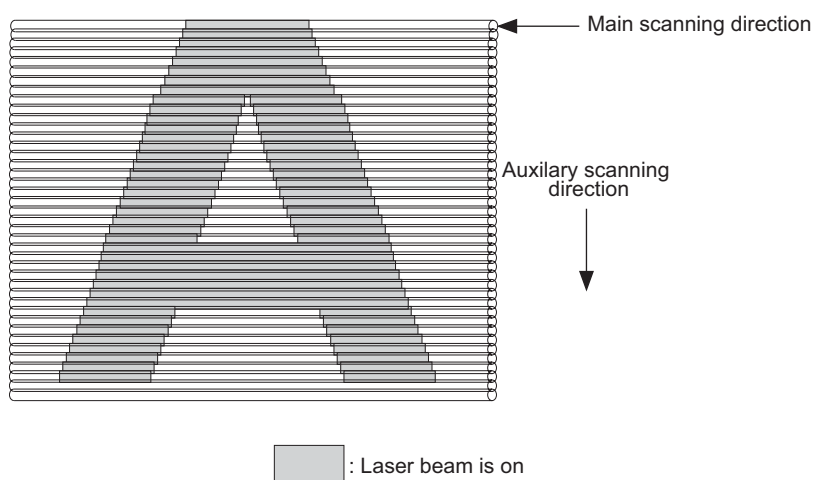


**Figure 2-1-9**

Scanning in the main direction is provided by the rotating polygon mirror, while scanning in the auxiliary direction is provided by the rotating drum, forming a static latent image on the drum.

The static latent image of the letter "A", for example, is formed on the drum surface as shown in Figure 2-1-10. Electrical charge is dissipated on the area of the drum surface irradiated by the laser.

The focal point of the laser beam is moved line by line, and adjacent lines slightly overlap each other.



**Figure 2-1-10**

### 2-1-4 Developing section

The developing section consists of the developing unit and the toner container.

The developing unit consists of the developing roller where a magnetic brush is formed, the magnetic toner blade and the developing spirals that agitate the toner.

When the toner sensor (TNS) detects a low toner level in the developing unit, the toner replenishment signal is output to the engine PWB (EPWB). The engine PWB (EPWB) that has received the signal turns on the toner replenishment solenoid (TNFSOL) and replenishes toner from the toner container to the developing unit.

Also, the toner container sensor (TCS) checks whether or not toner remains in the toner container.

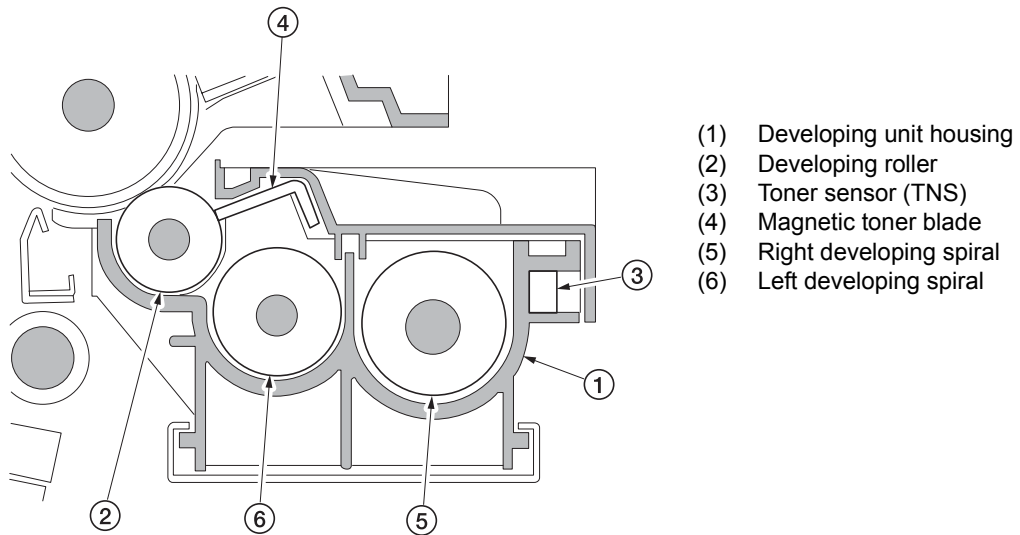


Figure 2-1-11 Developing section

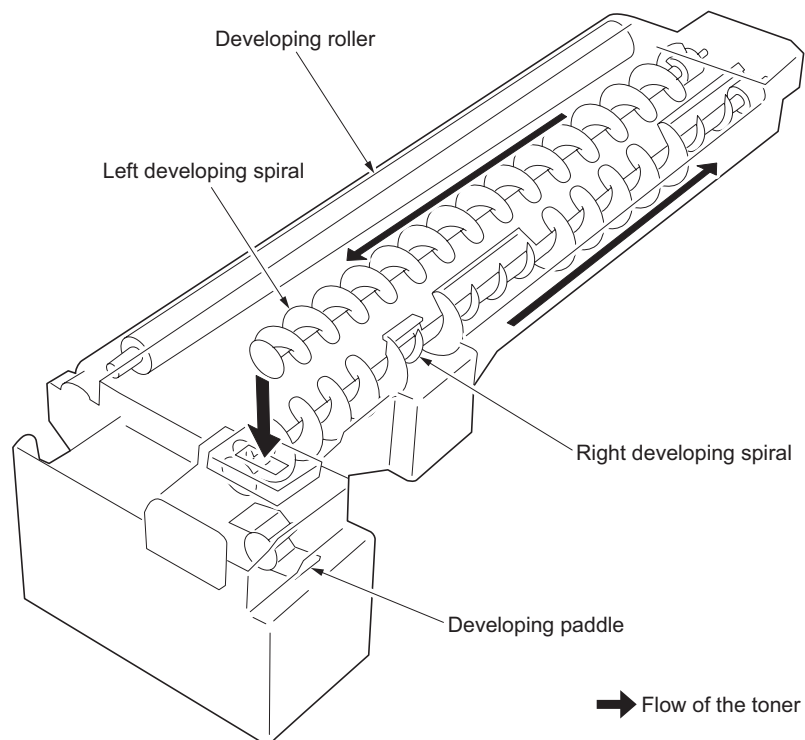
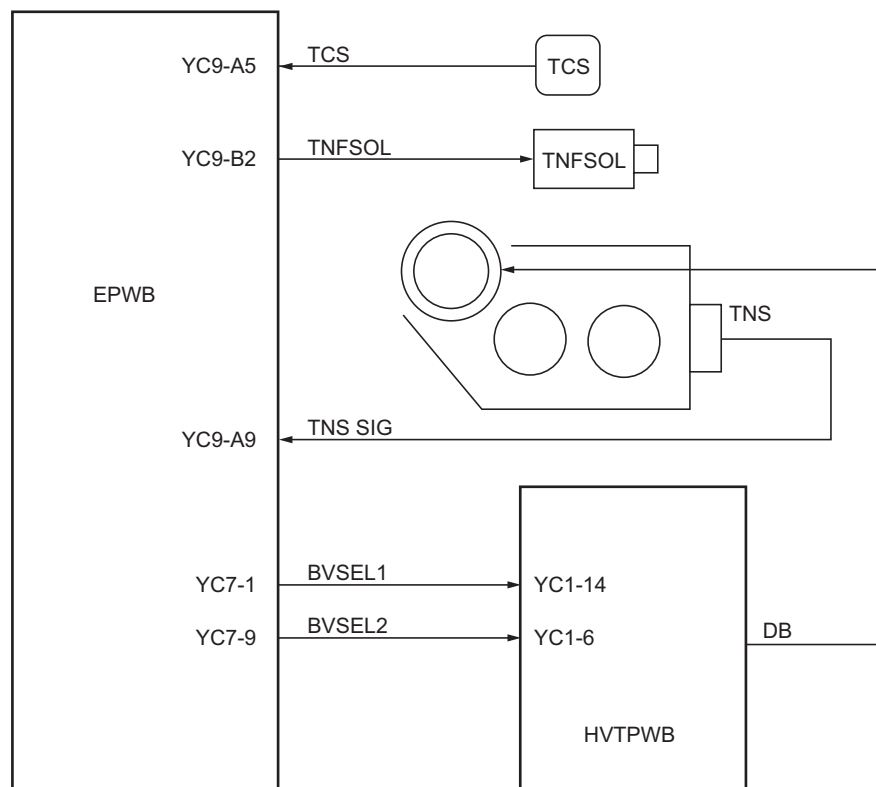


Figure 2-1-12 Flow of the toner



**Figure 2-1-13 Developing section block diagram**



### 2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections

The transfer and separation section consists mainly of the transfer roller, separation electrode and drum separation claws. A high voltage generated by the high-voltage transformer PWB (HVTPWB) is applied to the transfer roller for transfer charging.

Paper after transfer is separated from the drum by applying separation bias that is output from the high-voltage transformer PWB (HVTPWB) to the separation electrode.

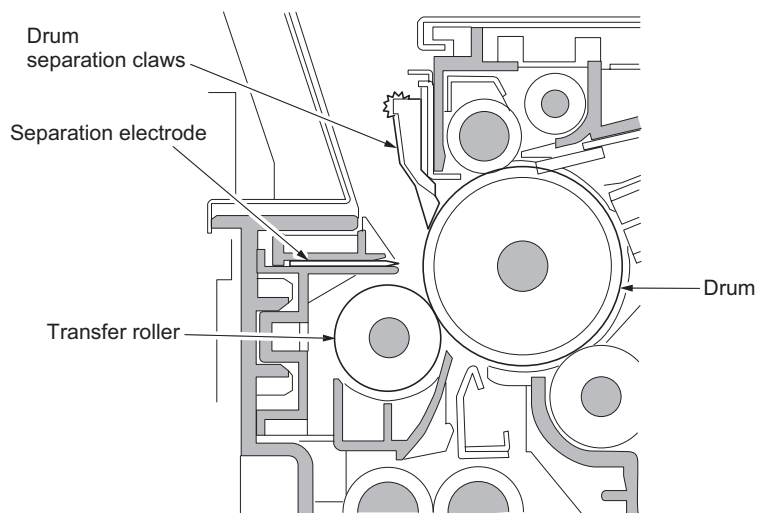


Figure 2-1-15 Transfer and separation sections

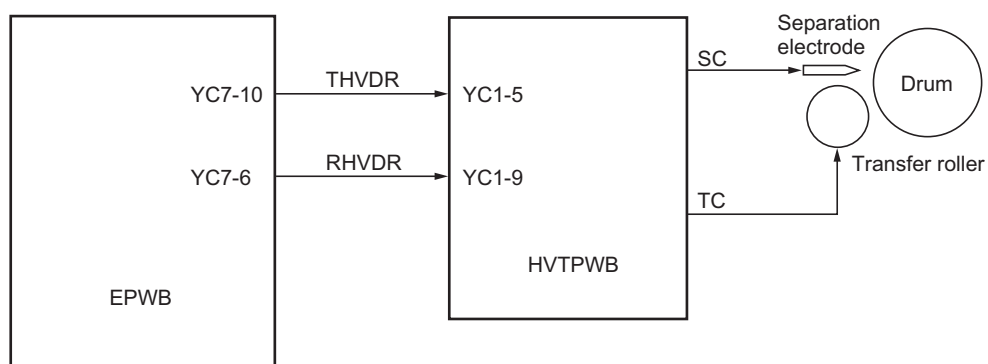
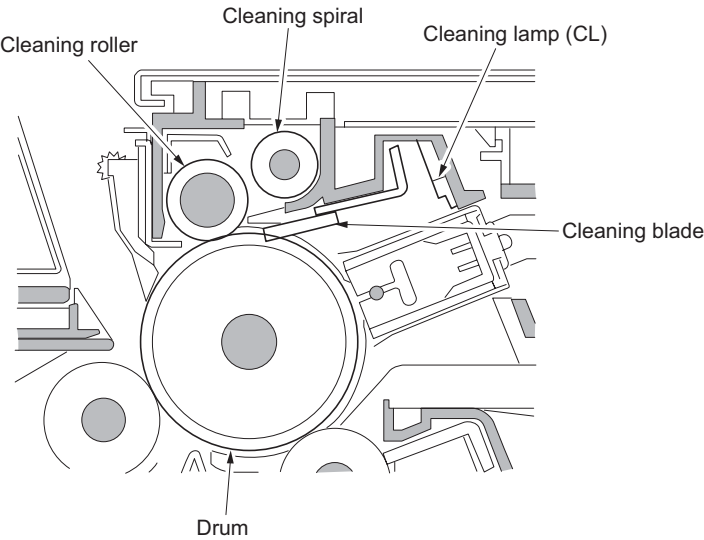


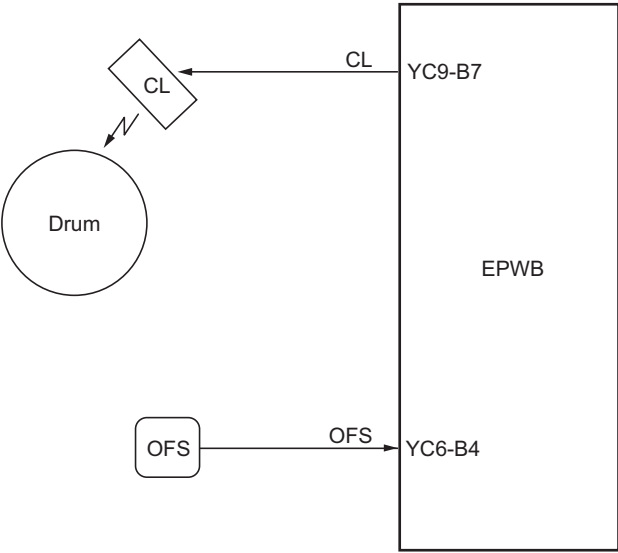
Figure 2-1-16 Transfer and separation sections block diagram

**2-1-6 Cleaning and charge erasing sections**

The cleaning section consists of the cleaning blade that removes residual toner from the drum surface after the transfer process, and the cleaning spiral that carries the residual toner back to the waste toner box. The cleaning lamp (CL) consists of LEDs and removes residual charge on the drum before main charging. Also the toner quantity in the waste toner box is sensed with the overflow sensor (OFS).



**Figure 2-1-17 Cleaning and charge erasing sections**



**Figure 2-1-18 Cleaning and charge erasing sections block diagram**

## 2-1-7 Fuser section

The fuser section consists of the parts shown in figure. When paper reaches the fuser section after the transfer process, it passes between the press roller and heat roller, which is heated by fuser heaters M or S (FH-M or FH-S). Pressure is applied by the fuser unit pressure springs so that the toner on the paper is melted, fused and fixed onto the paper. The heat roller is heated by fuser heaters M or S (FH-M or FH-S) inside it; its surface temperature is detected by the fuser unit thermistor 1 and 2 (FTH1/2), and is regulated by the fuser heaters turning on and off.

If the fuser section becomes abnormally hot, fuser unit thermostat 1 and 2 (FTS1/2) operates shutting the power to the fuser heaters off. When the fusing process is completed, the paper is separated from the heat roller by its separation claws and is conveyed from the machine to eject and switchback section.

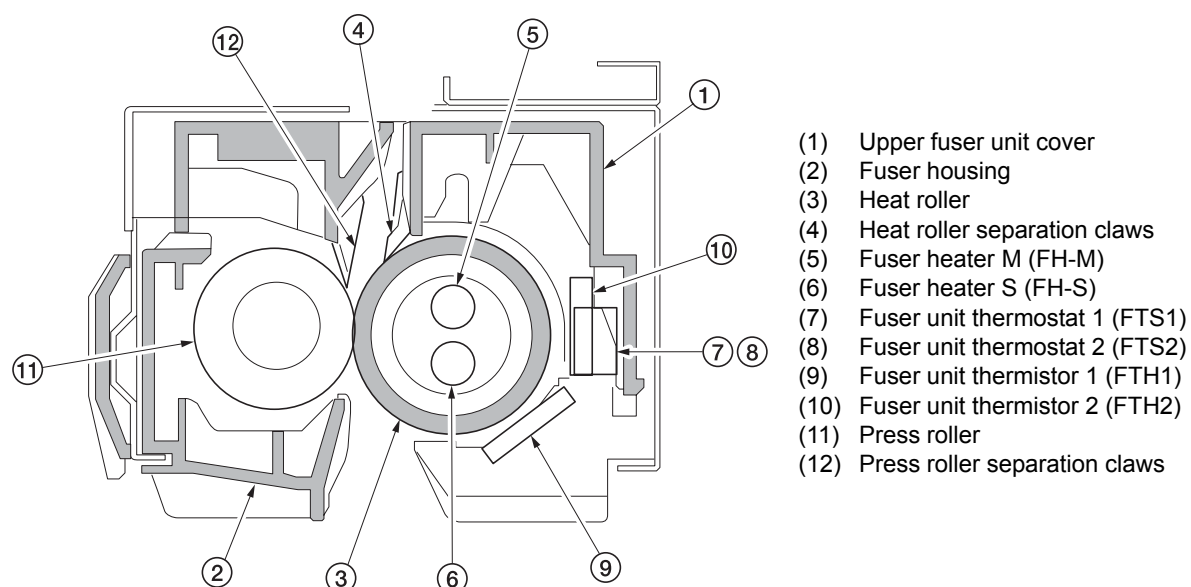


Figure 2-1-19 Fuser section

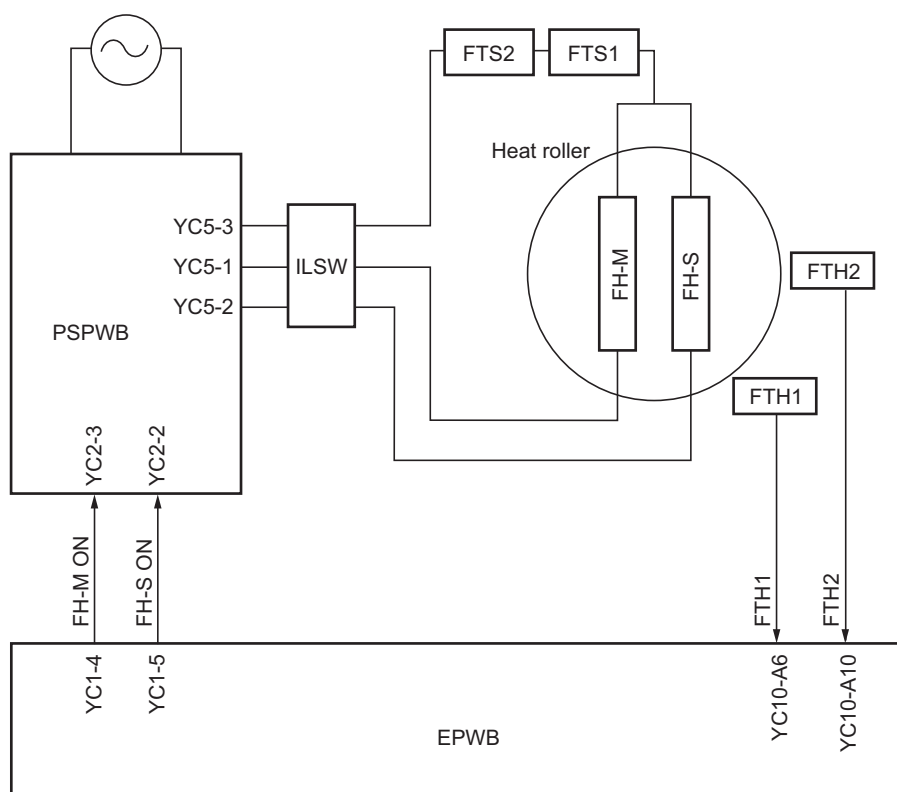


Figure 2-1-20 Fuser section block diagram

### 2-1-8 Eject and switchback sections

The eject and switchback sections eject paper on which fixing has ended with the eject roller that is rotated by forward rotation of the eject motor.

In duplex printing, paper is turned over by reverse rotation of the eject motor.

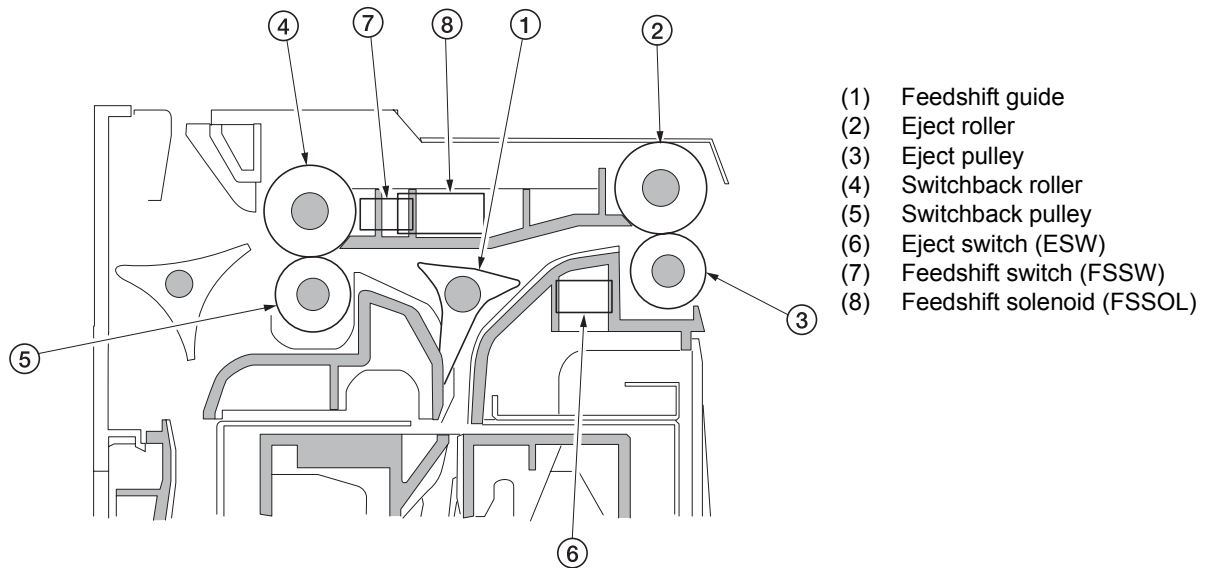


Figure 2-1-21 Eject and switchback sections

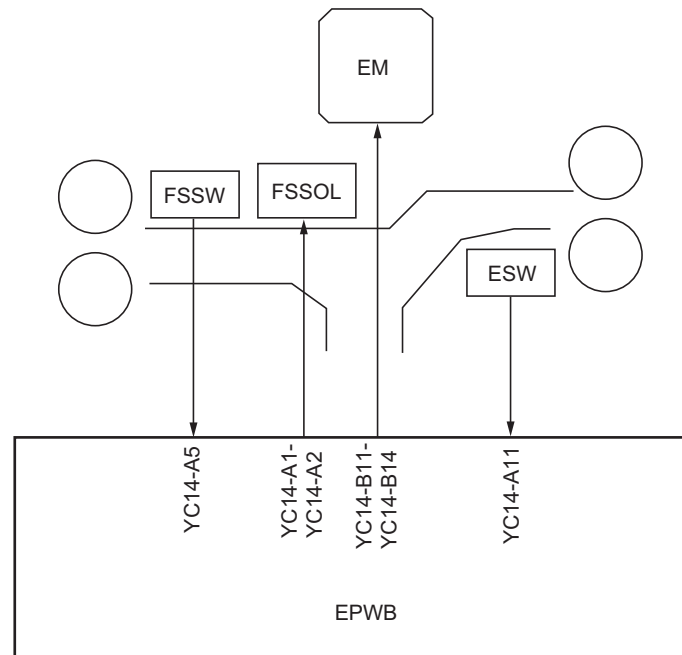
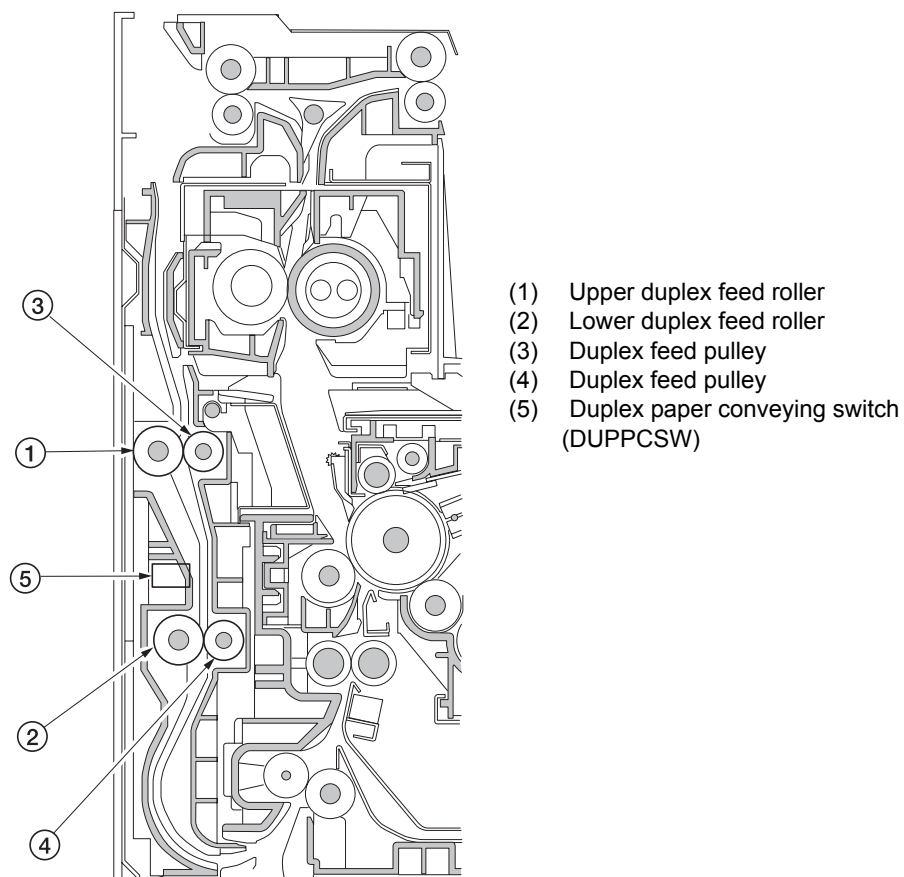


Figure 2-1-22 Eject and switchback sections block diagram

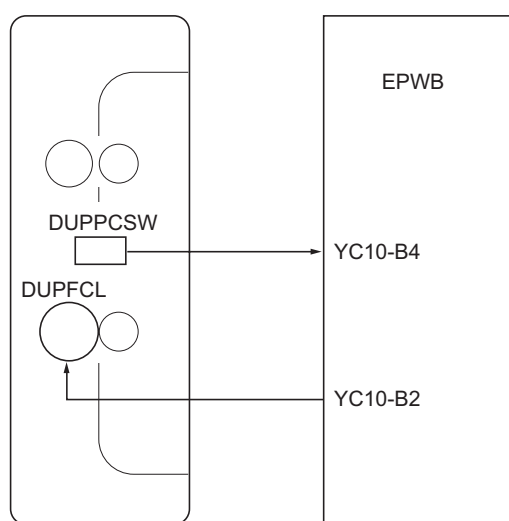


### 2-1-9 Duplex section

The duplex section consists of the components shown in figure. In duplex mode, after printing on to the reverse face of the paper, the paper is reversed in the switchback section and conveyed to the duplex section. The paper is then conveyed to the paper feed section by the upper and lower duplex feed rollers.



**Figure 2-1-23 Duplex section**



**Figure 2-1-24 Duplex section block diagram**

### (1) Paper conveying operation in duplex copying

Paper of which printing onto the reverse side is complete is conveyed to the switchback section, the eject motor switches from normal rotation to reverse rotation to switch the eject roller to reverse rotation, and the paper conveying direction is reversed. Paper that has been switched back is conveyed to the duplex section via the eject roller and the switchback roller.

Paper that has been conveyed to the duplex section is conveyed to the paper feed section again by rotation of the upper duplex feed roller and the lower duplex feed roller and printing onto the front side is performed.

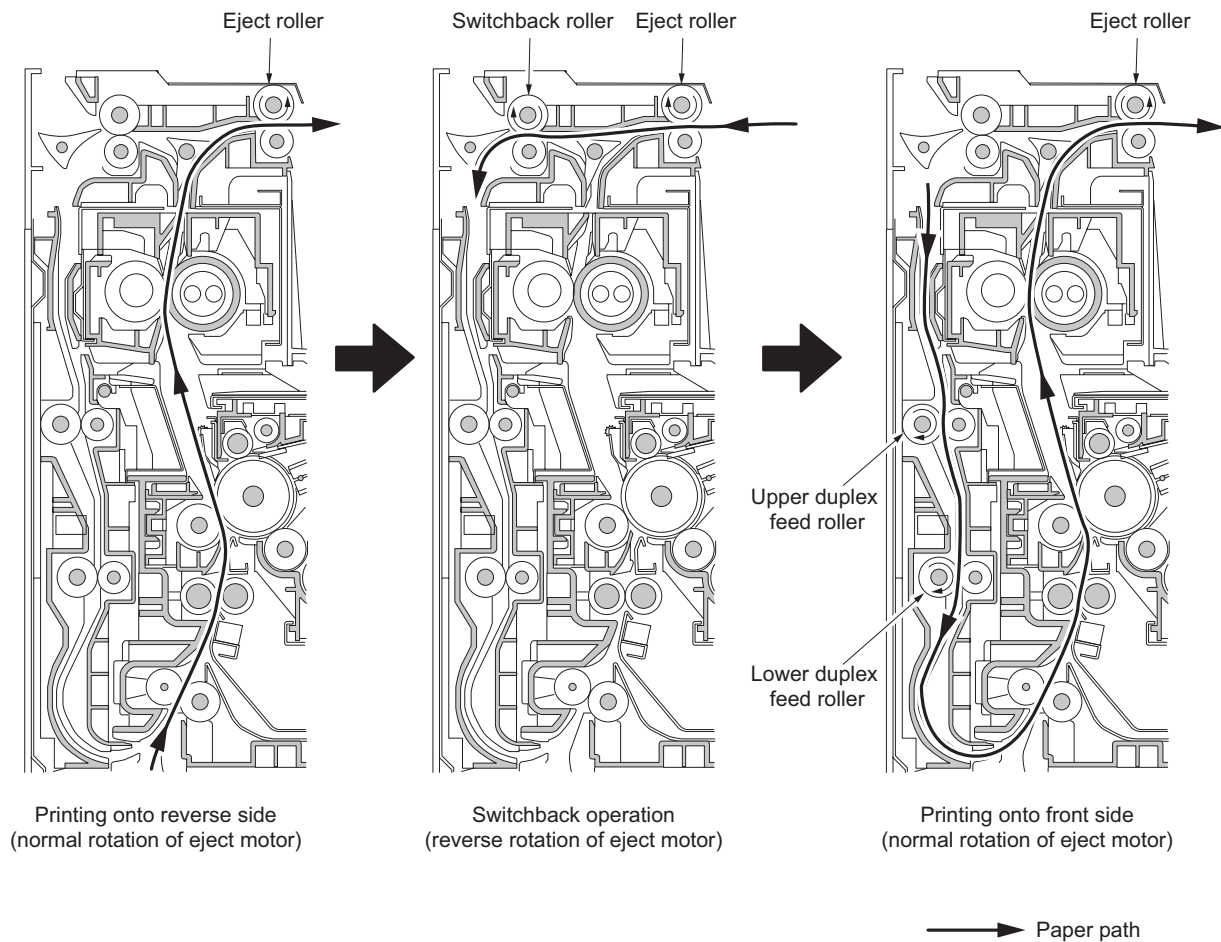
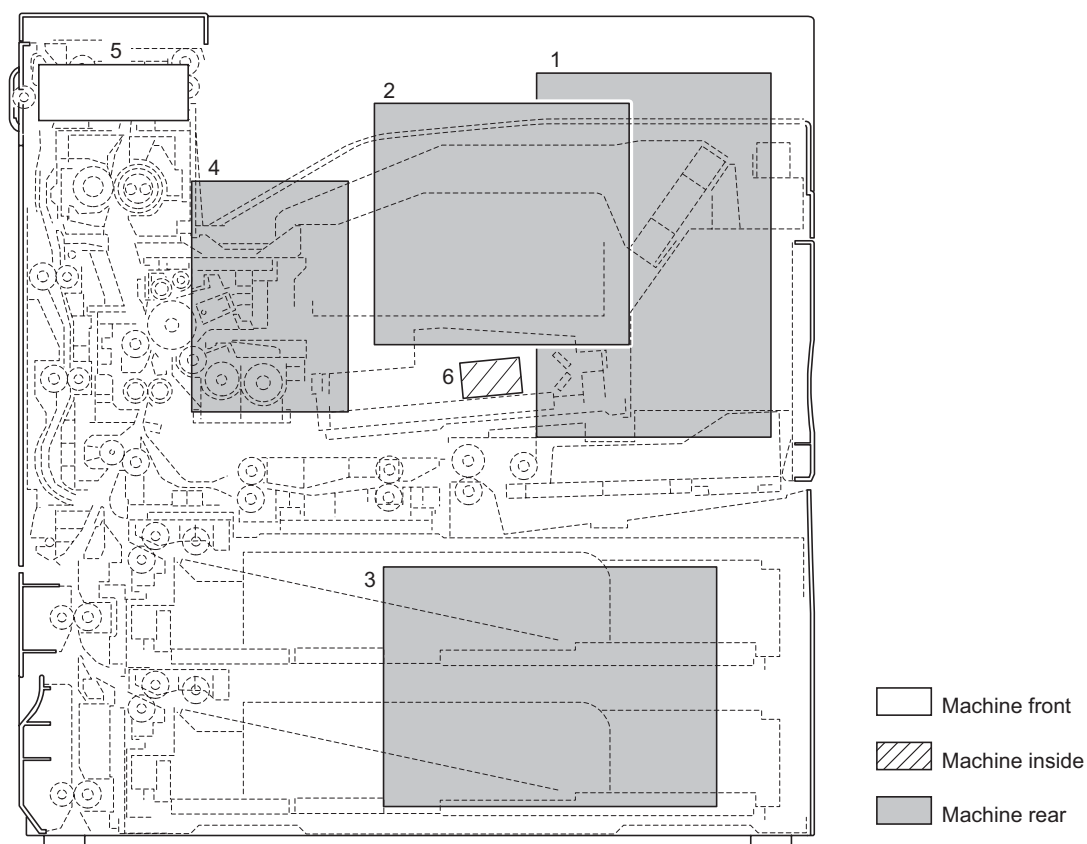


Figure 2-1-25

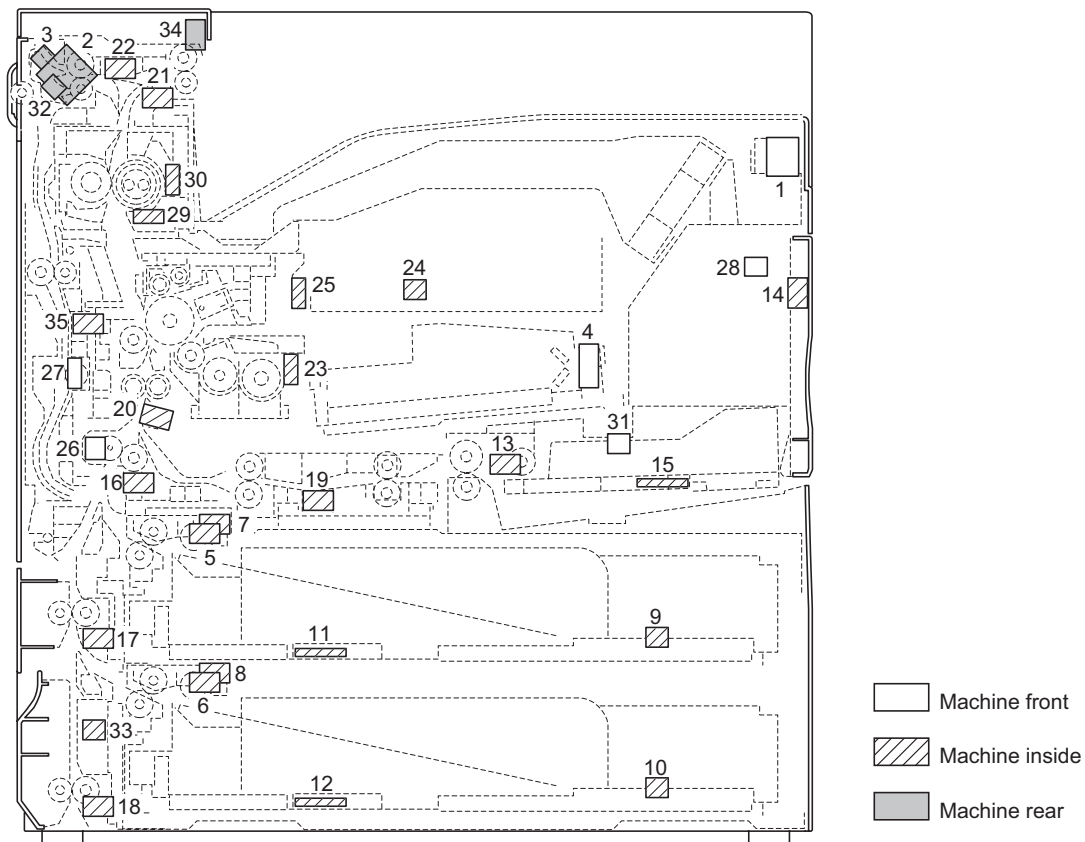
## 2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

### (1) PWBs



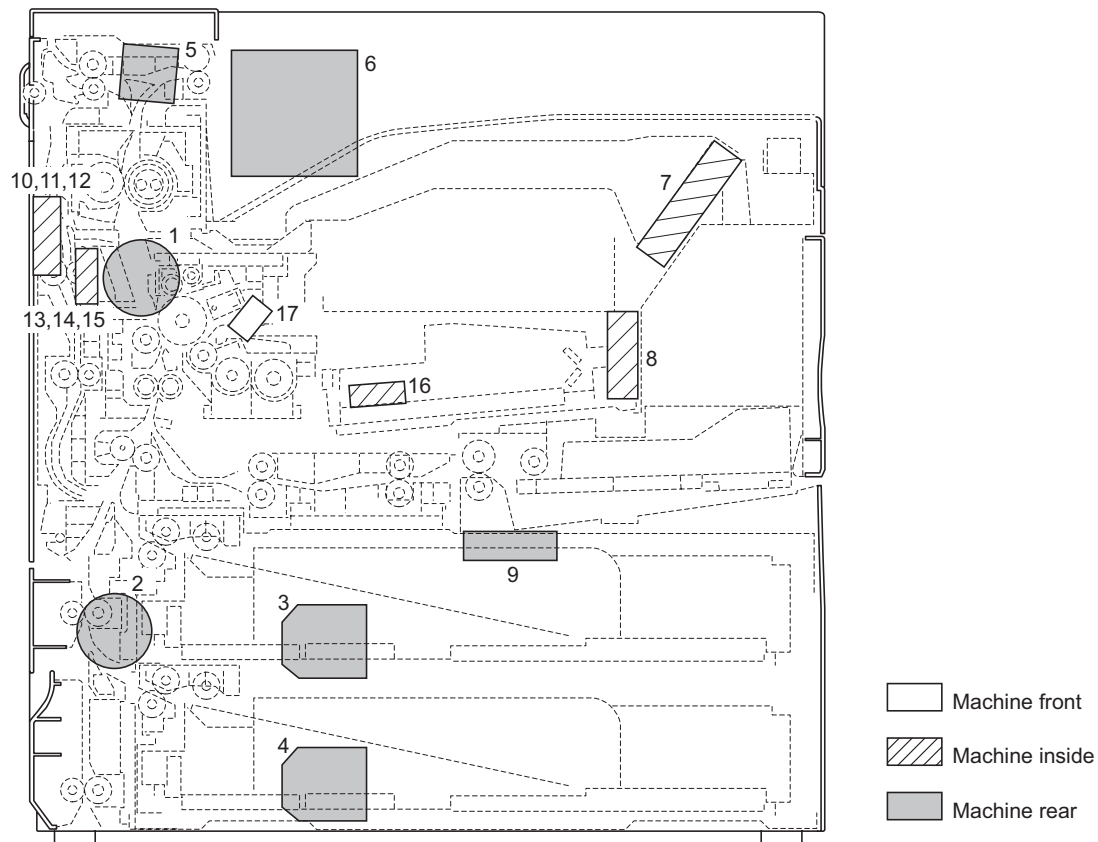
**Figure 2-2-1 PWBs**

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Main PWB (MPWB) .....             | Implements firmware for managing data processing for printing, interface with PC and the network, etc. |
| 2. Engine PWB (EPWB) .....           | Controls printer hardware including electrical components.   |
| 3. Power source PWB (PSPWB) .....    | Generates +24 V DC, 5 V DC and 3.3 V DC; controls the fuser heaters.                                   |
| 4. High voltage PWB (HVPWB) .....    | Main charging. Generates developing bias and high voltages for transfer.                               |
| 5. Operation panel PWB (OPPWB) ..... | Displays LCD messages and LED indicators. Controls key inputs.   |
| 6. Laser diode PWB (LDPWB) .....     | Generates and controls the laser light.  |

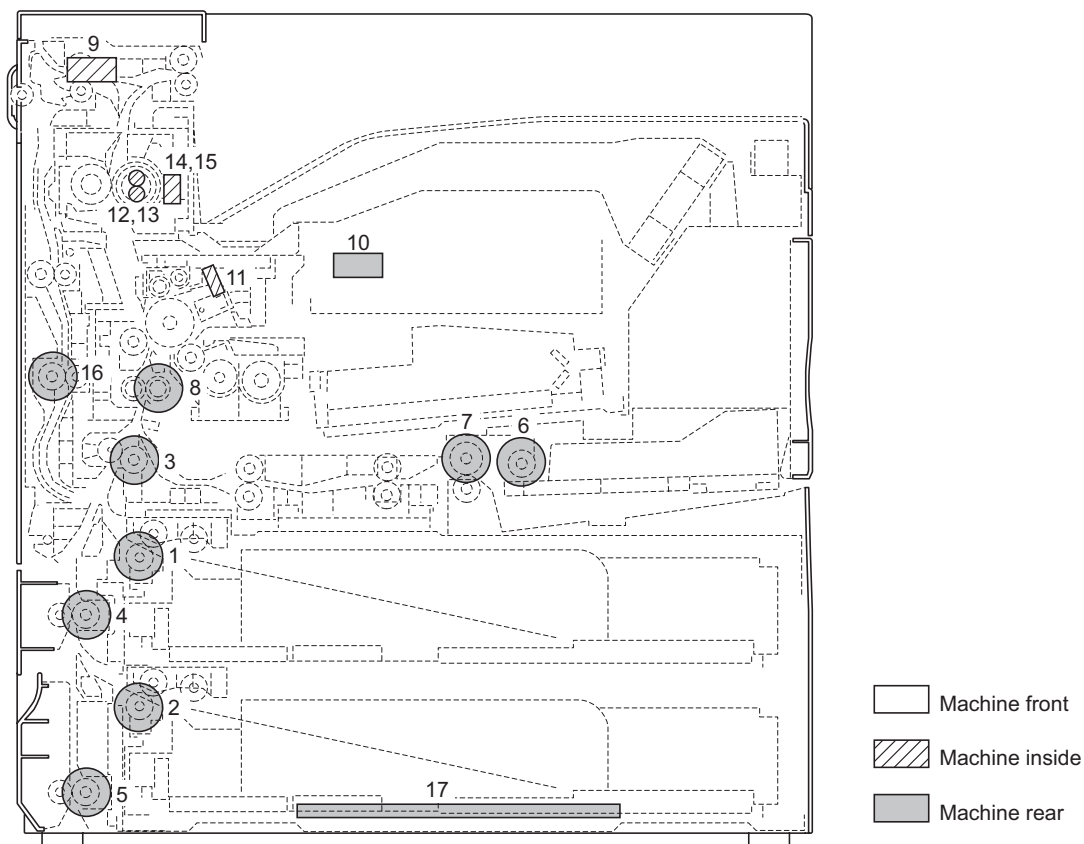
**(2) Switches and sensors****Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Main switch (MSW)                        | Turns the AC power on and off.                                       |
| 2. Interlock switch (ILSW)                  | Turns the AC power for the fuser heaters on and off.                 |
| 3. Safety switch 1 (SSW1)                   | Breaks the safety circuit when the left cover 1 is opened.           |
| 4. Safety switch 2 (SSW2)                   | Breaks the safety circuit when the front cover is opened.            |
| 5. Upper paper switch (PSW-U)               | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 1.                     |
| 6. Lower paper switch (PSW-L)               | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 2.                     |
| 7. Upper lift limit switch (LICSW-U)        | Detects the cassette 1 lift reaching the upper limit.                |
| 8. Lower lift limit switch (LICSW-L)        | Detects the cassette 2 lift reaching the upper limit.                |
| 9. Upper paper size length switch (PLSW-U)  | Detects the length of paper in the cassette 1.                       |
| 10. Lower paper size length switch (PLSW-L) | Detects the length of paper in the cassette 2.                       |
| 11. Upper paper size width switch (PWSW-U)  | Detects the width of paper in the cassette 1.                        |
| 12. Lower paper size width switch (PWSW-L)  | Detects the width of paper in the cassette 2.                        |
| 13. MP paper switch (MPPSW)                 | Detects the presence of paper on the MP tray.                        |
| 14. MP paper size length switch (MPPLSW)    | Detects the length of paper on the MP tray.                          |
| 15. MP paper size width switch (MPPWSW)     | Detects the width of paper on the MP tray.                           |
| 16. Feed switch 1 (FSW1)                    | Controls feed clutch 1 drive timing.                                 |
| 17. Feed switch 2 (FSW2)                    | Controls feed clutch 2 drive timing.                                 |
| 18. Feed switch 3 (FSW3)                    | Controls feed clutch 3 drive timing.                                 |
| 19. MP feed switch (MPFSW)                  | Controls MP feed clutch drive timing.                                |
| 20. Registration switch (RSW)               | Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.                      |
| 21. Eject switch (ESW)                      | Detects a paper misfeed in the fuser section.                        |
| 22. Feedshift switch (FSSW)                 | Detects a paper misfeed in the switchback section in a duplex print. |

- 23. Toner sensor (TNS)..... Detects the toner density in the developing unit.
- 24. Toner container detection switch  
(TCDSW) ..... Detects the presence of the toner container.
- 25. Toner container sensor (TCS)..... Detects the quantity of toner in a toner container.
- 26. Waste toner box detection switch  
(WTDSW)..... Detects the presence of the waste toner box.
- 27. Overflow sensor (OFS) ..... Detects when the waste toner box is full.
- 28. Humidity sensor (HUMS) ..... Detects absolute humidity.
- 29. Fuser unit thermistor 1 (FTH1)..... Detects the heat roller temperature.
- 30. Fuser unit thermistor 2 (FTH2)..... Detects the heat roller temperature.
- 31. Front cover switch (FRCSW) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the front cover.
- 32. Left cover 1 switch (LC1SW) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the left cover 1.
- 33. Left cover 2 switch (LC2SW) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the left cover 2.
- 34. Paper full sensor (PFS)..... Detects whether the top tray is full.
- 35. Duplex paper conveying switch  
(DUPPCSW) ..... Detects a paper jam in the duplex section.

**(3) Motors****Figure 2-2-3 Motors**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Drive motor (DM) .....                    | Drives the machine.   |
| 2. Paper feed motor (PFM) .....              | Drives paper feed section.  |
| 3. Upper lift motor (LM-U) .....             | Drives cassette 1 lift.   |
| 4. Lower lift motor (LM-L) .....             | Drives cassette 2 lift.   |
| 5. Eject motor (EM) .....                    | Drives the eject section.   |
| 6. Cooling fan motor 1 (CFM1) .....          | Cools the machine interior.   |
| 7. Cooling fan motor 2 (CFM2) .....          | Cools the machine interior.   |
| 8. Cooling fan motor 3 (CFM3) .....          | Cools the machine interior (around the LSU).                                |
| 9. Cooling fan motor 4 (CFM4) .....          | Cools the machine interior (around the power source PWB).                   |
| 10. Cooling fan motor 5 (CFM5) .....         | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex printing. |
| 11. Cooling fan motor 6 (CFM6) .....         | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex printing. |
| 12. Cooling fan motor 7 (CFM7) .....         | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex printing. |
| 13. Cooling fan motor 8 (CFM8) .....         | Cools the machine interior (around the paper conveying).                    |
| 14. Cooling fan motor 9 (CFM9) .....         | Cools the machine interior (around the paper conveying).                    |
| 15. Cooling fan motor 10 (CFM10) .....       | Cools the machine interior (around the paper conveying).                    |
| 16. Polygon motor (PM) .....                 | Drives the polygon mirror.  |
| 17. Main charger cleaning motor (MCCM) ..... | Drives the main charger auto cleaning.                                      |

**(4) Other electrical components****Figure 2-2-4 Other electrical components**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Upper paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL-U) ..... | Primary paper feed from the cassette 1.        |
| 2. Lower paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL-L) ..... | Primary paper feed from the cassette 2.        |
| 3. Feed clutch 1 (FCL1) .....               | Controls the drive of feed roller.             |
| 4. Feed clutch 2 (FCL2) .....               | Controls the drive of feed roller.             |
| 5. Feed clutch 3 (FCL3) .....               | Controls the drive of feed roller.             |
| 6. MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) .....      | Primary paper feed from the MP tray.           |
| 7. MP feed clutch (MPFCL) .....             | Controls the drive of MP feed roller.          |
| 8. Registration clutch (RCL) .....          | Secondary paper feed.                          |
| 9. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) .....         | Operates the feedshift guide.                  |
| 10. Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) .....      | Replenishes toner.                             |
| 11. Cleaning lamp (CL) .....                | Removes residual charge from the drum surface. |
| 12. Fuser heater M (FH-M) .....             | Heats the heat roller.                         |
| 13. Fuser heater S (FH-S) .....             | Heats the heat roller.                         |
| 14. Fuser unit thermostat 1 (FTS1) .....    | Prevents overheating in the fuser section.     |
| 15. Fuser unit thermostat 2 (FTS2) .....    | Prevents overheating in the fuser section.     |
| 16. Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL) .....       | Controls the drive of the duplex feed roller.  |
| 17. Cassette heater (CH) .....              | Dehumidifies the cassette section.             |

This page is intentionally left blank.



## 2-3-1 Power source PWB

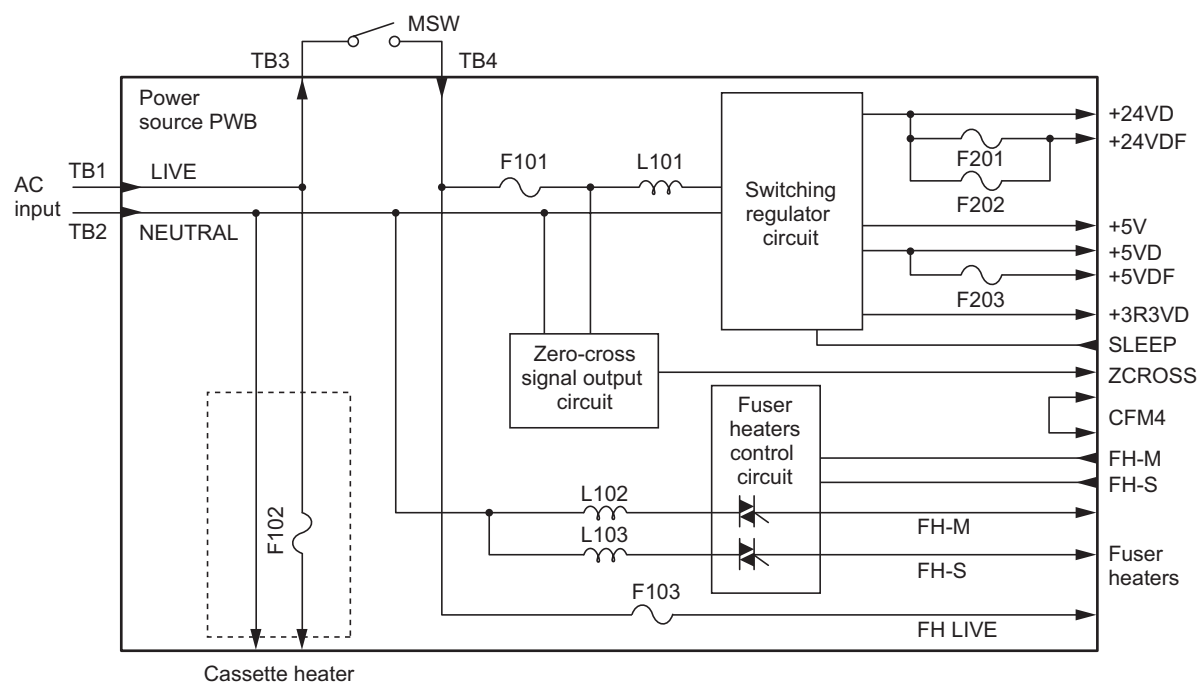


Figure 2-3-1 Power source PWB diagram



Figure 2-3-2 Power source PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>TB</b>  Connected to the AC inlet and main switch	TB1	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	TB2	COM	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	TB3	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
	TB4	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
<b>YC1</b>  Connected to the engine PWB	1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+3.3VD	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	6	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
<b>YC2</b>  Connected to the engine PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	FH-S ON	I	0/5 V DC	FH-S: On/Off
	3	FH-M ON	I	5 V DC	FH-M: On/Off
	4	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	5	ZCROSS	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	6	CFM4	I	0/24 V DC	CFM4: On/Off
<b>YC3</b>  Connected to the optional document finisher	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC4</b>  Connected to the cooling fan motor 4	1	CFM4	O	DC0V/24V	CFM4: On/Off
	2	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
<b>YC5</b>  Connected to the fuser heater M/S	1	FH-M ON	O	120/0 V AC 220-240/0 V AC	FH-M: On/Off
	2	FH-S ON	O	120/0 V AC 220-240/0 V AC	FH-S: On/Off
	3	FH LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC6</b>  Connected to the optional cassette heater	1	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
	3	NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
<b>YC7</b>  Connected to the optional paper feeder and optional document finisher	1	V24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	V24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	5.1V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	FGND	-	-	Ground
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC8</b>  Connected to the main PWB	1	SLEEP	I	0/5 V DC	SLEEP signal
	2	-	-	-	Not used
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	4	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	5	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	6	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	8	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-2 Engine PWB

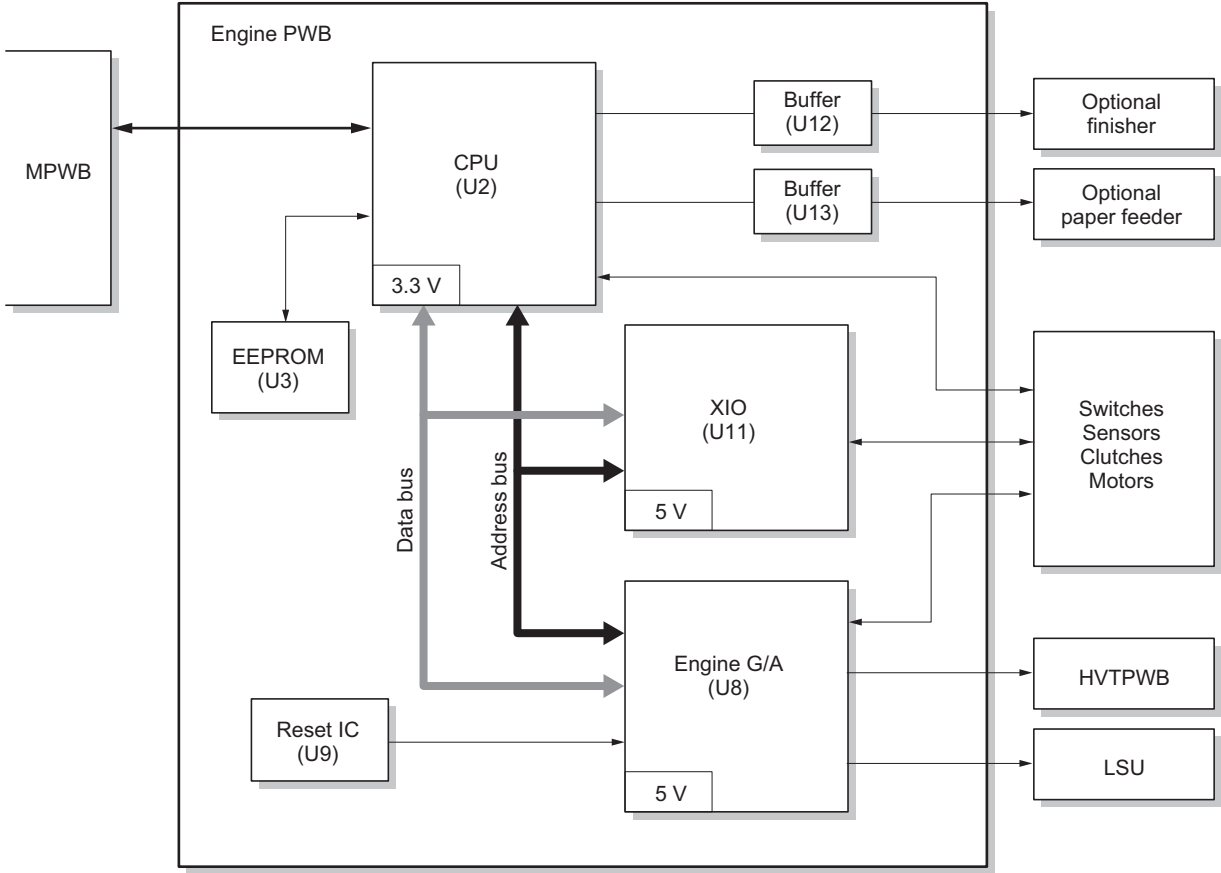
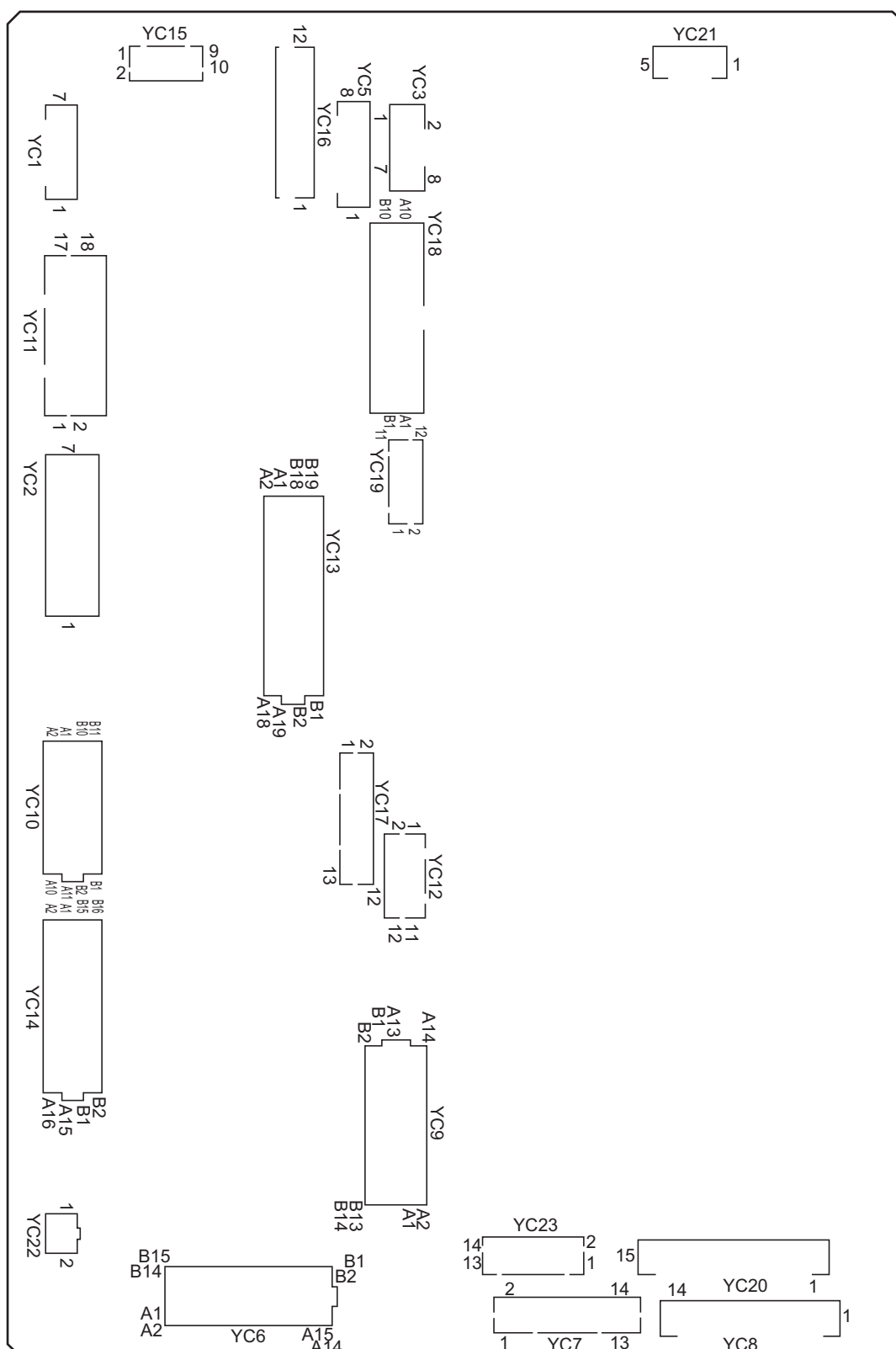


Figure 2-3-3 Engine PWB diagram



**Figure 2-3-4 Engine PWB silk-screen diagram**

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC1</b> Connected to the power source PWB	1	CFM4	O	0/5 V DC	CFM4: On/Off
	2	ZCROSS	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	3	+5VD	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	4	FH-M ON	O	0/5 V DC	FH-M: On/Off
	5	FH-S ON	O	0/5 V DC	FH-S: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC2</b> Connected to the power source PWB	1	+24VDR	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	3.3V	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input
	6	+5VD	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	7	+24VDR	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
<b>YC3</b> Connected to the optional document finisher	1	SET SIG	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher connection signal
	2	DFSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	3	DFSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	4	DFSCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher CLOCK signal
	5	DFSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Document finisher SELECT signal
	6	SISEL	-	-	Not used
	7	DFRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher READY signal
	8	SIRDY	-	-	Not used
<b>YC5</b> Connected to the optional paper feeder	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	3	PFSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder SELECT signal
	4	PFSCCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder CLOCK signal
	5	PFSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	6	PFSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	7	PFRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder READY signal
	8	PFEEED	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder FEED signal
<b>YC6</b> Connected to the MP unit, waste toner box detection switch, overflow sensor, front cover switch and cooling fan motor 1/2	A1	MPPWSW0	I	0/5 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	A2	MPPWSW1	I	0/5 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	A3	MPPWSW2	I	0/5 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A6	MPPSW	I	0/5 V DC	MPPSW: On/Off
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A9	MPPFCL	O	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off
	A10	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A11	MPFCL	O	0/24 V DC	MPFCL: On/Off
	B1	NC	-	-	Not used
	B2	GND	-	-	Ground
	B3	CFM2	O	0/24 V DC	CFM2: On/Off
	B4	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC6</b> Connected to the MP unit, waste toner box detection switch, overflow sensor, front cover switch and cooling fan motor 1/2	B5	WTDSW	I	0/5 V DC	WTDSW: On/Off
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	OFS	I	0/5 V DC	OFS: On/Off
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	FRCSW	I	0/5 V DC	FRCSW: On/Off
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	CFM1	O	0/24 V DC	CFM1: On/Off
	B12	GND	-	-	Ground
	B13	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B14	MPPLSW	I	0/5 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	B15	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC7</b> Connected to the high-voltage PWB	1	BVSEL1	O	0 to 5 V DC	Developing bias control voltage
	2	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	MHVDR	O	0/5 V DC	Main charging: On/Off
	5	HVCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias CLOCK signal
	6	RHVDR	O	0/5 V DC	Separation charging: On/Off
	7	RISEL	O	0 to 5 V DC	Separation charging control voltage
	8	TICTL	O	0 to 5 V DC	Transfer charging control voltage
	9	BVSEL2	O	0 to 5 V DC	Developing bias control voltage
	10	THVDR	O	0/5 V DC	Transfer charging: On/Off
	11	NC	-	-	Not used
	12	NC	-	-	Not used
	13	NC	-	-	Not used
	14	NC	-	-	Not used
<b>YC8</b> Connected to the laser scanner unit	1	NC	-	-	Not used
	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	NC	-	-	Not used
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	NC	-	-	Not used
	6	NC	-	-	Not used
	7	NC	-	-	Not used
	8	NC	-	-	Not used
	9	NC	-	-	Not used
	10	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	SCAN	O	0/24 V DC	PM: On/Off
	13	SCRDYN	I	0/5 V DC	PM READY signal
	14	SCCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PM CLOCK signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC9</b> Connected to the MP feed switch, toner container sensor, developing unit, toner feed solenoid, toner container detection switch and drum unit	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	MPFSW	I	0/5 V DC	MPFSW: On/Off
	A3	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A4	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A5	TCS	I	0/5 V DC	TCS: On/Off
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	DEVP0	I	0/5 V DC	Developing unit distinction signal
	A8	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A9	TNS	I	0/5 V DC	TNS: On/Off
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	DVUNITN	I	0/5 V DC	Developing unit detection signal
	A12	FUSE_CUT	O	0/5 V DC	Developing unit FUSE CUT signal
	A13	EEDATA	I/O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing unit EEPROM DATA signal
	A14	EESCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing unit EEPROM CLOCK signal
	B1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B2	TNFSOL	O	0/24 V DC	TNFSOL: On/Off
	B3	TCDSW	I	0/5 V DC	TCDSW: On/Off
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	DRUMP0	I	0/5 V DC	Drum unit distinction signal
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	CL	O	0/5 V DC	CL: On/Off
	B8	EEDATA	I/O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Drum unit EEPROM DATA signal
	B9	EESCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Drum unit EEPROM CLOCK signal
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	DRUNITN	I	0/5 V DC	Drum unit detection signal
	B12	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B13	MCCM_FWD	O	0/24 V DC	MCCM: On/Off
	B14	MCCM_REV	O	0/24 V DC	MCCM: On/Off
<b>YC10</b> Connected to the registration switch, fuser unit, duplex feed clutch, duplex paper conveying switch and cooling fan motor 5 to 10	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	RSW	O	0/5 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	A3	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A4	FUSER P0	I	0/5 V DC	Fuser unit distinction signal
	A5	3VD	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	A6	FTH1	I	Analog	FTH1 detection voltage signal
	A7	FUSE CUT	O	0/5 V DC	FTH1 FUSE CUT signal
	A8	GND	-	-	Ground
	A9	GND	-	-	Ground
	A10	FTH2 STD	I	Analog	FTH2 detection voltage signal
	A11	FTH2	I	Analog	FTH2 detection voltage signal
	B1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B2	DUPFCL	O	0/24 V DC	DUPFCL: On/Off
	B3	GND	-	-	Ground
	B4	DUPPCSW	I	0/5 V DC	DUPPCSW: On/Off
	B5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground



Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC10</b> Connected to the registration switch, fuser unit, duplex feed clutch, duplex paper conveying switch and cooling fan motor 5 to 10	B7	CFM8,9,10	O	0/24 V DC	CFM8,9,10: On/Off
	B8	DUP P0	I	0/5 V DC	Duplex unit distinction signal
	B9	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B10	CFM5,6,7	O	0/24 V DC	CFM5,6,7: On/Off
	B11	NC	-	-	Not used
<b>YC11</b> Connected to the drive motor, paper feed motor, feed clutch 1 and feed switch 1	1	R24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	R24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	6	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	DM_ON	O	0/24 V DC	DM: On/Off
	10	PFM_ON	O	0/24 V DC	PFM: On/Off
	11	DM_LOCK	I	0/5 V DC	DM LOCK signal
	12	PFM_LOCK	I	0/5 V DC	PFM LOCK signal
	13	DM_CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DM CLOCK signal
	14	FCL1	O	0/24 V DC	FCL1: On/Off
	15	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	FSW1	I	0/5 V DC	FSW1: On/Off
	18	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
<b>YC12</b> Connected to the upper and lower paper size width switches	1	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	+24VUP	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	3	PWSW-U0	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-U: On/Off
	4	PWSW-U1	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-U: On/Off
	5	PWSW-U2	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-U: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	8	+24VLO	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	9	PWSW-L0	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-L: On/Off
	10	PWSW-L1	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-L: On/Off
	11	PWSW-L2	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-L: On/Off
	12	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC13</b> Connected to the feed switch 2/3, feed clutch 2/3, left cover 2 switch, upper/lower lift motors, lower lift motor, upper/lower paper size length switches, upper/lower lift limit switches and upper/lower paper switches	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	FSW3	I	0/5 V DC	FSW3: On/Off
	A3	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A4	R24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A5	FCL3	O	0/24 V DC	FCL3: On/Off
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	FSW2	I	0/5 V DC	FSW2: On/Off
	A8	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A9	GND	-	-	Ground
	A10	LC2SW	I	0/5 V DC	LC2SW: On/Off
	A11	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A12	FCL2	O	0/24 V DC	FCL2: On/Off
	A13	LM-U SW2	I	0/5 V DC	LM-U SW2: On/Off
	A14	GND	-	-	Ground
	A15	LM-U SW1	I	0/5 V DC	LM-U SW1: On/Off
	A16	GND	-	-	Ground
	A17	LM-U REM	O	0/24 V DC	LM-U: On/Off
	A18	GND	-	-	Ground
	A19	PLSW-L	I	0/5 V DC	PLSW-L: On/Off
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	PLSW-U	I	0/5 V DC	PLSW-U: On/Off
	B3	LM-L SW2	I	0/5 V DC	LM-L SW2: On/Off
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	LM-L SW1	I	0/5 V DC	LM-L SW1: On/Off
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	LM-L REM	O	0/24 V DC	LM-L: On/Off
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	LICSW-U	I	0/5 V DC	LICSW-U: On/Off
	B10	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B11	GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	PSW-U	I	0/5 V DC	PSW-U: On/Off
	B13	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B14	GND	-	-	Ground
	B15	LICSW-L	I	0/5 V DC	LICSW-L: On/Off
	B16	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B17	GND	-	-	Ground
	B18	PSW-L	I	0/5 V DC	PSW-L: On/Off
	B19	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output

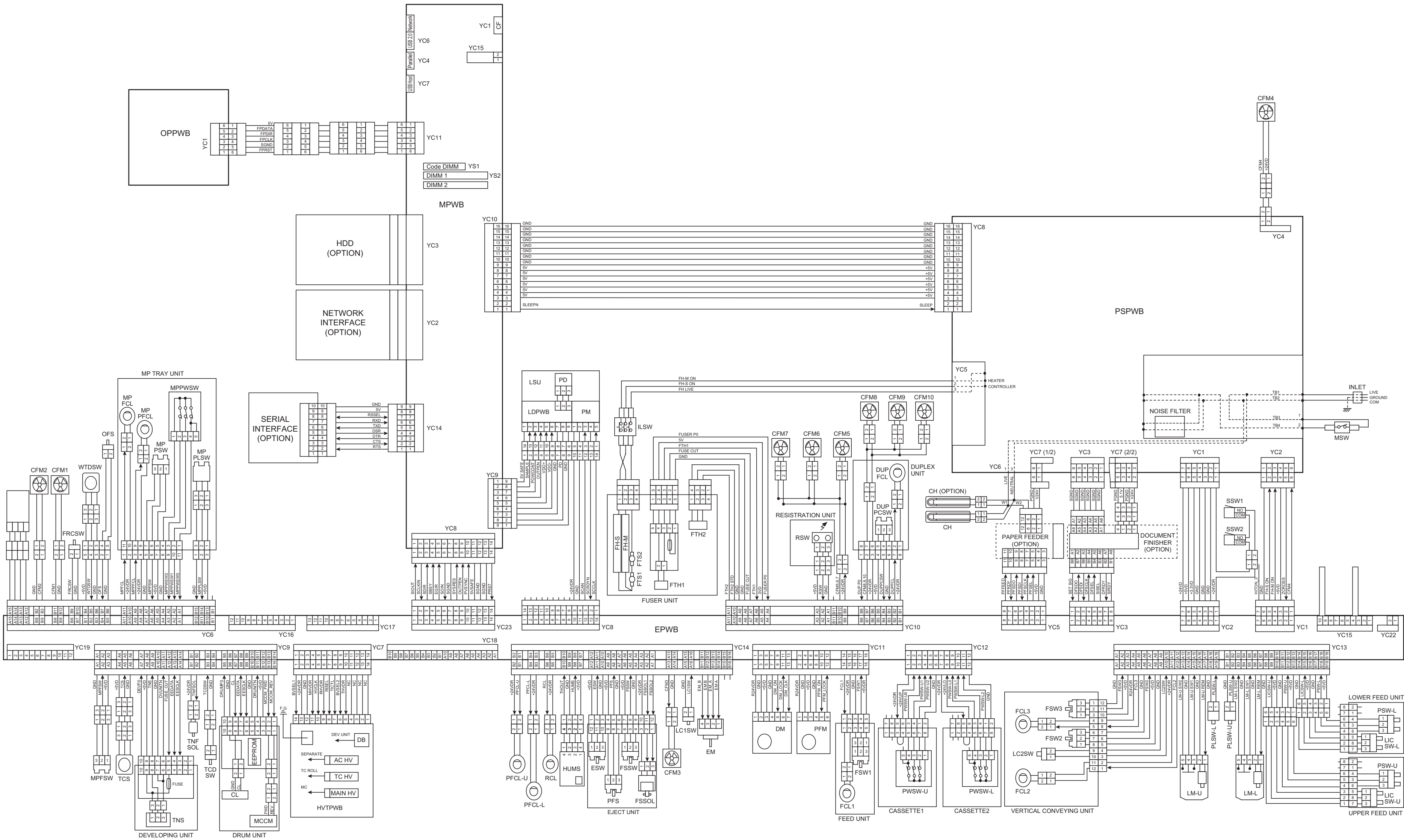
Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14 Connected to the feed- shift sole- noid, feedshift switch, eject switch, cool- ing fan motor 3, left cover 1 switch, upper/lower paper feed clutches, humidity sensor and eject motor	A1	FSSOL2	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (return)
	A2	FSSOL1	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (activate)
	A3	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	FSSW	I	0/5 V DC	FSSW: On/Off
	A6	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	PFS	I	0/5 V DC	PFS: On/Off
	A9	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	ESW	I	0/5 V DC	ESW: On/Off
	A12	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A13	CFM3	O	0/24 V DC	CFM3: On/Off
	A14	GND	-	-	Ground
	A15	GND	-	-	Ground
	A16	LC1SW	I	0/5 V DC	LC1SW: On/Off
	B1	PFCL-U	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL-U: On/Off
	B2	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B3	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B4	PFCL-L	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL-L: On/Off
	B5	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	B6	RCL	O	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
	B7	+3VD	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	B8	HUMS	I	Analog	HUMS detection voltage signal
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	THOUT	I	Analog	Thermistor detection voltage signal
	B11	EM_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B12	EM B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B13	EM_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B14	EM A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B15	NC	-	-	Not used
	B16	NC	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC23 Connected to the main PWB	1	SIOUT	O	0/5 V DC	SIOUT signal
	2	SCLKIN	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	CLOCK signal
	3	SDIR	O	0/5 V DC	SDIR signal
	4	SBSY	O	0/5 V DC	SBSY signal
	5	EGIR	O	0/5 V DC	EGIR signal
	6	SOIN	O	0/5 V DC	SOIN signal
	7	SGND	-	-	Ground
	8	SYSRES	O	0/5 V DC	SYSRES signal
	9	OUTPEN	O	0/5 V DC	OUTPEN signal
	10	PVSYNC	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PVSYNC signal
	11	5VSAFE	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	12	SGND	-	-	Ground
	13	SGND	-	-	Ground
	14	PRST	I	0/5 V DC	PRST signal

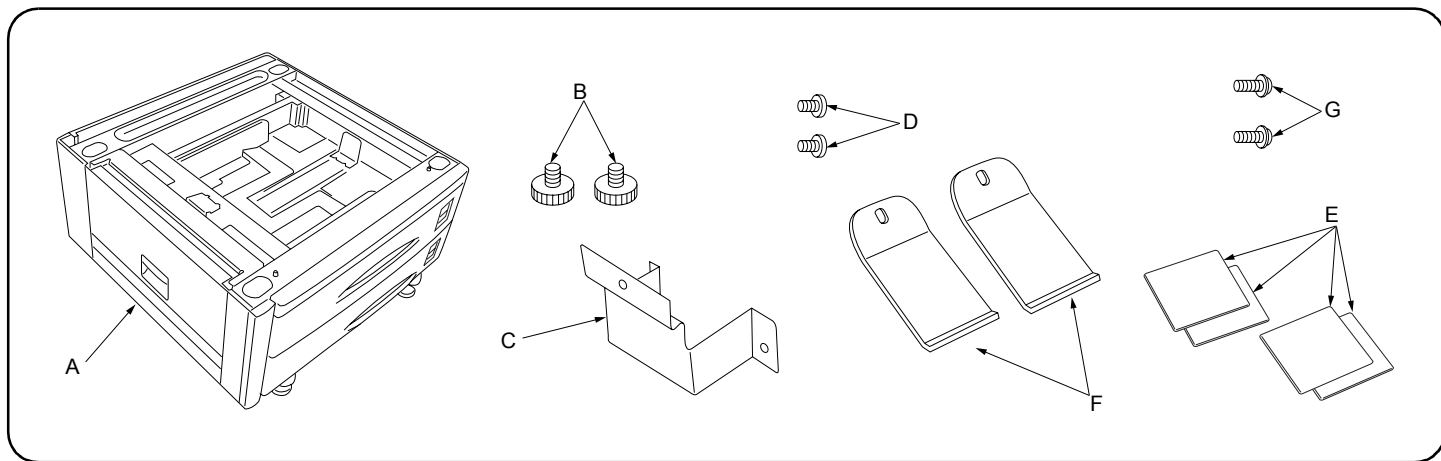
## Maintenance parts list

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Upper/lower paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	2AR07220	-	4	1
Upper/lower separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	4	2
Upper/lower forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-	4	5
MP paper feed pulley	UPPER PULLEY,BYPASS	61706770	-	9	55
MP separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	9	2
MP forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-	9	7
MP feed roller 1	ROLLER2 BYPASSFEED	302BL06541	2BL06541	10	14
MP feed roller 2	ROLLER4 BYPASSFEED	302BL06561	2BL06561	10	15
Left registration roller	ROLLER REGIST	2FG16021	-	7	72
Right registration roller	RIGHT ROLLER REGIST	302FG06211	2FG06211	5	51
Feed pulley	PULLEY FEED	2BL16080	-	6,7	49,17
Feed roller 1	PULLEY MIDDLE FEED A	302GR06010	2GR06010	5	73
Feed roller 1	PULLEY MIDDLE FEED B	302GR06020	2GR06020	5	74
Feed roller 2	ROLLER B FEED	302BL06081	2BL06081	5	22
Feed roller 3	ROLLER C FEED	302BL06091	2BL06091	5	23
Registration switch	SWITCH REGISTRATION	2FG27110	-	5	46
Left registration cleaner	UNDER CLEANER REGIST	2BL07950	-	7	16
Registration guide	GUIDE REGIST F	2BL16130	-	7	20
Right registration cleaner	PARTS,REGISTRATION CLEAN	2BL93450	-	5	44
Transfer roller unit	TR-710	302GR93281	2GR93281	7	A02
Developing unit	DV-710	302G193041	2G193041	12	1
Drum unit	DK-710	302G193031	2G193031	14	A01
Main charger unit	MC-710	302GR93071	2GR93071	14	13
Fuser unit	FK-710 U	302G193011	2G193011	13	A01
Fuser unit	FK-710 E	302G193021	2G193021	13	A01
Eject roller	ROLLER EXIT	302BL21021	2BL21021	8	27
Switchback roller	ROLLER FEED SHIFT	302BL21031	2BL21031	8	28
Eject pulley	PULLEY EXIT C	2BL21520	-	8	25
Eject pulley	PULLEY EXIT	302GR28060	2GR28060	8	39
Switchback pulley	PULLEY FEED SHIFT	2BL21330	-	6	29

General wiring diagram



# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR PAPER FEEDER**



## English

### Supplied parts

A	Paper feeder.....	1
B	Pin.....	2
C	Retainer.....	1
D	Taptite S binding screw, M4 × 08.....	2
E	Paper size plate.....	4

F	Stay.....	2
G	TP screw, M4 × 10.....	2

### Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A	Bureau papier.....	1
B	Broche.....	2
C	Élément de retenue.....	1
D	Borne de raccordement Taptite S, M4 × 08.....	2

E	Plaque de format de papier.....	4
F	Support.....	2
G	Vis TP, M4 × 10.....	2

### Procédure

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A	Alimentador de papel.....	1
B	Clavija.....	2
C	Retén.....	1
D	Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S, M4 × 08.....	2
E	Placa de tamaño de papel.....	4

F	Base.....	2
G	Tornillo TP, M4 × 10.....	2

### Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A	Papiereinzug.....	1
B	Stift.....	2
C	Halterung.....	1
D	Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube, M4 × 08.....	2
E	Papierformatplatte.....	4

F	Stütze.....	2
G	TP-Schraube, M4 × 10.....	2

### Vorgang

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

## Italiano

### Parti di fornitura

A	Unità di alimentazione della carta.....	1
B	Perno.....	2
C	Fermo.....	1
D	Vite di serraggio Taptite S, M4 × 08.....	2
E	Piastra formato carta.....	4

F	Sospensione.....	2
G	Vite TP, M4 × 10.....	2

### Procedura

Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A	供纸工作台.....	1
B	固定插销.....	2
C	安装板.....	1
D	连接用螺纹紧固 S 螺丝 M4 × 08.....	2

E	复印纸尺寸托板.....	4
F	防倒金属件.....	2
G	TP 螺丝 M4 × 10.....	2

### [ 安装步骤 ]

安装供纸工作台时, 必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关, 并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

## 日本語

### 付属部品

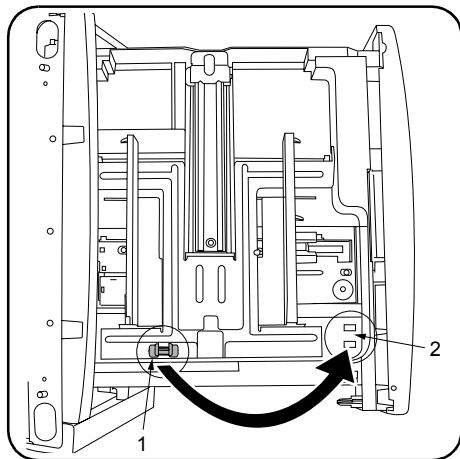
A	ペーパーフィーダ.....	1
B	ピン.....	2
C	取付板.....	1
D	ビス M4 × 08 バインドタップタイト S.....	2

E	ペーパーサイズプレート.....	4
F	転倒防止金具 (日本仕様では使用しない).....	2
G	ビス M4 × 10TP (日本仕様では使用しない).....	2

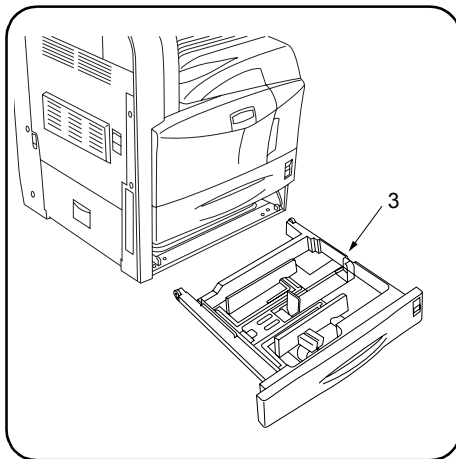
### [ 取付手順 ]

ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。

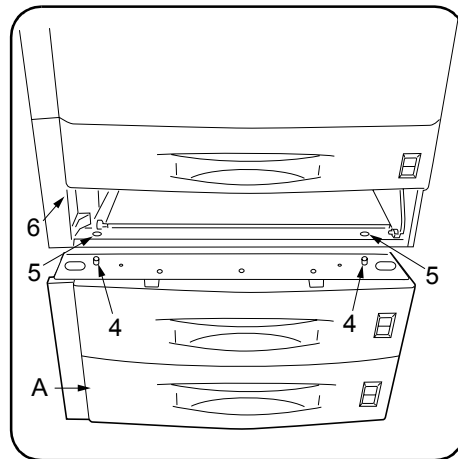




**Note**  
Remove the lift plate stopper (1) from each paper cassette and attach it to the storage location (2).



1. Remove the lower paper cassette (3) from the MFP.



2. Place the MFP (6) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (4) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (5) in the base of the MFP.

#### Remarque

Retirer la butée de plaque d'élévation (1) de chaque tiroir et la fixer à l'emplacement de rangement (2).

1. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (3) du MFP.

2. Placer le MFP (6) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (4) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (5) à la base du MFP.

#### Nota

Quite el tope de placa de elevación (1) de cada cajón de papel y fije en el lugar de almacenamiento (2).

1. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (3) del MFP.

2. Coloque el MFP (6) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (4) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (5) de la base del MFP.

#### Hinweis

Entfernen Sie den Hebeplattenanschlag (1) von jeder Papierlade, und bringen Sie ihn an der Speicherposition (2) an.

1. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (3) vom MFP ab.

2. Setzen Sie den MFP (6) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (4) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (5) in der Basis des MFP ausgerichtet sein müssen.

#### Nota

Rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (1) da ciascun cassetto della carta e fissarlo nella posizione di immagazzinaggio (2).

1. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) dall'MFP.

2. Installare l'MFP (6) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (4) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (5) situati sulla base dell'MFP.

#### 注意

拆下各供纸盒的升降板挡块 (1)，并安装在保管场所 (2) 上。

1. 取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (3)。

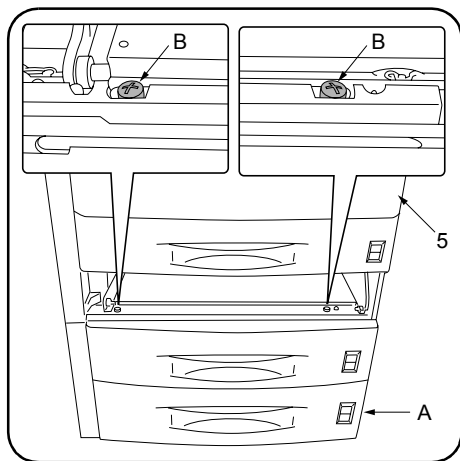
2. 供纸工作台 (A) 的左右前面的各插销 (4) 分别对准 MFP 主机底面的各相应销孔 (5) 后，将 MFP 主机 (6) 放在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

#### 注意

各カセットのリフト板ストッパ (1) を外し、保管場所 (2) に取り付け。

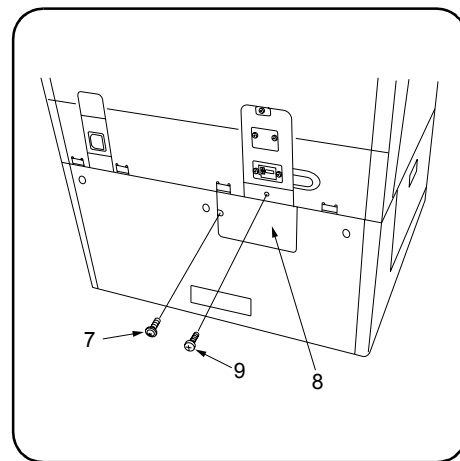
1. MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を取り外す。

2. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (4) と MFP 本体のベースの穴 (5) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (6) を載せる。



3. Secure the MFP to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).

4. Refit the lower paper cassette (3) removed in step 1 to the MFP.



5. Remove the screw (7) and then the cover (8) from the rear of the paper feeder.  
6. Remove the screw (9) from the MFP.

3. Fixer le MFP sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

4. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (3) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 1.

5. Retirer la vis (7) puis le couvercle (8) de l'arrière du bureau papier.  
6. Retirer la vis (9) du MFP.

3. Asegure el MFP al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

4. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (3) desmontado en el paso 1 en el MFP.

5. Quite el tornillo (7) y luego la tapa (8) de la parte trasera del alimentador de papel.  
6. Quite el tornillo (9) del MFP.

3. Befestigen Sie den MFP mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

4. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (3), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.

5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (7) und dann die Abdeckung (8) von der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs.  
6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (9) vom MFP.

3. Assicurare l'MFP all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

4. Reinserire nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) rimosso al punto 1.

5. Rimuovere la vite (7) e quindi il pannello (8) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.  
6. Rimuovere la vite (9) dal retro dell'MFP.

3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机固定在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

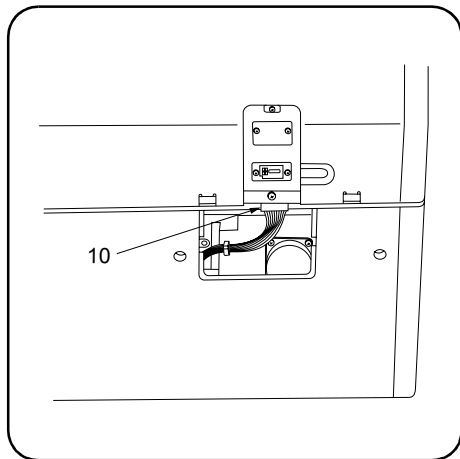
4. 在步骤 1 取下的 MFP 主机下部供纸盒 (3) 装回原来的位置。

5. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (7)，拆下供纸工作台的后部盖板 (8)。  
6. 拆除 MFP 主机后部的 1 个螺丝 (9)。

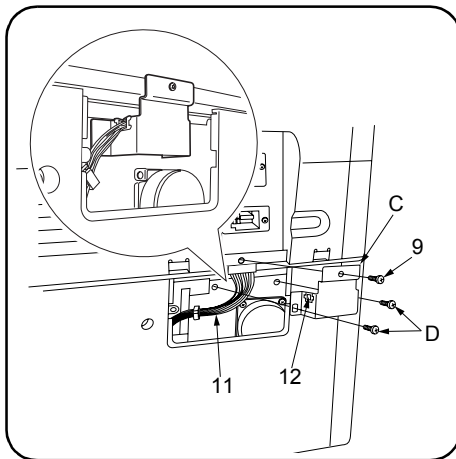
3. ピン (B) 2 本で MFP 本体をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。

4. 手順 1 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を元に戻す。

5. ビス (7) 1 本を外し、ペーパーフィーダ後部のカバー (8) を取り外す。  
6. MFP 本体後部のビス (9) 1 本を外す。



7. Insert the 12-P connector (10) of the paper feeder into the connector on the MFP.



8. Route the harness (11) through the clamp (12) on the retainer (C).

**Note**

Since the harness (11) may touch the motor, be sure to pass the harness (11) through the clamp (12).

9. Fit the retainer (C) using the screw (9) removed in step 6 and the two M4 × 08 Taptite S binding screws (D).

10. Refit the cover (8) using the screw (7) removed in step 5.

7. Insérer le connecteur à douze broches (10) du bureau papier dans le connecteur du MFP.

8. Faire passer le faisceau de câbles (11) par le collier (12) de l'élément de retenue (C).

**Remarque**

Comme le faisceau de câbles (11) risque de toucher le moteur, veiller à faire passer le faisceau de câbles (11) par le collier (12).

9. Installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (9) retirée à l'étape 6 et les deux M4 × 08 bornes de raccordement Taptite S (D).

10. Remettre le couvercle (8) en place à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée auparavant à l'étape 5.

7. Inserte el conector de 12 clavijas (10) del alimentador de papel en el conector del MFP.

8. Inserte el soporte (11) a través del sujetador (12) del retén (C).

**Nota**

Como el soporte (11) puede tocar el motor, asegúrese de pasar el soporte (11) a través del sujetador (12).

9. Coloque el retén (C) utilizando el tornillo (9) removido en el paso 6 y los dos tornillos de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 08 (D).

10. Vuelva a colocar la tapa (8) usando el tornillo (7) quitado en el paso 5.

7. Stecken Sie den 12poligen Steckverbinder (10) des Papiereinzugs in die Buchse am MFP.

8. Führen Sie den Kabelbaum (11) durch die Klemme (12) auf der Halterung (C).

**Hinweis**

Da der Kabelbaum (11) den Motor berühren kann, führen Sie den Kabelbaum (11) unbedingt durch die Klemme (12).

9. Bringen Sie die Halterung (C) an, indem Sie die Schraube (9) benutzen, die Sie in Schritt 6 entfernt haben, sowie die zwei M4 × 08 Taptite S-Befestigungsschrauben (D).

10. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (8) wieder mit der in Schritt (7) entfernten Schraube 5 an.

7. Inserire il connettore a 12 piedini (10) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta nel connettore situato sull'MFP.

8. Far passare i cavi (11) attraverso il morsetto (12) sul fermo (C).

**Nota**

Poiché i cavi (11) potrebbero toccare il motore, assicurarsi di farli passare attraverso il morsetto (12).

9. Inserire il fermo (C) utilizzando la vite (9) rimossa al passo 6 e le due viti di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 08 (D).

10. Inserire il pannello posteriore (8) usando le viti (7) rimosse al punto 5.

7. 将供纸工作台的 12 脚接头 (10) 接于 MFP 主机上的接口。

8. 将电线 (11) 插入安装板 (C) 上的夹钳 (12) 中而进行电线处理。

**注意**

务必将电线 (11) 穿过夹钳 (12), 以免马达碰触电线 (11)。

9. 用步骤 6 中拆除的 1 个螺丝 (9) 和 2 个连接用螺纹紧固 S 螺丝 M4 × 08 (D) 来进行安装板 (C) 的安装工作。

10. 用步骤 5 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 将盖板 (8) 装回原来的位置。

7. ペーパーフィーダの 12P コネクタ (10) を MFP 本体のコネクタに接続する。

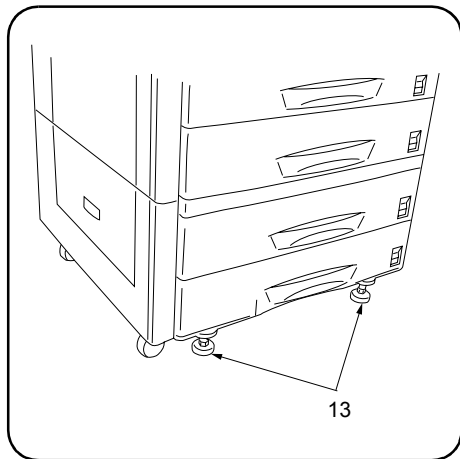
8. 電線 (11) を取付板に付いているクランプ (12) に挿入し、電線処理をおこなう。

**注意**

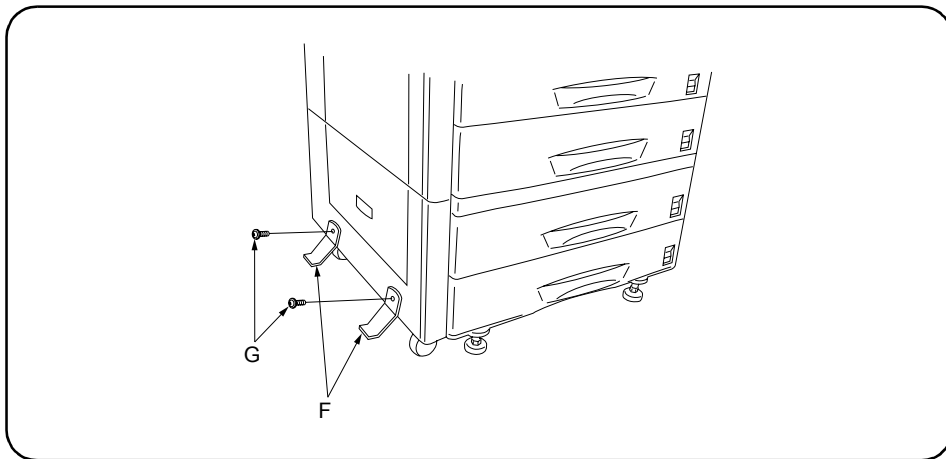
電線 (11) がモータに接触する恐れがあるので、必ずクランプ (12) に電線 (11) を通すこと。

9. 手順 6 で取り外したビス (9) 1 本と、ビス M4 × 08 バインドタップタイト S (D) 2 本で取付板 (C) を取り付ける。

10. 手順 5 で取り外したビス (7) 1 本でカバー (8) を元通りに取り付ける。



11. Turn the four adjusters (13) until they reach the floor and adjust them to level the machine.



**For 120 and 220 – 240 V specifications only**  
12. Fit the two stays (F) to the left of the paper feed desk (one toward the front and the other the rear) using the two M4 × 10 TP screws (G) such that they make contact with the floor.

**Note:** Do not fit the stays (F) if the document finisher is to be installed.

11. Tourner les quatre pieds réglables (13) jusqu'à ce qu'ils atteignent le sol, et les régler au niveau de la machine.

**Pour spécifications 120 et 220 – 240 V uniquement**

12. Installer les deux supports (F) sur la gauche du bureau d'alimentation de papier (l'un vers l'avant et l'autre vers l'arrière) à l'aide des deux vis TP M4 × 10 (G), de façon à ce qu'elles soient en contact avec le sol.

**Remarque:** Ne pas mettre en place les supports (F) si le retoucheur de document doit être installé.

11. Gire los cuatro ajustadores (13) hasta que lleguen al piso y ajústelos hasta que nivelen la máquina.

**Para especificaciones de 120 V y 220 – 240 V solamente**

12. Coloque las dos bases (F) en el lado izquierdo de la unidad de alimentación de papel (una hacia el frente y la otra hacia la parte de atrás) usando los dos tornillos TP M4 × 10 (G) de modo que hagan contacto con el piso.

**Nota:** No coloque los bases (F) si se va a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

11. Drehen Sie die vier Einstellfüße (13), bis sie den Boden erreichen und stellen Sie sie so ein, daß die Maschine nivelliert ist.

**Nur Für 120 und 220 – 240 V Spezifikationen**

12. Bringen Sie die zwei Stützen (F) links am Papiereinzugstisch (eine in Richtung Vorderseite und eine in Richtung Rückseite) an. Benutzen Sie dazu die zwei M4 × 10 TP-Schrauben (G) so, daß diese mit dem Boden in Berührung kommen.

**Hinweis:** Bringen Sie die Stützen (F) nicht an, wenn der Dokumentenfixierer installiert werden soll.

11. Ruotare i quattro piedini regolabili (13) sino a quando vengono a contatto con il pavimento; quindi regolarne l'altezza in modo da livellare la macchina.

**Specifiche solo per 120 V e 220 – 240 V**

12. Inserire le due sospensioni (F) alla sinistra dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (una verso la parte anteriore e l'altra verso la parte posteriore) utilizzando le due viti TP M4 × 10 (G) in modo tale che sia a contatto col pavimento.

**Nota:** Non inserire le sospensioni (F) se la finitrice di documenti deve essere installata.

11. 旋转 4 个角落的高度调节器 (13) 至地板高度, 以调节 MFP 主机的整体高度。

仅适用于 120V、220/240V 的产品

12. 在前后两处各用 1 个 TP 螺丝 M4 × 10 (G) 安装防倒金属件 (F), 防倒金属件 (F) 须贴紧地面。

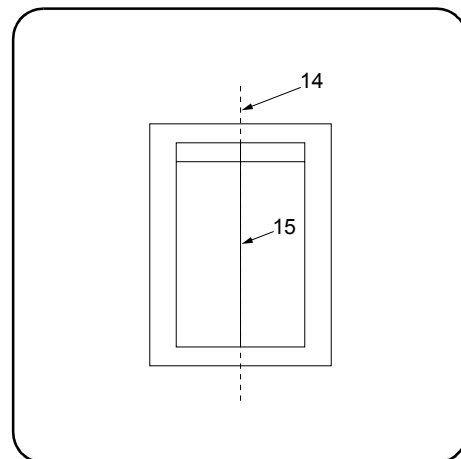
若欲安装装订器, 则不安装防倒金属件 (F)。

11. 4 隅のアジャスター (13) を床に接触するまで回しながら MFP 本体の全体の高さを調節する。

日本仕様ではこの作業はありません

12. 転倒防止取付金具 (F) を床に接触するように、ビス M4 × 10TP (G) 1 本で転倒防止取付金具 (F) を前後 2 箇所に取り付ける。

ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける場合、転倒防止取付金具 (F) は取り付けない。



### Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main switch on.
2. Load paper into the drawer and make a test copy to check the operation.

3. Run maintenance item 993. Select "VTC PG1" and output a test pattern.

For full-color machines, run maintenance item 402 and output the test pattern.

4. If the center of the paper (14) and that of the test pattern output (15) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

### Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
2. Mettre du papier dans le tiroir et effectuer une copie d'essai pour vérifier le fonctionnement.

3. Exécuter le point de maintenance 993.

Sélectionner "VTC PG1" et produire une mire.

Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, exécuter le point de maintenance 402 et produire la mire.

4. Si le centre du papier (14) et celui de la sortie de mire (15) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.

<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

### Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
2. Introduzca papel en el cajón y haga una copia de prueba para verificar la operación.

3. Ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 993. Seleccione "VTC PG1" y saque un patrón de prueba.

Para máquinas a todo color, ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 402 y haga que salga un patrón de prueba.

4. Si el centro del papel (14) y aquél de la salida del patrón de prueba (15) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

### Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Legen Sie Papier in die Papierlade ein und machen Sie eine Testkopie, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

3. Lassen Sie Wartungspunkt 993 laufen.

Wählen Sie "VTC PG1" und drucken Sie ein Testmuster.

Nur für Vollfarbenmaschinen den Wartungspunkt 402 ausführen und das Testmuster ausgeben.

4. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (14) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (15) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

### Controllare la linea centrale

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Caricare la carta nel cassetto ed eseguire una copia di prova per controllare il funzionamento.

3. Eseguire la voce manutenzione 993.

Selezionare "VTC PG1" e stampare un modello di prova.

Solo per le macchine a colore, eseguire la voce manutenzione 402 e stampare un modello di prova.

4. Se il centro della carta (14) e quello del modello di prova (15) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.

<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

### [ 中心線の確認 ]

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在纸盘内装入复印纸。进行测试复印，以确定复印动作状态。

3. 执行维修模式“993”而选择“VTC PG1”以进行测试图案的输出。

全彩色机执行维修模式“402”，以进行测试图案的输出。

4. 如果复印纸的中心位置 (14) 与测试图案的中心位置 (15) 为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。

(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

### [ センターライン確認 ]

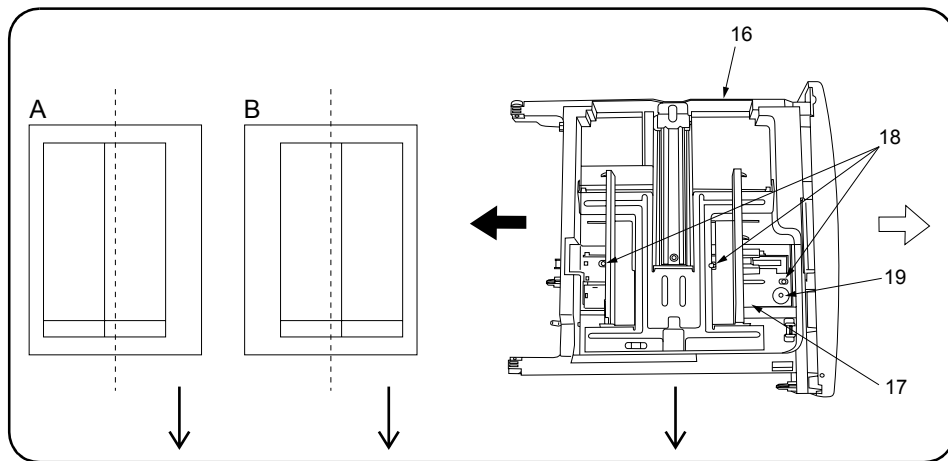
1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. カセットに用紙をセットする。テストコピーをおこない、動作を確認する。

3. メンテナンスモード“993”で“VTC PG1”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。

フルカラー機は、メンテナンスモード“402”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。

4. 用紙のセンター (14) とテストパターンのセンター (15) が基準値外の時は、次の調整をおこなう。

<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下



### Adjusting the center line

1. Open the drawer (16) of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (18) securing the adjuster (17).

A and B: test pattern output examples

2. If the test pattern output example looks like A, turn the adjusting screw (19) clockwise, move the adjuster (17) in the direction of the black arrow (➡), and retighten the three screws (18).
3. If the test pattern output example looks like B, turn the adjusting screw (19) counterclockwise, move the adjuster (17) in the direction of the white arrow (⇐), and retighten the three screws (18).

4. Output the test pattern again.

5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.

<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

### Réglage de la ligne médiane

1. Ouvrir le tiroir (16) du bureau papier et desserrer les trois vis (18) qui fixent le dispositif de réglage (17).

A et B: exemples de sortie de mieres

2. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, tourner la vis de réglage (19) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (17) dans la direction de la flèche noire (➡), et resserrer les trois vis (18).
3. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, tourner la vis de réglage (19) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (17) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (⇐), et resserrer les trois vis (18).

4. Reproduire une nouvelle mire

5. Répéter les étapes 1 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

### Ajuste de la línea central

1. Abra el cajón de papel (16) del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (18) que aseguran el regulador (17).

A y B: ejemplos de salidas de patrones de prueba

2. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, gire el tornillo de ajuste (19) en sentido horario, mueva el regulador (17) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (➡) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (18).
3. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a B, gire el tornillo de ajuste (19) en antihorario, mueva el regulador (17) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (⇐) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (18).

4. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.

5. Repita los pasos 1 a 4 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

### Einstellen der Mittenlinie

1. Öffnen Sie den Auszug (16) der Papierlade und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (18), die den Anpasser (17) halten.

A und B: Beispiele von Testmuster Ausgaben

2. Wenn die Testmuster Ausgabe aussieht wie A, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (19) im Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (17) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (➡), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (18) wieder fest.
3. Wenn die Testmuster Ausgabe aussieht wie B, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (19) entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (17) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (⇐), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (18) wieder fest.

4. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.

5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 4, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.

<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

### Regolazione della linea centrale

1. Aprire il cassetto (16) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta e, allentando le tre viti (18), assicurare il regolatore (17).

A e B: esempi di stampa del modello di prova

2. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, girare la vite di regolazione (19) in senso orario, spostare il regolatore (17) nella direzione della freccia nera (➡) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (18).
3. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, girare la vite di regolazione (19) in senso antiorario, spostare il regolatore (17) nella direzione della freccia bianca (⇐) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (18).

4. Stampare nuovamente il modello di prova.

5. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 4 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

### [ 中心线的调整 ]

1. 拉出供纸工作台的纸盘 (16) 后, 松开调整板 (17) 上的 3 个螺丝 (18)。

A, B 测试图案

2. 测试图案为 A 画面时, 将调整螺丝 (19) 向右旋转, 按箭头 (➡) 方向移动调整板 (17), 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (18)。
3. 测试图案为 B 画面时, 将调整螺丝 (19) 向左旋转, 按箭头 (⇐) 方向移动调整板 (17), 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (18)。

4. 再次进行测试图案的输出。

5. 反复操作步骤 1 至 4, 直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。  
(标准值) 左右偏移: 1.5mm 以下

### [ センターライン調整 ]

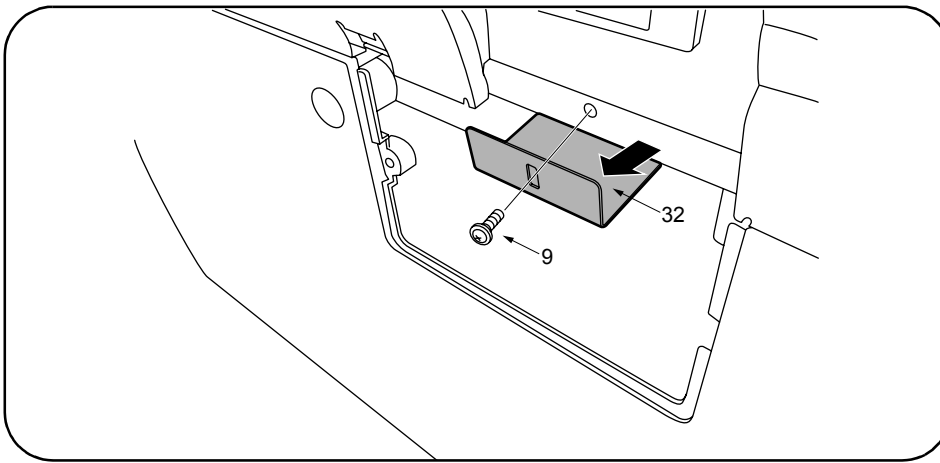
1. ペーパーフィーダのカセット (16) を引き出し、調整板 (17) のビス (18) 3 本を緩める。

A, B: テストパターン

2. テストパターンが A 画像の場合、調整ネジ (19) を右に回し、矢印 (➡) の向きに調整板 (17) を動かす、ビス (18) 3 本を締め付ける。
3. テストパターンが B 画像の場合、調整ネジ (19) を左に回し、矢印 (⇐) の向きに調整板 (17) を動かす、ビス (18) 3 本を締め付ける。

4. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。

5. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 4 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下



#### English Changing installation procedure of the paper feeder

Step 6 of page 3 is changed as below:

6. Remove the screw (9) from the MFP to detach the connector cover (32).  
(Move to step 7.)

---

#### Français Changement apporté à la procédure d'installation de l'alimenteur de papier

L'étape 6 de la page 3 est changée de la façon décrite ci-dessous:

6. Retirer la vis (9) du MFP pour détacher le couvercle du connecteur (32).  
(Passer à l'étape 7.)

---

#### Español Cambio del procedimiento de instalación del alimentador de papel

El paso 6 de la página 3 se cambia de la siguiente forma:

6. Saque el tornillo (9) del MFP para desmontar la cubierta del conector (32).  
(Vaya al paso 7.)

---

#### Deutsch Änderung des Installationsverfahrens für Papierzuführer

Schritt 6 auf Seite 3 wurde wie folgt geändert:

6. Die Schraube (9) vom MFP herausdrehen, um die Anschlussabdeckung (32) abzunehmen.  
(Zu Schritt 7 übergehen.)

---

#### Italiano Modifica della procedura per l'installazione dell'unità di alimentazione carta

Il passo 6 a pagina 3 è stato modificato nel seguente modo:

6. Rimuovere la vite (9) dall'MFP per staccare il pannello del connettore (32).  
(Passare al passo 7.)

---

#### 简体中文 供纸盒安装步骤的变更

第 3 页的步骤 6 内容变更如下。

6. 将 MFP 本体后部的 1 个螺丝 (9) 卸下, 然后取下连接器盖 (32)。  
(进行步骤 7 的操作。)

---

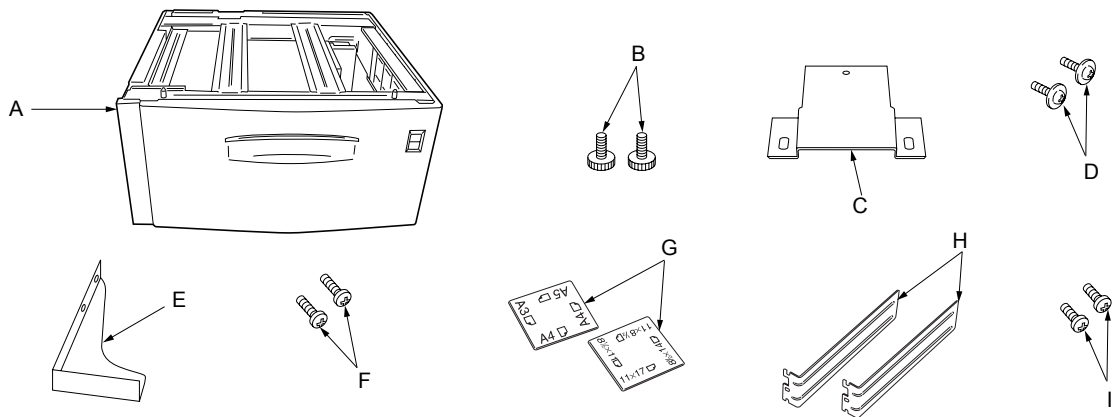
#### 日本語 ペーパーフィーダ設置手順書の変更

3 ページ手順 6 を次のように変更します。

6. MFP 本体後部のビス (9) 1 本を外し、コネクターカバー (32) を取り外す。  
(手順 7 に進む)

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER**





## English

### Supplied parts

A Paper feeder.....	1
B Pin .....	2
C Retainer .....	1
D TP screw, M4 × 06.....	2
E Stay .....	1

F Binding screw, M4 × 16.....	2
G Paper size plate .....	2
H Longitudinal size adjuster (inch specifications only) .....	2
I Round cross-head tapping screw, M3 × 8 (inch specifications only) .....	2

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Bureau papier .....	1
B Broche .....	2
C Élément de retenue .....	1
D Vis TP, M4 × 06 .....	2
E Support.....	1

F Vis de raccordement, M4 × 16 .....	2
G Plaque de format de papier.....	2
H Dispositif de réglage du format longitudinal (spécifications en pouces seulement) .....	2
I Vis de connexion à tête cruciforme ronde, M3 × 8 (spécifications en pouces seulement) ....	2

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Alimentador de papel.....	1
B Clavija.....	2
C Retén.....	1
D Tornillo TP, M4 × 06.....	2
E Base .....	1

F Tornillo de sujeción, M4 × 16 .....	2
G Placa de tamaño de papel .....	2
H Regulador de tamaño longitudinal (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas).....	2
I Tornillo de roscado de cabeza en cruz redonda, M3 × 8 (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas).....	2

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Papiereinzug .....	1
B Stift .....	2
C Halterung.....	1
D TP-Schraube, M4 × 06 .....	2
E Stütze .....	1

F Verbundschraube, M4 × 16.....	2
G Papierformatplatte.....	2
H Längsgrößen-Einsteller (nur Zollspezifikationen) .....	2
I Kreuzschlitz-Rundkopf-Schneidschraube, M3 × 8 (nur Zollspezifikationen) .....	2

## Italiano

### Parti di fornitura

A Unità di alimentazione della carta .....	1
B Perno .....	2
C Fermo .....	1
D Vite TP, M4 × 06 .....	2
E Sospensione .....	1

F Vite di serraggio, M4 × 16.....	2
G Piastra formato carta.....	2
H Regolatore della misura longitudinale (solo per le specifiche in pollici).....	2
I Vite autofilettante circolare a croce, M3 × 8 (solo per le specifiche in pollici).....	2

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A 供纸工作台.....	1
B 固定插销.....	2
C 安装板.....	1
D TP 螺丝 M4 × 06.....	2

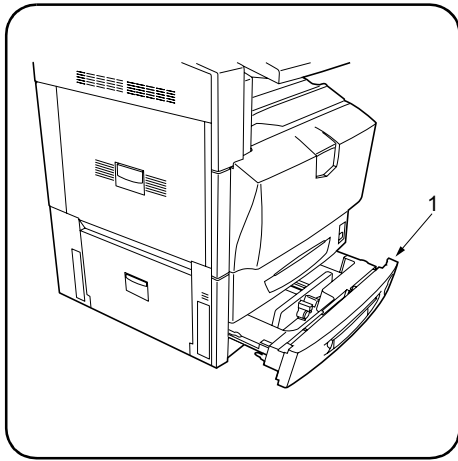
E 防倒金属件 .....	1
F 连接螺丝 M4 × 16.....	2
G 复印纸尺寸托板 .....	2
H 纵向尺寸板 (仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品) .....	2
I 十字槽盘头自攻螺丝 M3 × 8 (仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品) .....	2

## 日本語

### 付属部品

A ペーパーフィーダ .....	1
B ピン.....	2
C 取付板.....	1
D ビス TP M4 × 06 .....	2

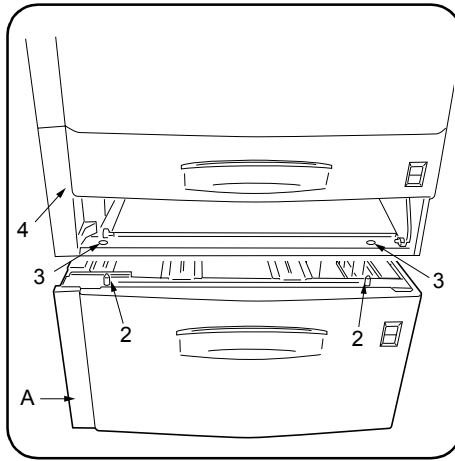
E 転倒防止金具 (日本仕様では使用しない) .....	1
F ビス バインド M4 × 16 (日本仕様では使用しない) .....	2
G ペーパーサイズプレート.....	2
H 縦幅サイズ板(インチ仕様のみ).....	2
I ビス +ナベ M3 × 8 タッピング (インチ仕様のみ) .....	2



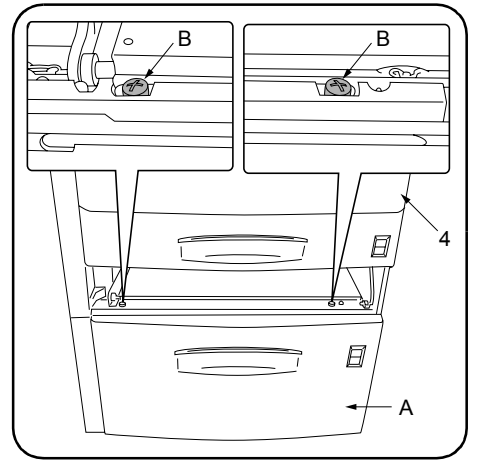
### Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

1. Remove the lower paper cassette (1) from the MFP.



2. Place the MFP (4) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (2) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (3) in the base of the MFP.



3. Secure the MFP to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).

### Procédure

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

1. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (1) du MFP.

2. Placer le MFP (4) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (2) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (3) à la base du MFP.

3. Fixer le MFP sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

### Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

1. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (1) del MFP.

2. Coloque el MFP (4) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (2) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (3) de la base del MFP.

3. Asegure el MFP al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

### Vorgang

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

1. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (1) vom MFP ab.

2. Setzen Sie den MFP (4) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (2) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (3) in der Basis des MFP ausgerichtet sein müssen.

3. Befestigen Sie den MFP mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

### Procedura

Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

1. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) dall'MFP.

2. Installare l'MFP (4) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (2) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (3) situati sulla base dell'MFP.

3. Assicurare l'MFP all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

### 【 安装步骤 】

安装供纸工作台时，必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

1. 取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (1)。

2. 供纸工作台 (A) 的左右前面的各插销 (2) 分别对准 MFP 主机底面的各相应销孔 (3) 后，将 MFP 主机 (4) 放在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机固定在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

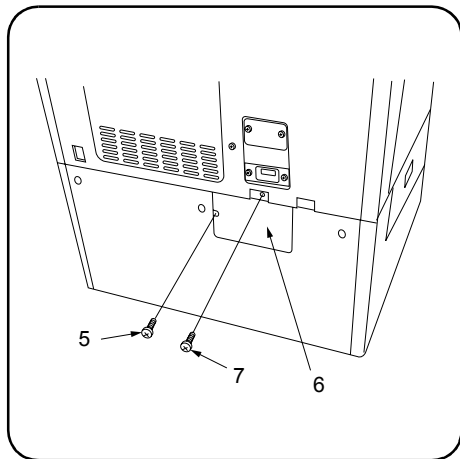
### 【 取付手順 】

ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、MFP 本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。

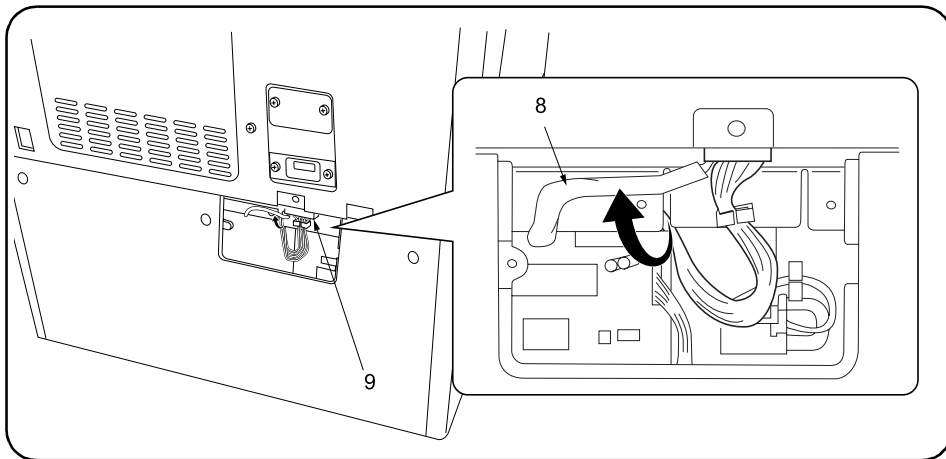
1. MFP 本体の下段カセット (1) を取り外す。

2. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (2) と MFP 本体のベースの穴 (3) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (4) を載せる。

3. ピン (B) 2 本で MFP 本体をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。



4. Refit the lower paper cassette (1) removed in step 1 to the MFP.
5. Remove the screw (5) and then the cover (6) from the rear of the paper feeder.
6. Remove the screw (7) from the MFP.



7. Pull out the wire (8) covered with the black tube in front of the frame. Connect the 12-P connector (9) to the connector on the MFP.

4. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (1) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 1.
5. Retirer la vis (5) puis le couvercle (6) de l'arrière du bureau papier.
6. Retirer la vis (7) du MFP.

7. Tirer le câble (8) recouvert par le tube noir à l'avant du cadre. Connecter le connecteur à douze broches (9) au connecteur du MFP.

4. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (1) desmontado en el paso 1 en el MFP.
5. Quite el tornillo (5) y luego la tapa (6) de la parte trasera del alimentador de papel.
6. Quite el tornillo (7) del MFP.

7. Saque el cable (8) cubierto con el tubo negro en el frente del bastidor. Conecte el conector de 12 clavijas (9) en el conector del MFP.

4. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (1), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.
5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (5) und dann die Abdeckung (6) von der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs.
6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (7) vom MFP.

7. Ziehen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (8) auf der Vorderseite des Rahmens heraus. Schließen Sie den 12-poligen Steckverbinder (9) an den Steckverbinder am MFP an.

4. Reinserire nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) rimosso al punto 1.
5. Rimuovere la vite (5) e quindi il pannello (6) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.
6. Rimuovere la vite (7) dal retro dell'MFP.

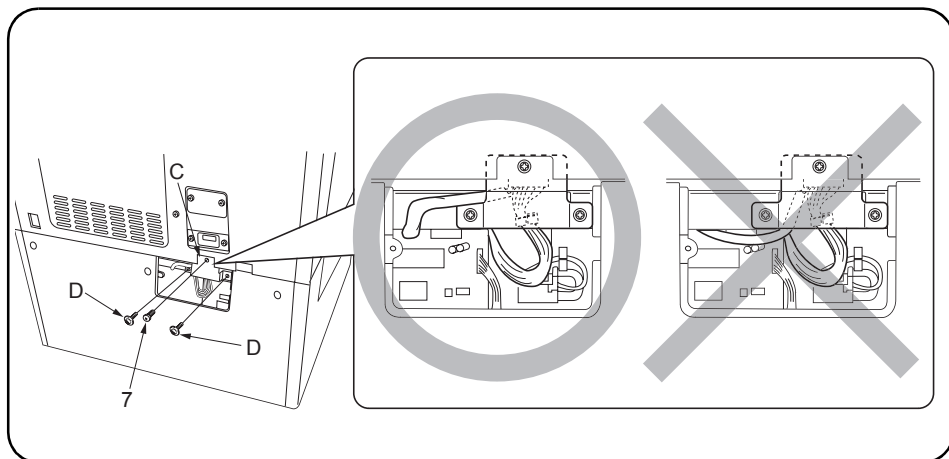
7. Tirare fuori, davanti al telaio, il cavo (8) coperto con il tubo nero. Collegare il connettore a 12 piedini (9) al connettore sull'MFP.

4. 在步骤 1 取下 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (1) 装回原来的位置。
5. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (5)，拆下供纸工作台的后部盖板 (6)。
6. 拆除 MFP 主机后部的 1 个螺丝 (7)。

7. 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (8) 拉至机架前。将 12 脚接头 (9) 与 MFP 主机上的接口连接。

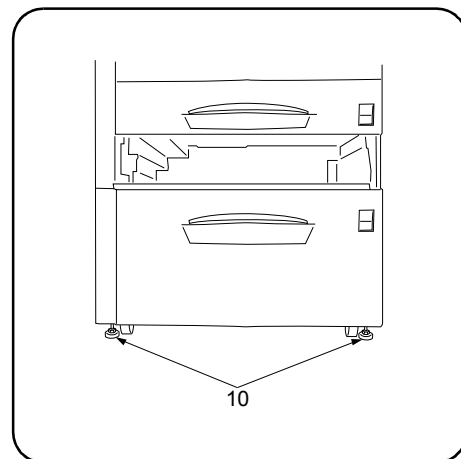
4. 手順 1 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (1) を元に戻す。
5. ビス (5) 1 本を外し、ペーパーフィーダ後部のカバー (6) を取り外す。
6. MFP 本体後部のビス (7) 1 本を外す。

7. 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (8) を、フレームの手前に引き出す。12P コネクタ (9) を MFP 本体のコネクタに接続する。



**8.** Separate the wire (8) covered with the black tube and the signal wires as shown on the above drawing, and install the retainer (C) using the screw (7) removed in step 6 and the two M4 × 06 TP screws (D).

**9.** Refit the cover (6) using the screw (5) removed in step 5.



**10.** Turn the four adjusters (10) until they reach the floor and adjust them to level the machine.

**8.** Séparer le câble (8) recouvert par le tube noir et les câbles de signaux comme montré dans le dessin ci-dessus et installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée à l'étape 6 et les deux vis TP M4 × 06 (D).

**9.** Remettre le couvercle (6) en place à l'aide de la vis (5) retirée auparavant à l'étape 5.

**10.** Tourner les quatre pieds réglables (10) jusqu'à ce qu'ils atteignent le sol, et les régler au niveau de la machine.

**8.** Separe el cable (8) cubierto con el tubo negro y los cables de señal tal como aparece en el dibujo de arriba e instale el retén (C) usando el tornillo (7) removido en el paso 6 y los dos tornillos TP M4 × 06 (D).

**9.** Vuelva a colocar la tapa (6) usando el tornillo (5) quitado en el paso 5.

**10.** Gire los cuatro ajustadores (10) hasta que lleguen al piso y ajústelos hasta que nivelen la máquina.

**8.** Trennen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (8) und die Signalkabel, wie in der obigen Zeichnung gezeigt, und installieren Sie die Halterung (C), indem Sie die Schraube (7) benutzen, die Sie in Schritt 6 entfernt haben, sowie die zwei M4 × 06 TP-Schrauben (D).

**9.** Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (6) wieder mit der in Schritt (5) entfernten Schraube 5 an.

**10.** Drehen Sie die vier Einstellfüße (10), bis sie den Boden erreichen und stellen Sie sie so ein, daß die Maschine nivelliert ist.

**8.** Separare il cavo (8) coperto con il tubo nero e i cavi del segnale come indicato nel disegno qui sopra, e installare il fermo (C) utilizzando la vite (7) rimossa al passo 6 e le due viti TP M4 × 06(D).

**9.** Inserire il pannello posteriore (6) usando le viti (5) rimosse al punto 5.

**10.** Ruotare i quattro piedini regolabili (10) sino a quando vengono a contatto con il pavimento; quindi regolarne l'altezza in modo da livellare la macchina.

**8.** 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (8) 如图示要求那样使电线分离, 用步骤 6 中拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 和两个 TP 螺丝 M4 × 06 (D) 来进行安装板 (C) 的安装工作。

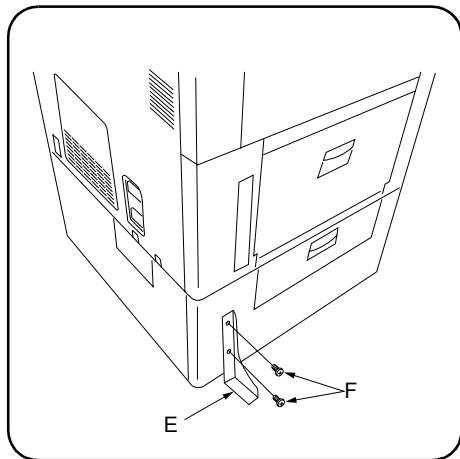
**9.** 用步骤 5 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (5) 将盖板 (6) 装回原来的位置。

**10.** 旋转 4 个角落的高度调节器 (10) 至地板高度, 以调节 MFP 主机的整体高度。

**8.** 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (8) と電線を図のように分離させ、手順 6 で外したビス (7) 1 本と、ビス TP M4 × 06 (D) 2 本で取付板 (C) を取り付ける。

**9.** 手順 5 で取り外したビス (5) 1 本でカバー (6) を元通りに取り付ける。

**10.** 4 隅のアジャスター (10) を床に接触するまで回しながら MFP 本体の全体の高さを調節する。



#### For 120 V and 220 – 240 V specifications only

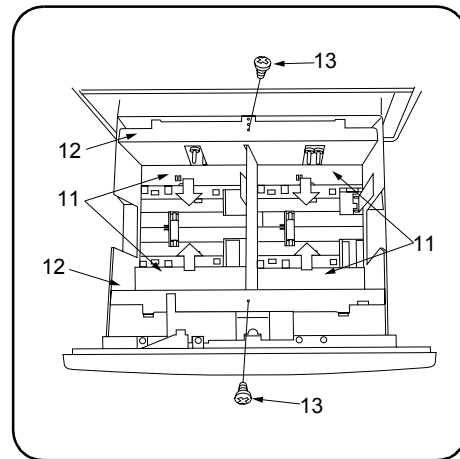
11. Fit the stay (E) to the lower left of the large paper deck toward the rear using the two M4 × 16 binding screws (F) such that it makes contact with the floor.

**Note:** Do not fit the stay (E) if the document finisher is to be installed.

#### Setting the paper size

At the time of shipping, the paper size is set to Letter for inch specifications and A4 for metric specifications. To change the size, follow the procedure below.

1. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder.



2. Move the sliders (11) at the machine front and rear inward (two at each point).
3. Remove the screw (13) from each of the front and rear lateral size adjusters (12).

#### Pour spécifications 120 V et 220 – 240 V uniquement

11. Installer le support (E) sur la partie inférieure gauche du grand plateau à papier, vers l'arrière, à l'aide des deux vis de raccordement M4 × 16 (F) de façon à qu'il soit en contact avec le sol.

**Remarque:** Ne pas installer le support (E) si le retoucheur de document doit être installé.

#### Réglage de la taille du papier

Au moment de l'expédition, le format du papier est réglé à Lettre pour les spécifications en pouces, et à A4 pour les spécifications métriques. Pour changer le format, procéder comme suit.

1. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi.

2. Déplacer les curseurs (11), à l'avant et à l'arrière de la machine, vers l'intérieur (deux à chaque endroit).
3. Retirer la vis (13) de chaque dispositif de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (12).

#### Para especificaciones de 120 V y 220 – 240 V solamente

11. Coloque la base (E) en el lado izquierdo inferior de la tabla grande de papel hacia la parte de atrás usando los dos tornillos de sujeción M4 × 16 (F) de modo que haga contacto con el piso.

**Nota:** No coloque la base (E) si se va a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

#### Configuración del tamaño de papel

Al momento de la salida de fábrica, el tamaño de papel está ajustado a Carta para las especificaciones de pulgadas y A4 para las especificaciones métricas. Para cambiar el tamaño, siga el procedimiento de abajo.

1. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel.

2. Mueva los graduadores (11) del frente y parte trasera de la máquina hacia adentro (dos en cada punto).
3. Quite el tornillo (13) de cada regulador de tamaño lateral frontal y trasero (12).

#### Nur für 120 V und 220 – 240 V Spezifikationen

11. Bringen Sie die Stütze (E) unten links am großen Papierdeck, in Richtung Rückseite an. Benutzen Sie dazu die zwei M4 × 16 Verbundschrauben (F) so, daß diese mit dem Boden in Berührung kommen.

**Hinweis:** Bringen Sie die Stütze (E) nicht an, wenn der Dokumentenfixierer installiert werden soll.

#### Einstellen der Papiergröße

Das Papierformat wurde vor dem Versand auf Letter für Zollspezifikationen und A4 für metrische Spezifikationen eingestellt. Um das Format zu ändern, gehen Sie folgendermaßen vor.

1. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade aus dem Papiereinzug.

2. Bewegen Sie die Schieber (11) an der Vorder- und Rückseite des Gerätes nach innen (zwei an jedem Punkt).
3. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (13) von jedem der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller (12).

#### Specifiche solo per 120 V e 220 – 240 V

11. Inserire la sospensione (E) nella parte inferiore sinistra del cassettone verso il retro utilizzando le due viti di serraggio M4 × 16 (F) in modo tale che sia a contatto col pavimento.

**Nota:** non inserire la sospensione (E) se la finitrice di documenti deve essere installata.

#### Impostazione della dimensione della carta

Al momento della spedizione, il formato della carta è impostato su Lettera per le specifiche in pollici e A4 per le specifiche metriche. Per cambiare formato, seguire la procedura qui in basso.

1. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentatore della carta.

2. Spostare verso l'interno gli scivoli (11) nella parte anteriore e posteriore della macchina (due in ciascun punto).
3. Rimuovere la vite (13) da ciascuno dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (12).

#### 仅适用于 120V、220/240V 的产品

11. 用 2 个连接螺丝 M4 × 16(F) 安装防倒金属件 (E), 防倒金属件 (E) 须贴紧地面。  
若欲安装装订器, 则不安装防倒金属件 (E)。

#### [ 尺寸设定 ]

出厂时, 英寸尺寸的产品设定为 Letter, 厘米尺寸的产品设定为 A4。需要变更尺寸时, 按照以下顺序进行操作。

1. 拉出供纸工作台的供纸盒。

2. 把前后各 2 张的滑板 (11) 往内侧移动。
3. 拆除横向尺寸板 (12) 上前后的各 1 个螺丝 (13)。

#### 日本仕様ではこの作業はありません

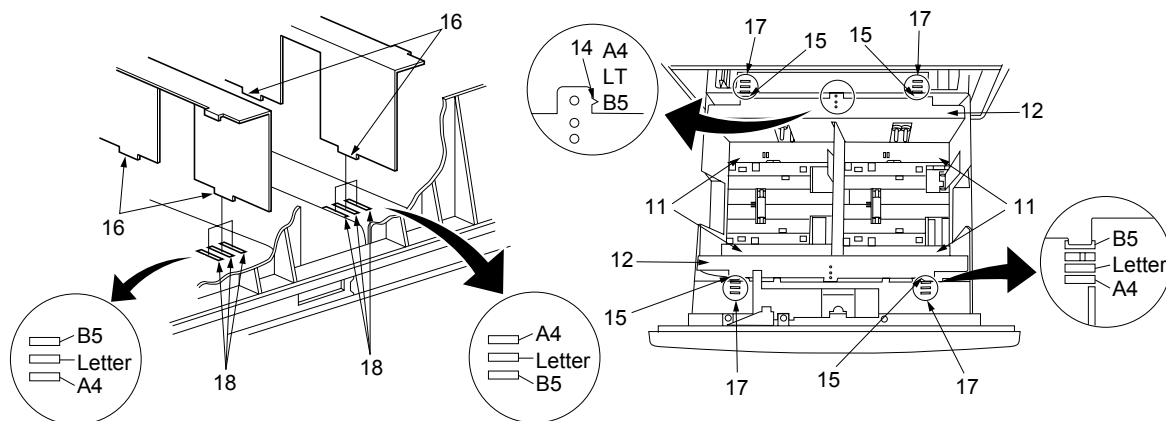
11. 転倒防止取付金具 (E) を床に接触するように、ビス バインド M4 × 16(F) 2 本で取り付ける。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける場合、転倒防止取付金具 (E) は取り付けない。

#### [ サイズ設定 ]

出荷時、インチ仕様は Letter、センチ仕様は A4 に設定されています。サイズを変更する場合は次の手順をおこなってください。

1. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出す。

2. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (11) を内側にずらす。
3. 前後の横幅サイズ板 (12) より各ビス (13) 1 本を外す。



4. Insert the upper tabs (15) and lower tabs (16) of the front and rear lateral size adjusters (12) into the upper slots (17) and lower slots (18) respectively such that the size indicators (14) point to the size of paper to be used. Secure the lateral size adjusters using the screw (13) for each.

For the front side, check the paper size referring to the positions where the upper tabs (15) are inserted into the upper slots (17).

Upper slot (17) positions: Front (A4), middle (Letter), rear (B5)

Upper slot (17) positions on the rear side: Front (B5), middle (Letter), rear (A4)

5. Move the front and rear sliders (11) (two at each point) outward until they make contact with the lateral size adjusters (12).

4. Insérer les pattes supérieures (15) et inférieures (16) des dispositifs de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (12), dans les fentes supérieures (17) et inférieures (18) respectivement, de façon à ce que les indicateurs de format (14) pointent à la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral à l'aide de leur vis (13).

Pour le côté avant, vérifier la taille du papier en se référant aux positions auxquelles les pattes supérieures (15) sont insérées dans les fentes supérieures (17).

Positions des fentes supérieures (17): Avant (A4), milieu (Lettre), arrière (B5)

Positions des fentes supérieures (17) sur le côté arrière: Avant (B5), milieu (Lettre), arrière (A4)

5. Déplacer les curseurs avant et arrière (11), (deux à chaque endroit), vers l'extérieur jusqu'à ce qu'ils entrent en contact avec les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral (12).

4. Inserte las lengüetas superiores (15) y las lengüetas inferiores (16) de los reguladores de tamaño laterales frontales y traseros (12) en las ranuras superiores (17) y las ranuras inferiores (18) respectivamente de modo que los indicadores de tamaño (14) apunten al tamaño de papel a ser usado. Asegure los reguladores de tamaño laterales usando el tornillo (13) para cada uno.

Para el lado frontal, verifique el tamaño de papel consultando las posiciones donde las lengüetas superiores (15) están insertadas en las ranuras superiores (17)

Posiciones de ranura superior (17): Adelante (A4), medio (Carta), atrás (B5)

Posiciones de ranura superior (17) en el lado trasero: Adelante (B5), medio (Carta), atrás (A4)

5. Mueva los graduadores frontales y traseros (11) (dos en cada punto) hacia fuera hasta que hagan contacto con los reguladores de tamaño laterales (12).

4. Führen Sie die oberen Laschen (15) und die unteren Laschen (16) der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller (12) jeweils in die oberen Schlitze (17) und unteren Schlitze (18), so daß die Größenanzeiger (14) auf die zu benutzende Papiergröße zeigen. Sichern Sie die Quergrößen-Einsteller mit jeweils einer Schraube (13).

Für die Vorderseite das Papierformat anhand der Positionen prüfen, wo die oberen Laschen (15) in die oberen Schlitze (17) eingeführt sind.

Positionen der oberen Schlitze (17): Vorne (A4), Mitte (Letter), Hinten (B5)

Positionen der oberen Schlitze (17) auf der Rückseite: Vorne (B5), Mitte (Letter), Hinten (A4)

5. Bewegen Sie die vorderen und hinteren Schieber (11) (zwei an jedem Punkt) nach außen, bis sie mit den Quergrößen-Einstellern (12) in Kontakt kommen.

4. Inserire le linguette superiori (15) e le linguette inferiori (16) dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (12) nelle scanalature superiori (17) e nelle scanalature inferiori (18) rispettivamente, in modo tale che gli indicatori della misura (14) puntino alla dimensione della carta da utilizzare. Fissare i regolatori della misura laterale utilizzando la vite (13) per ciascuno di essi.

Per il lato anteriore, controllare il formato carta facendo riferimento alle posizioni dove le linguette superiori (15) sono inserite nelle scanalature superiori (17).

Le posizioni delle scanalature superiori (17): Anteriore (A4), centrale (lettera), posteriore (B5)

Posizioni delle scanalature superiori sul lato posteriore: Anteriore (B5), centrale (Lettera), posteriore (A4)

5. Spostare verso l'esterno gli scivoli anteriori e posteriori (11) (due in ciascun punto) fino a quando non vengano a contatto con i regolatori della misura laterale (12).

4. 将前后横向尺寸板 (14) 的上卡爪 (15)、下卡爪 (16) 分别插入上槽 (17) 和下槽 (18), 再用 1 个螺丝 (13) 固定, 让尺寸指示爪 (14) 表示所使用的复印纸尺寸。

前侧是在上卡爪 (15) 插入上槽 (17) 的位置上确认纸张尺寸。

上槽 (17) 的位置: 前面 (A4)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (B5)

后面的上槽 (17) 的位置: 前面 (B5)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (A4)

5. 向外移动前后各 2 张滑板 (11), 直到碰到横向尺寸板 (12) 为止。

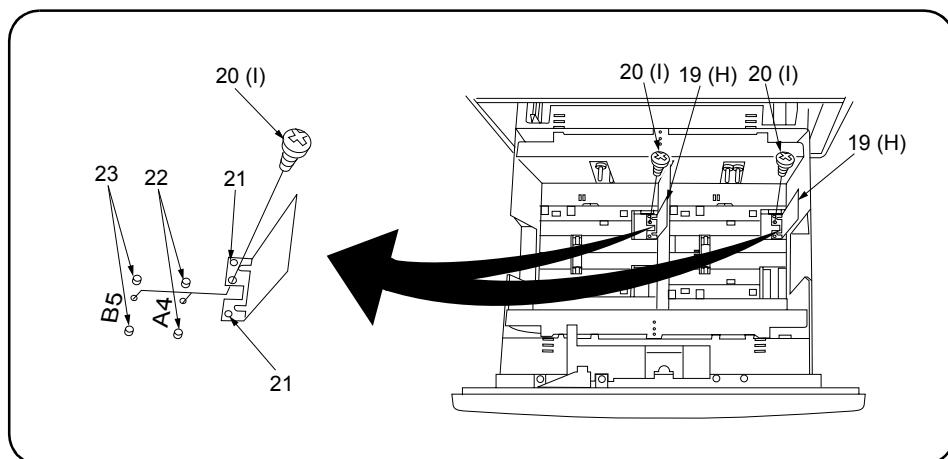
4. サイズ指示爪 (14) が使用する用紙サイズを示すように、前後の横幅サイズ板 (12) の上爪 (15)、下爪 (16) を上溝 (17)、下溝 (18) に差し込み、ビス (13) 1 本で固定する。

前側は、上爪 (15) を上溝 (17) の差し込む位置で用紙サイズを確認する。

上溝 (17) の位置: 手前 (A4)、中央 (Letter)、奥 (B5)

後側の上溝 (17) の位置: 手前 (B5)、中央 (Letter)、奥 (A4)

5. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (11) を、横幅サイズ板 (12) に当たるまで外側にずらす。



6. Remove the screw (20) from each of the left and right longitudinal size adjusters (19). (metric specifications only)
7. Align the pin holes (21) in the left and right longitudinal size adjusters (19) with the A4 pins (22) or B5 pins (23) according to the size of paper to be used. Secure the adjusters using the screw (20) for each.  
For inch specifications, align the pin holes (21) in the left and right longitudinal size adjusters (H) with the A4 pins (22) or B5 pins (23) according to the size of paper to be used. Secure the adjusters using the round cross-head tapping screw M3 × 8 (I) for each.

8. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main switch on.
9. Run maintenance item 208 and set the paper size for the paper feeder (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Retirer la vis (20) de chaque dispositif de réglage du format longitudinal gauche et droit (19). (spécifications métriques seulement)
7. Aligner les trous de broches (21) des dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal gauche et droit (19), avec les broches A4 (22) ou B5 (23), selon la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage à l'aide de leur vis (20).  
Pour les spécifications en pouces, aligner les trous de broches (21) des dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal gauche et droit (H) sur les broches A4 (22) ou B5 (23) selon la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage à l'aide de leur vis de connexion à tête cruciforme ronde M3 × 8 (I).

8. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
9. Exécuter l'élément d'entretien 208 et régler la taille du papier pour le bureau papier (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Quite el tornillo (20) de cada regulador de tamaño longitudinal de la izquierda y de la derecha (19). (sólo especificaciones métricas)
7. Alinee los huecos de las clavijas (21) de los reguladores de tamaño longitudinales de la izquierda y de la derecha (19) con las clavijas A4 (22) o clavijas B5 (23) de acuerdo al tamaño del papel a utilizarse. Asegure los reguladores usando el tornillo (20) para cada uno.  
Para las especificaciones de pulgadas, alinee los huecos de las clavijas (21) en los reguladores de tamaño longitudinal de la izquierda y de la derecha (H) con las clavijas A4 (22) o clavijas B5 (23) de acuerdo al tamaño de papel a utilizarse. Asegure los reguladores usando el tornillo de roscado de cabeza en cruz M3 × 8 (I) para cada uno.

8. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
9. Haga el ítem de mantenimiento 208 y configure el tamaño de papel para el alimentador de papel (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (20) von jedem der linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einsteller (19). (nur metrische Spezifikationen)
7. Richten Sie die Stiftlöcher (21) in den linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einstellern (19) mit den A4-Stiften (22) oder B5-Stiften (23) aus, abhängig von der benutzten Papiergröße. Sichern Sie die Einsteller mit jeweils einer Schraube (20).  
Richten Sie die Stiftlöcher (21) im linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einsteller (H) für Zollspezifikationen auf die A4-Stifte (22) oder B5-Stifte (23) aus, abhängig von der zu verwendenden Papiergröße. Sichern Sie die Einsteller mit jeweils einer Kreuzschlitz- Rundkopf-Schneidschraube M3 × 8 (I).

8. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
9. Führen Sie Wartungspunkt 208 aus und stellen Sie die Papiergröße für den Papiereinzug (B5/A4/Letter) ein.

6. Rimuovere la vite (20) da ciascuno dei regolatori della misura longitudinale sinistro e destro (19). (solo specifiche metriche)
7. Allineare i fori dei perni (21) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale sinistro e destro (19) con i perni A4 (22) o con i perni B5 (23) a seconda della misura della carta da utilizzare. Fissare i regolatori utilizzando la vite (20) per ciascuno di essi.  
Per le specifiche in pollici, allineare i fori dei perni (21) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale sinistro e destro (H) con i perni di A4 (22) o B5 (23) a seconda del formato della carta che si deve usare. Fissare i regolatori usando una vite autofilettante circolare a croce M3 × 8 (I) per ciascuno.

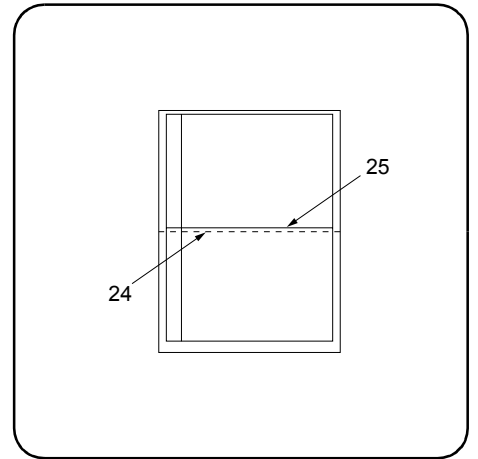
8. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
9. Eseguire l'opzione di manutenzione 208 ed impostare la dimensione della carta della relativa unità di alimentazione (B5/A4/Letter).

6. 拆除各 1 个螺丝 (20) 后, 再拆下左右两侧的纵向尺寸板 (19)。(仅适用于厘米尺寸的产品)
7. 按复印纸的尺寸, 将左右两侧的纵向尺寸板 (19) 的插销孔 (21) 对准 A4 插销 (22) 或 B5 插销 (23) 插好, 再用 1 个螺丝 (20) 固定。  
英寸尺寸的产品按复印纸的尺寸, 将左右两侧的纵向尺寸板 (H) 的插销孔 (21) 对准 A4 插销 (22) 或 B5 插销 (23) 插好, 再用 1 个十字槽盘头自攻螺丝 M3 × 8 (I) 固定。

8. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中, 打开主电源开关。
9. 择维修模式 “208” 设定供纸工作台所使用的复印纸尺寸 (B5/A4/Letter)。

6. 各ビス (20) 1 本を外し、左右の縦幅サイズ板 (19) を取り外す。(センチ仕様のみ)
7. 用紙サイズに応じて、左右の縦幅サイズ板 (19) のピン穴 (21) を A4 ピン (22) または B5 ピン (23) に合わせて取り付け、ビス (20) 1 本で固定する。  
インチ仕様では、用紙サイズに応じて、左右の縦幅サイズ板 (H) のピン穴 (21) を A4 ピン (22) または B5 ピン (23) に合わせて取り付け、ビス + ナベ M3 × 8 タッピング (I) 1 本で固定する。

8. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
9. メンテナンスモード “208” でペーパーフィーダにセットする用紙のサイズ (B5 / A4 / Letter) を設定する。



### Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main switch on.
2. Run maintenance item 993. Select "VTC PG1" and output a test pattern.  
For full-color machines, run maintenance item 402 and output the test pattern.
3. If the center of the paper (24) and that of the test pattern output (25) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.  
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

### Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
2. Exécuter le point de maintenance 993. Sélectionner "VTC PG1" et produire une mire.  
Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, exécuter le point de maintenance 402 et produire la mire.
3. Si le centre du papier (24) et celui de la sortie de mire (25) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.  
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

### Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
2. Ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 993. Seleccione "VTC PG1" y saque un patrón de prueba.  
Para máquinas a todo color, ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 402 y haga que salga un patrón de prueba.
3. Si el centro del papel (24) y aquél de la salida del patrón de prueba (25) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.  
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

### Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Lassen Sie Wartungspunkt 993 laufen. Wählen Sie "VTC PG1" und drucken Sie ein Testmuster.  
Nur für Vollfarbmaschinen den Wartungspunkt 402 ausführen und das Testmuster ausgeben.
3. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (24) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (25) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.  
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

### Controllare la linea centrale

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Eseguire la voce manutenzione 993. Selezionare "VTC PG1" e stampare un modello di prova.  
Solo per le macchine a colore, eseguire la voce manutenzione 402 e stampare un modello di prova.
3. Se il centro della carta (24) e quello del modello di prova (25) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

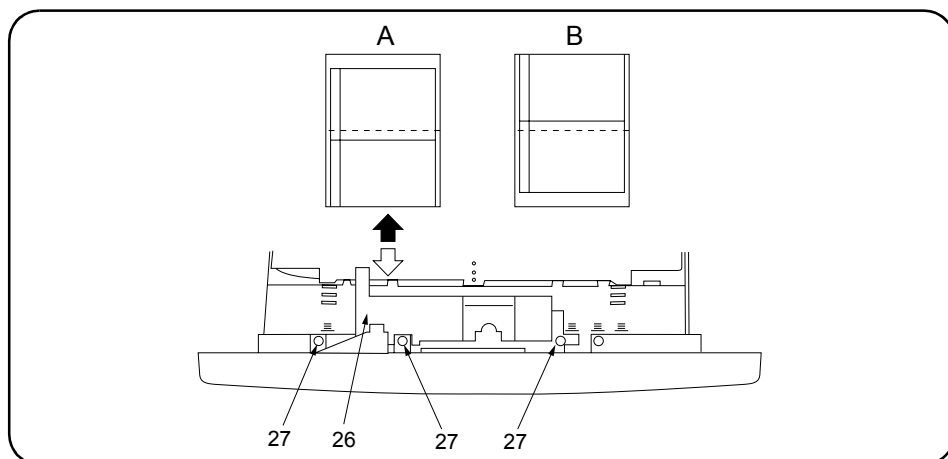
### [ 中心線の確認 ]

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 执行维修模式“993”而选择“VTC PG1”以进行测试图案的输出。  
全彩色机执行维修模式“402”，以进行测试图案的输出。
3. 如果复印纸的中心位置 (24) 与测试图案的中心位置 (25) 为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。  
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

### [ センターライン確認 ]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. メンテナンスモード“993”で“VTC PG1”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。  
フルカラー機は、メンテナンスモード“402”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。
3. 用紙のセンター (24) とテストパターンのセンター (25) が基準値外の時は、次の調整をおこなう。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下





#### Adjusting the center line

4. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (27) securing the adjuster (26).

#### A and B: test pattern output examples

5. If the test pattern output looks like A, move the adjuster (26) in the direction of the black arrow (←) and retighten the three screws (27).  
If the test pattern output looks like B, move the adjuster (26) in the direction of the white arrow (→) and retighten the three screws (27).

6. Output a test pattern again.

7. Repeat steps 4 to 6 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.

<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

#### Réglage de la ligne médiane

4. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi et desserrer les trois vis (27) fixant le dispositif de réglage (26).

#### A et B: exemples de sortie de mieres

5. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (26) dans la direction de la flèche noire (←) et resserrer les trois vis (27).  
Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (26) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (→) et resserrer les trois vis (27).

6. Reproduire une nouvelle mire.

7. Répéter les étapes 4 à 6 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

#### Ajuste de la línea central

4. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (27) que aseguran el regulador (26).

#### A y B: ejemplos de salidas de patrones de prueba

5. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, mueva el regulador (26) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (←) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (27).  
Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecido a B, mueva el regulador (26) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (→) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (27).

6. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.

7. Repita los pasos 4 a 6 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

#### Einstellen der Mittellinie

4. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade des Papiereinzugs heraus und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (27), die den Anpasser (26) halten.

#### A und B: Beispiele von Testmusterangaben

5. Wenn die Testmusterangabe wie A aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (26) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (←) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (27) wieder fest.  
Wenn die Testmusterangabe wie B aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (26) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (→) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (27) wieder fest.

6. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 6, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.

<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

#### Regolazione della linea centrale

4. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentazione della carta ed allentare le tre viti (27) assicurando il regolatore (26).

#### A e B: esempi di stampa del modello di prova

5. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, spostare il regolatore (26) nella direzione della freccia nera (←) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (27).  
Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, spostare il regolatore (26) nella direzione della freccia bianca (→) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (27).

6. Stampare nuovamente un modello di prova.

7. Ripetere i passi da 4 a 6 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

#### 中心线的调整

4. 拉出供纸工作台的纸匣，再松开调整板 (26) 上的 3 个螺丝 (27)。

#### A, B 测试图案

5. 测试图案为 A 时，按箭头 (←) 方向移动调整板 (26)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (27)。  
测试图案为 B 时，按箭头 (→) 方向移动调整板 (26)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (27)。

6. 再次进行测试图案的输出。

7. 反复操作步骤 4 至 6，直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。  
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

#### センターライン調整

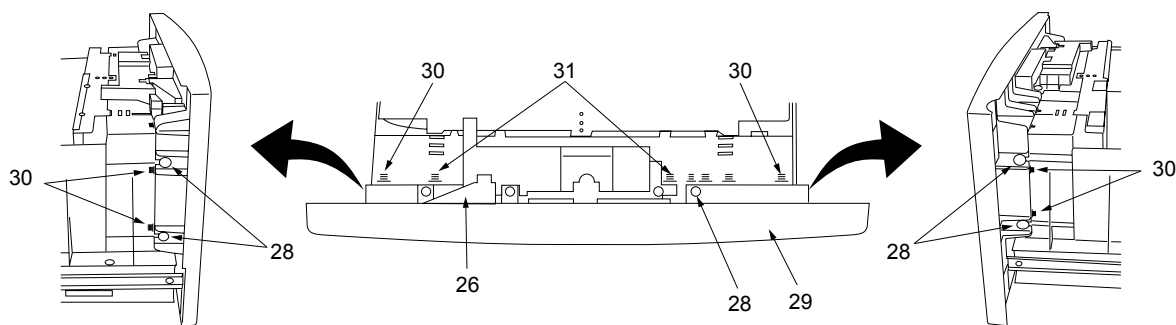
4. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出し、調整板 (26) のビス (27) 3 本を緩める。

#### A, B: テストパターン

5. A 画像の場合、矢印 (←) の向きに調整板 (26) を動かし、ビス (27) 3 本を締め付ける。  
B 画像の場合、矢印 (→) の向きに調整板 (26) を動かし、ビス (27) 3 本を締め付ける。

6. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。

7. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 4 ～ 6 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下



### Adjusting the front cover position

#### Note:

If the position of the adjuster is changed, adjust the front cover position.

If the front cover position is not proper, the cassette may not be fixed with the magnet or the gap between the front cover and the paper feeder body may be opened.

8. Loosen the five screws (28).

9. Move the position of the front cover (29) by the amount of divisions of the level that corresponds to the movement of the adjuster (26) (amount of movement of the level (31)) using the level (30).

10. Retighten the five screws (28).

### Réglage de la position du couvercle avant

#### Remarque:

Si la position du dispositif de réglage est changée, régler la position du couvercle avant.

Si la position du couvercle avant est incorrecte, le tiroir risquera de ne pas être fixé par l'aimant, ou un écart risquera de s'ouvrir entre le couvercle avant et le corps du bureau papier.

8. Desserrer les cinq vis (28).

9. Déplacer la position du couvercle avant (29) de la quantité de divisions du niveau correspondant au mouvement du dispositif de réglage (26) (quantité de mouvement du niveau (31)) en utilisant le niveau (30).

10. Resserrer les cinq vis (28).

### Ajuste de la posición de la tapa frontal

#### Nota:

Si cambia la posición del regulador, ajuste la posición de la tapa frontal.

Si la posición de la tapa frontal no es la adecuada, el casete puede no fijarse con la imagen o la separación entre la tapa frontal y el cuerpo del alimentador de papel puede abrirse.

8. Suelte los cinco tornillos (28).

9. Mueva la posición de la tapa frontal (29) en la cantidad de divisiones del nivel que corresponde al movimiento del regulador (26) (cantidad de movimiento del nivel (31)) utilizando el nivel (30).

10. Vuelva a apretar los cinco tornillos (28).

### Einstellen der Position der Frontabdeckung

#### Hinweis:

Falls die Position des Einstellers geändert wird, muss die Position der Frontabdeckung geändert werden.

Falls die Position der Frontabdeckung nicht stimmt, wird die Papierlade eventuell nicht mit dem Magneten gesichert, oder der Spalt zwischen der Frontabdeckung und dem Papiereinzug kann sich öffnen.

8. Lösen Sie die fünf Schrauben (28).

9. Die Position der Frontabdeckung (29) mithilfe der Ebene (30) um den Teilungsbetrag der Ebene verschieben, welcher der Bewegung des Anpassers (26) entspricht (Bewegungsbetrag der Ebene (31)).

10. Ziehen Sie die fünf Schrauben (28) wieder fest.

### Regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore

#### Nota

Se la posizione del regolatore viene cambiata, regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore.

Se la posizione del pannello anteriore non è corretta, non sarà possibile fissare il cassetto con il magnete o potrebbe aprirsi uno spazio tra il pannello anteriore e il corpo dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

8. Allentare le cinque viti (28).

9. Muovere la posizione del pannello anteriore (29) di tante posizioni del livello quanto è necessario per farlo corrispondere al movimento del regolatore (26) (movimento del livello (31)) utilizzando il livello (30).

10. Serrare nuovamente le cinque viti (28).

### 前盖板位置的调整

#### 注意

如果调整板的位置变更时，必须进行前盖板位置的调整。

如果前盖板的位置调整不一致时，供纸盒就不能在磁铁处停住，并会在前盖板和供纸工作台主机之间出现间隙。

8. 松开5个螺丝(28)。

9. 用刻度(30)移动前面盖板(29)的位置。但是，只限调整板(26)移动的刻度量(刻度(31)的移动值)。

10. 紧固5个螺丝(28)。

### 前カバーの位置調整

#### 注意

調整板の位置を変更した場合は、前カバーの位置調整をおこなう。

前カバーの位置が正しくないと、カセットがマグネットで止まらなくなったり、前カバーとペーパーフィーダ本体との間に隙間が開いたりする。

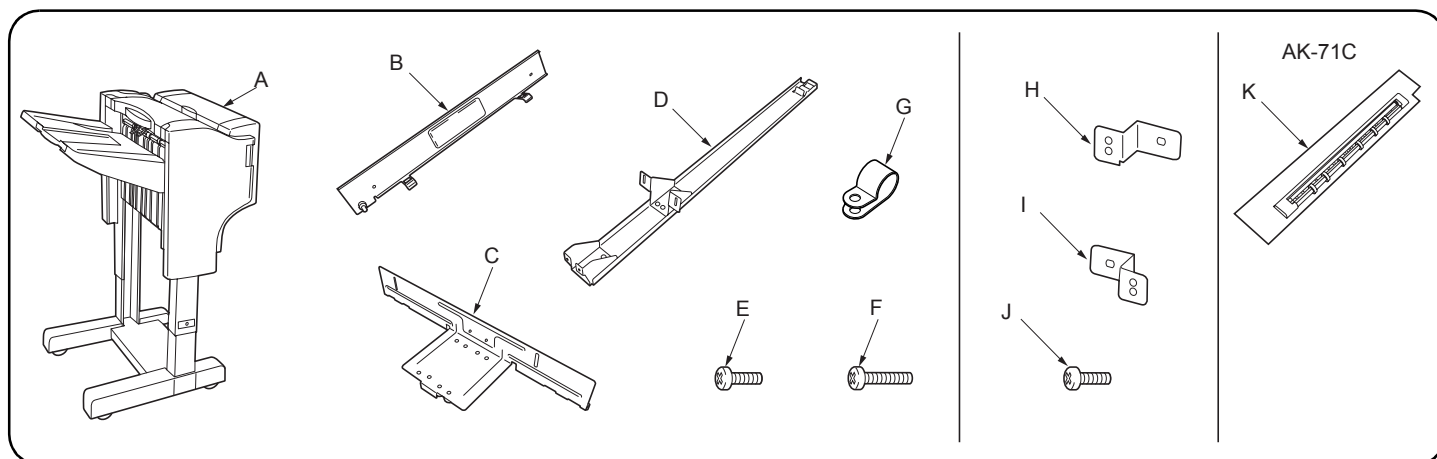
8. ビス(28)5本を緩める。

9. 調整板(26)を移動させた目盛り(目盛り(31)の移動値)だけ、前カバー(29)の位置を、目盛り(30)を使って移動させる。

10. ビス(28)5本を締め付ける。

# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT FINISHER

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.  
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)  
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.  
P/N: 305H180180



## English

### Supplied parts

A Document finisher .....	1
B Latch catch .....	1
C Rail retainer .....	1
D Guide rail .....	1

E Binding screw M4 × 6 .....	4
F Binding screw M4 × 10 .....	4
G Clamp (Not used for full-color machines) .....	1
H Fixing plate F .....	1
I Fixing plate R .....	1
J S Tite screw M4 × 8 .....	4
K Curl eliminator (for monochrome machines AK-71C) .....	1

For installing the document finisher to a full-color machine, parts (H), (I), and (J) above supplied with the job separator are needed. For full-color machines, two pieces of (F) are not used. For monochrome machines, part (K) is needed separately. For full-color machines, part (K) is not needed.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Retoucheur de document .....	1
B Pontet du loquet .....	1
C Élément de rétention du rail .....	1
D Glissière .....	1

E Vis de raccordement M4 × 6 .....	4
F Vis de raccordement M4 × 10 .....	4
G Bride (Non utilisé pour les machines entièrement en couleurs) .....	1
H Plaque de fixation avant .....	1
I Plaque de fixation arrière .....	1
J Vis S Tite M4 × 8 .....	4
K Élément d'élimination des boucles (pour les machines monochromes AK-71C) .....	1

Pour installer le retoucheur de document sur une machine entièrement en couleurs, il faut utiliser les pièces (H), (I), et (J) ci-dessus fournies avec le séparateur de travaux. Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, deux pièces de (F) ne sont pas utilisées. Sur les machines monochromes, il faut utiliser la pièce (K) séparément. Pour les machines entièrement en couleurs, la pièce (K) n'est pas nécessaire.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Finalizador de documentos .....	1
B Cerrojo .....	1
C Retén del carril .....	1
D Carril guía .....	1

E Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 6 .....	4
F Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 10 .....	4
G Abrazadera (No utilizado para máquinas a todo color) .....	1
H Placa de fijación F .....	1
I Placa de fijación T .....	1
J Tornillo S Tite M4 × 8 .....	4
K Eliminador de enrollado (para máquinas monocromáticas AK-71C) .....	1

Para instalar el finalizador de documentos en una máquina a todo color, son necesarias las piezas (H), (I) y (J) anteriores entregadas con el separador de trabajos. Para las máquinas a todo color, no se utilizan dos piezas de (F). Para las máquinas monocromáticas, es necesario por separado la pieza (K). Para las máquinas a todo color, la pieza (K) no es necesaria.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Dokument Finishers .....	1
B Riegelschloßbausatz .....	1
C Schienenhalterungseinheit .....	1
D Führungsschieneneneinheit .....	1

E Verbundschraube M4 × 6 .....	4
F Verbundschraube M4 × 10 .....	4
G Klemme (Nicht für Vollfarbenmaschinen verwendet) .....	1
H Fixierplatte F .....	1
I Fixierplatte R .....	1
J S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 8 .....	4
K Glättungseinrichtung (für Monochrommaschinen AK-71C) .....	1

Für die Installation des Dokument Finishers an einer Vollfarbenmaschine werden die mit dem Jobtrenner gelieferten obigen Teile (H), (I) und (J) benötigt. Für Vollfarbenmaschinen werden zwei Teile von (F) nicht benutzt. Für Monochrommaschinen wird Teil (K) getrennt benötigt. Für Vollfarbenmaschinen wird Teil (K) nicht benötigt.

## Italiano

### Parti fornite

A Finitrice di documenti .....	1
B Dispositivo di arresto .....	1
C Fermo della guida .....	1
D Guida della rotaia .....	1

E Vite di serraggio M4 × 6 .....	4
F Vite di serraggio M4 × 10 .....	4
G Morsetto (Non utilizzato per le macchine a colori) .....	1
H Piastra di fissaggio F .....	1
I Piastra di fissaggio R .....	1
J Vite S Tite M4 × 8 .....	4
K Eliminatore di pieghe (per le macchine in bianco e nero AK-71C) .....	1

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su una macchina a colori, sono necessarie le suddette parti (H), (I) e (J) fornite in dotazioni con il separatore dei lavori. Per le macchine a colori, due pezzi di (F) non sono utilizzati. Per le macchine in bianco e nero, separatamente è necessaria la parte (K). Per le macchine a colori, la parte (K) non è necessaria.

## 简体中文

### 附属品

(A)装订器 .....	1
(B)挂钩支架 .....	1
(C)轨道座 .....	1
(D)导向轨道 .....	1

(E) M4 × 6 固结螺钉 .....	4
(F) M4 × 10 固结螺钉 .....	4
(G) 夹紧件 (全彩色机上不使用) .....	1
(H) 固定板 F .....	1
(I) 固定板 R .....	1
(J) 紧固螺钉 M4 × 8S .....	4
(K) 防卷曲部件 (黑白机用 AK-71C) .....	1

全彩色机上安装装订器时，需要安装作业分离器上附属的上述(H)、(I)、(J)部件。全彩色机时(F)剩下2个连接螺钉。黑白机时另外需要安装(K)部件。全彩色机时，不需要安装(K)部件。

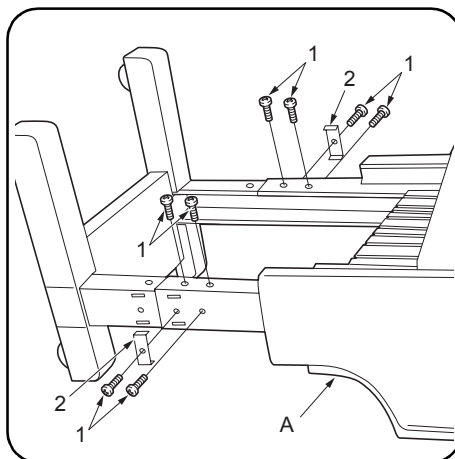
## 日本語

### 付属品

A ドキュメントフィニッシャ .....	1
B ラッチ受け板 .....	1
C レール取付板 .....	1
D ガイドレール .....	1

E ビス M4 × 6 バインド .....	4
F ビス M4 × 10 バインド .....	4
G クランプ (フルカラー機では使用しません) .....	1
H 固定板 F .....	1
I 固定板 R .....	1
J ビス M4 × 8S タイト .....	4
K デカーラー (モノクロ機用 AK-71C) .....	1

フルカラー機にドキュメントフィニッシャを取り付ける際は、ジョブセパレータに付属する上記 (H)、(I)、(J) が必要です。フルカラー機では、(F) が 2 本余ります。モノクロ機では、(K) が別途必要です。フルカラー機では、(K) は不要です。

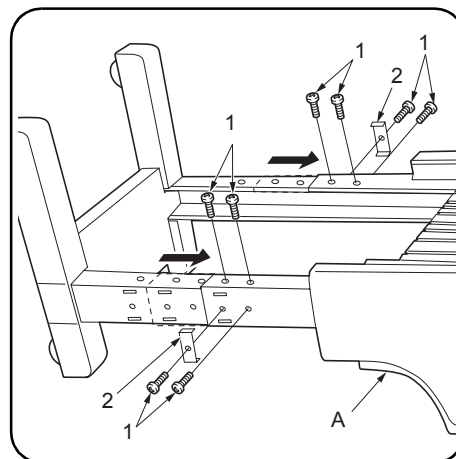


When installing the document finisher to a full-color machine, install the job separator in advance.

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the document finisher.

**[Steps 1 to 4 below are only for full-color machines.]**

1. Place the document finisher (A) sideways, remove the eight screws (1), and remove the two pieces of fittings (2).



2. To align the document finisher with the paper outlet of the MFP, slide the legs of the document finisher (A) to the uppermost positions indicated in the illustration, attach the two pieces of fittings (2) that have been removed in step 1, and secure them using the eight screws (1).

Pour installer le retoucheur de document sur une machine entièrement en couleurs, installer le séparateur de travaux préalablement. Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du retoucheur de document.

**[Les étapes 1 à 4 ci-dessous concernent les machines entièrement en couleurs seulement.]**

1. Placer le retoucheur de documents (A) sur le côté, retirer les huit vis (1), et retirer les deux pièces de fixation (2).

2. Pour aligner le retoucheur de document sur la sortie de papier du MFP, faire glisser les pieds du retoucheur de document (A) jusqu'aux positions les plus hautes indiquées sur l'illustration, fixer les deux pièces de fixation (2) qui avaient été retirées auparavant à l'étape 1, et les fixer à l'aide des huit vis (1).

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una máquina a todo color, instale el separador de trabajos por adelantado. Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación del MFP de la toma de corriente de la pared, antes de empezar a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

**[Los pasos 1 a 4 a continuación son solo para máquinas a todo color.]**

1. Apoye el finalizador de documentos (A) sobre un lado, saque los ocho tornillos (1) y saque dos piezas de herrajes (2).

2. Para alinear el finalizador de documentos con la salida de papel del MFP, deslice las patas del finalizador de documentos (A) a las posiciones superiores indicadas en la figura, instale las dos piezas de herrajes (2) desmontadas en el paso 1 y asegúrelos con los ocho tornillos (1).

Wenn Sie den Dokument Finisher an einer Vollfarbmaschine installieren wollen, muss der Jobtrenner vorher installiert werden. Schalten Sie den MFP-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den MFP-Netzstecker von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Dokument Finishers beginnen.

**[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 4 gelten nur für Vollfarbmaschinen.]**

1. Den Dokument Finisher (A) auf die Seite legen, die acht Schrauben (1) entfernen, und die zwei Befestigungsteile (2) abnehmen.

2. Um den Dokument Finisher auf den Papierausslass des MFP auszurichten, die Beine des Dokument Finishers (A) auf die in der Abbildung gezeigte oberste Position schieben, dann die zwei in Schritt 1 entfernten Befestigungsteile (2) anbringen und mit den acht Schrauben (1) befestigen.

Quando si installa la finitrice di documenti su una macchina a colori, installare prima il separatore dei lavori. Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione della finitrice di documenti, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e disinserire la spina dell'MFP dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

**[I seguenti passi da 1 a 4 sono solo per le macchine a colori.]**

1. Collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) lateralmente, rimuovere le otto viti (1) e rimuovere i due pezzi di raccordo (2).

2. Per allineare la finitrice di documenti con l'uscita della carta dell'MFP, fare scivolare i piedini della finitrice di documenti (A) sulle posizioni più in alto indicate nel disegno, montare i due pezzi di raccordo (2) che sono stati rimossi nel passo 1 e fissarli utilizzando le otto viti (1).

在全彩色机上安装装订器时，应先安装作业分离器。当安装装订器时，必须事先将MFP主机的总电源关掉并将MFP主机的电源插头从插座上拔掉。

**[步骤1~4仅限于全彩色机]**

1. 将装订器(A)横向放置，卸下8个螺钉(1)，然后，取下2个固定件(2)。

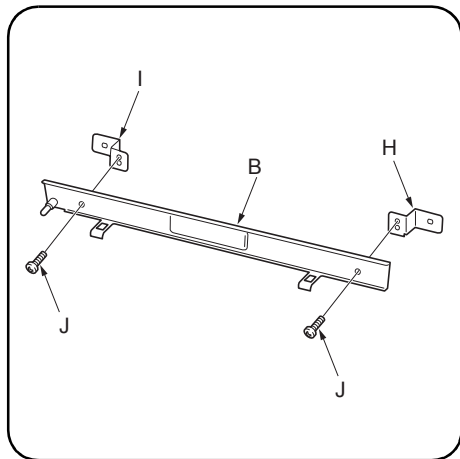
2. 为了对准主机排纸口，先将装订器(A)的机脚滑动到最上面的位置(如图所示的位置)，然后，安装在步骤1取下的2个固定件(2)，并用8个螺钉(1)加以固定。

フルカラー機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際には、先にジョブセパレータを装着すること。ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際は、必ずMFP本体のメインスイッチをOFFにし、MFP本体の電源プラグを外して作業をおこなうこと。

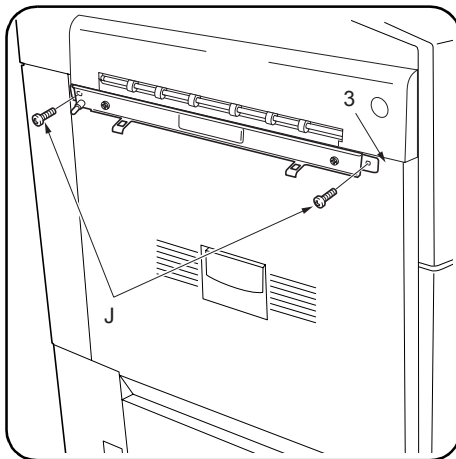
**[手順1～4はフルカラー機のみ]**

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)を横向きにおき、ビス(1)8本を外し、固定金具(2)2個を取り外す。

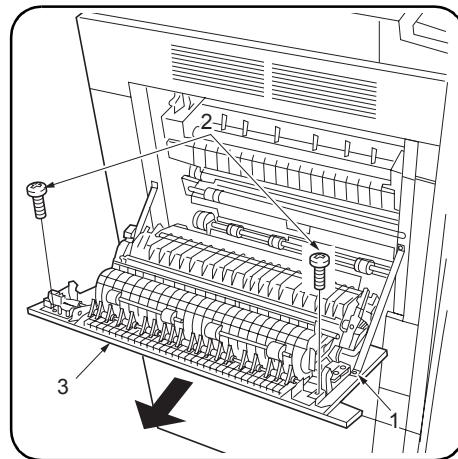
2. 本体用紙排出口に合わせる為、ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)の脚を最上の位置(図の位置)までスライドさせ、手順1で取り外した固定金具(2)2個を取り付け、ビス(1)8本で固定する。



3. Fit the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) to the latch catch (B) using an S Tite screw M4 x 8 (J) for each.



4. Fit the latch catch that has been assembled in step 3 to the left cover (3) using the two S Tite screws M4 x 8 (J). (Proceed to step 7.)



**[Steps 1 to 6 below are only for monochrome machines.]**

1. Open the eject cover (1) of the MFP.
2. Remove the two screws (2) securing the feedshift guide assembly (3) and then the assembly.

3. Fixer la plaque de fixation avant (H) et la plaque de fixation arrière (I) sur le pontet du loquet (B) à l'aide d'une vis S Tite M4 x 8 (J) pour chaque plaque.

4. Fixer le pontet du loquet qui avait été monté auparavant à l'étape 3 sur le couvercle gauche (3) à l'aide des deux vis S Tite M4 x 8 (J). (Passer à l'étape 7.)

**[Les étapes 1 à 6 ci-dessous concernent les machines monochromes seulement.]**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (1) du MFP.
2. Retirer les deux vis (2) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (3) puis retirer l'assemblage.

3. Coloque la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación T (I) en el cerrojo (B) utilizando un tornillo S Tite M4 x 8 (J) para cada una.

4. Coloque el cerrojo armado en el paso 3 en la cubierta izquierda (3) usando los dos tornillos S Tite M4 x 8 (J). (Vaya al paso 7.)

**[Los pasos 1 a 6 a continuación son sólo para máquinas monocromáticas.]**

1. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (1) del MFP.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (2) que aseguran el ensamble guía de la unidad de cambio de alimentación de papel (3) y luego el ensamble.

3. Die Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) mit je einer S-Tite-Schraube M4 x 8 (J) an der Riegelschloßbausatz (B) anbringen.

4. Die in Schritt 3 zusammenmontierte Riegelschloßbausatz mit den zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 x 8 (J) an der linken Abdeckung (3) anbringen. (Zu Schritt 7 übergehen.)

**[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 6 gelten nur für Monochrommaschinen.]**

1. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1) des MFP.
2. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (2), die den Zuführungswechsel-Bausatz (3) befestigen und dann den Bausatz.

3. Montare la piastra di fissaggio F (H) e la piastra di fissaggio R (I) al dispositivo di arresto (B) utilizzando una vite S Tite M4 x 8 (J) per ciascuno.

4. Adattare il dispositivo di arresto che è stato montato nel passo 3 sul pannello a sinistra (3) utilizzando le due viti S Tite M4 x 8 (J). (Proseguire al passo 7.)

**[I seguenti passi da 1 a 6 sono solo per le macchine in bianco e nero.]**

1. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (1) dell'MFP.
2. Rimuovere le due viti (2) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (3) e quindi il gruppo.

3. 在挂钩承支架(B)上, 分别用1个紧固螺钉 M4 x 8S(J)固定固定板F(H)和固定板R(I)。

4. 将在步骤3组装的挂钩承支架用2个紧固螺钉 M4 x 8S(J)安装在左盖板(3)上。(操作步骤7)

**[步骤1~6仅限于黑白机]**

1. 将MFP主机的出纸盖板(1)打开。
2. 将两个小螺钉(2)摘下, 并将分支导向组件(3)卸下。

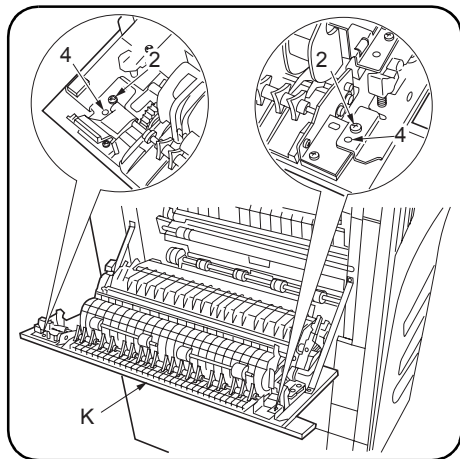
3. ラッチ受け板 (B) に、固定板 F (H) と固定板 R (I) をビス M4 x 8S タイト (J) 各 1 本で固定する。

4. 手順 3 で組み立てたラッチ受け板をビス M4 x 8S タイト (J) 2 本で左カバー (3) に取り付ける。(手順 7 に進む)

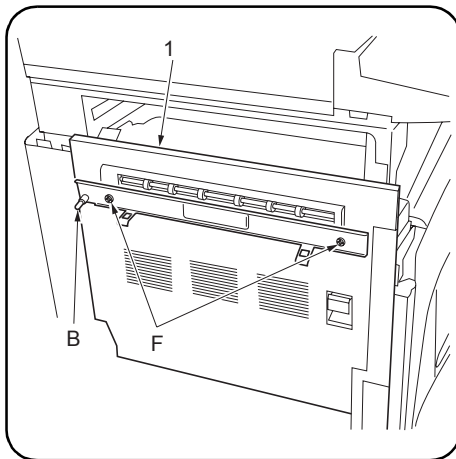
**[ 手順 1 ~ 6 はモノクロ機のみ ]**

1. MFP 本体の排出カバー (1) を開く。
2. ビス (2) 2 本を外し、分岐ガイド組立 (3) を取り外す。

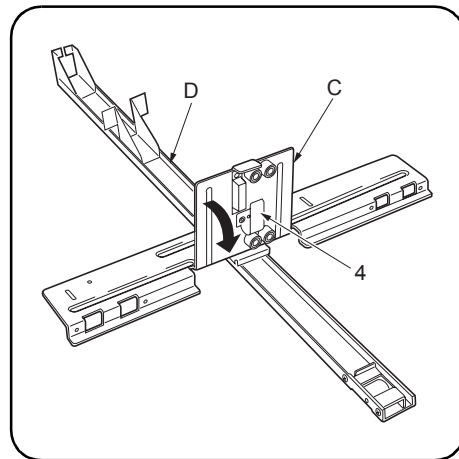




3. Fit the curl eliminator (K) to the eject cover (1) such that the projections (4) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (K).
4. Secure the curl eliminator (K) using the two screws (2) removed in step 2.



5. Close the eject cover (1).
6. Fit the latch catch (B) to the eject cover (1) using two M4 x 10 binding screws (F).



7. Align the rail retainer (C) with the groove of the guide rail (D) and attach the rail retainer (C) to the guide rail (D). Make sure that the plate spring (4) of the rail retainer (C) fits into the groove and the edge of the guide rail (D) fits between the pulleys on the reverse side of the rail retainer (C).

3. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (K) au couvercle d'éjection (1) de telle façon que les projections (4) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de cet élément (K).
4. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (K) à l'aide des deux vis (2) retirées à l'étape 2.

5. Fermer le couvercle d'éjection (1).
6. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) au couvercle d'éjection (1) à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 x 10 (F).

7. Aligner l'élément de rétention du rail (C) sur le sillon de la glissière (D) et le fixer à l'élément de rétention du rail (C) à la glissière (D). Veiller à ce que le ressort de plaque (4) de l'élément de rétention du rail (C) s'adapte au sillon et que l'extrémité de la glissière (D) puisse passer entre les poulies sur le côté opposé de l'élément de rétention du rail (C).

3. Coloque el eliminador de enrollamiento (K) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) de modo que las proyecciones (4) de la cubierta encajen en los dos extremos del eliminador de enrollamiento (K).
4. Asegure el eliminador de enrollamiento (K) usando los dos tornillos (2) que quitó en el paso 2.

5. Cierre la cubierta de expulsión (1).
6. Coloque el cerrojo (B) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 10 (F).

7. Alinee el retén del carril (C) con la acanaladura del carril guía (D) y anexe el retén del carril (C) al carril guía (D). Asegúrese de que el resorte de la placa (4) del retén del carril (C) encaje en la acanaladura y que el borde del carril guía (D) encaje entre las poleas del lado inverso del retén del carril (C).

3. Bringen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (K) so an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an, daß die Vorsprünge (4) auf der Abdeckung in die zwei Enden des Wellenverhinderers (K) passen.
4. Befestigen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (K) mittels der in Schritt 2 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2).

5. Schliessen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1).
6. Bringen Sie den Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mittels der zwei M4 x 10 Verbundschrauben (F) an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an.

7. Richten Sie die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) mit der Rille der Führungsschieneinheit (D) aus, und bringen Sie die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) an die Führungsschieneinheit (D) an. Stellen Sie sicher, daß die Tellerfeder (4) der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) in die Rille paßt und die Kante der Führungsschieneinheit (D) zwischen den Seilzügen auf der Rückseite der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) sitzt.

3. Inserire l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) in modo tale che le proiezioni (4) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K).
4. Fissare l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K) utilizzando le due viti (2) rimosse al punto 2.

5. Chiudere la copertura dell'uscita carta (1).
6. Inserire il dispositivo di arresto (B) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) utilizzando due viti di serraggio M4 x 10 (F).

7. Allineare il fermo della guida (C) con la scanalatura della guida della rotaia (D) e fissare il fermo della guida (C) alla guida della rotaia (D). Assicurarsi che la molla della piastra (4) del fermo della guida (C) sia collocata nella scanalatura e che il bordo della guida della rotaia (D) sia inserito tra le pulegge sul lato opposto del fermo della guida (C).

3. 将带凸肩压板的凸部(4)嵌入防卷曲部件(K)两端后, 将防卷曲部件(K)安装于出纸盖板(1)上。
4. 用依步骤2摘下的两个小螺钉(2)来固定防卷曲部件(K)。

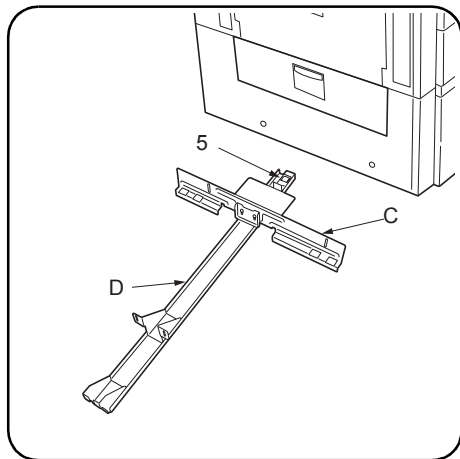
5. 将出纸盖板(1)关上。
6. 用两个M4 x 10 固结螺钉(F)将挂钩承支架(B)安装于出纸盖板(1)上。

7. 将轨道座(C)沿着导向轨道(D)的凹槽嵌入。此时, 应将片簧部(4)插入于凹槽中并将导向轨道(D)的一端插入于轨道座(C)背面的滚轮与滚轮之间。

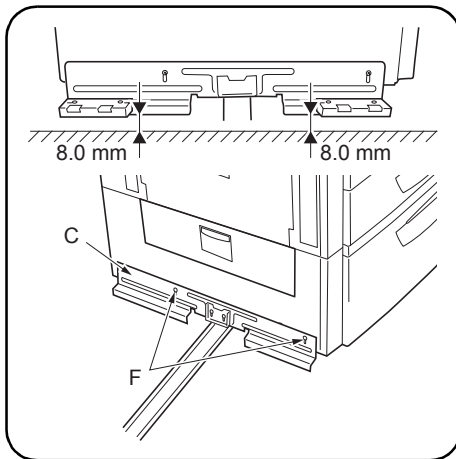
3. デカーラー(K)の両端に半押し(4)がはまる位置で、デカーラー(K)を排出カバー(1)に取り付ける。
4. 手順2で外したビス(2)2本でデカーラー(K)を固定する。

5. 排出カバー(1)を閉じる。
6. ラッチ受け板(B)をビス M4 x 10 バインド(F)2本で排出カバー(1)に取り付ける。

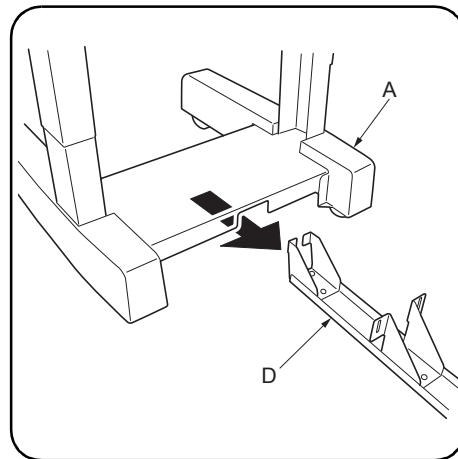
7. レール取付板(C)をガイドレール(D)の溝に合わせてはめ込む。板バネ部(4)が溝の中に入り、レール取付板(C)裏側のコロとコロの間にガイドレール(D)の端が入るようにする。



**8.** Orient the guide rail (D) such that its pulley (5) is positioned toward the MFP.



**9.** Secure the rail retainer (C) to the MFP using two M4 × 10 binding screws (F) such that the front and the rear gaps between the floor and the rail retainer (C) are approximately 8.0 mm.



**10.** Insert the guide rail (D) into the bottom of the document finisher (A).

**8.** Orienter la glissière (D) de manière que sa poulie (5) soit orientée vers le MFP.

**9.** Fixer l'élément de rétention du rail (C) au MFP à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 10 (F) de manière que les écarts avant et arrière entre le sol et l'élément de rétention du rail (C) soient d'environ 8.0 mm.

**10.** Insérer la glissière (D) en bas du retoucheur de document (A),

**8.** Oriente el carril guía (D) de modo que su polea (5) se encuentre ubicada hacia el MFP.

**9.** Asegure el retén del carril (C) a el MFP usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 × 10 (F) de modo que los espacios frontal y trasero entre el piso y el retén del carril (C) sean de aproximadamente 8.0 mm.

**10.** Inserte el carril de guía (D) en la parte inferior del finalizador de documentos (A).

**8.** Richten Sie die Führungsschiene (D) so aus, daß die Riemenscheibe (5) zum MFP ausgerichtet ist.

**9.** Bringen Sie die Schienenhalterung (C) am MFP mit zwei M4 × 10 Verbundschrauben (F) so an, daß die vorderen und hinteren Abstände zwischen Boden und Schienenhalterung (C) etwa 8.0 mm betragen.

**10.** Die Führungsschiene (D) in das Unterteil des Dokument Finishers (A) einschieben.

**8.** Orientare la guida della rotaia (D) in modo da posizionare la puleggia (5) in direzione dell'MFP.

**9.** Assicurare il fermo della guida (C) all'MFP utilizzando le due viti di serraggio M4 × 10 (F), in modo che la distanza anteriore e posteriore tra il pavimento ed il fermo della guida (C) sia di circa 8.0 mm.

**10.** Inserire la guida della rotaia (D) nella parte inferiore della finitrice di documenti (A).

**8.** 使导向轨道 (D) 的滚轮部 (5) 朝向 MFP 主机。

**9.** 用两个 M4 × 10 固结螺钉 (F) 将轨道座 (C) 固定于 MFP 主机上。此时，轨道座 (C) 与地板之间的距离应约为 8.0 毫米。

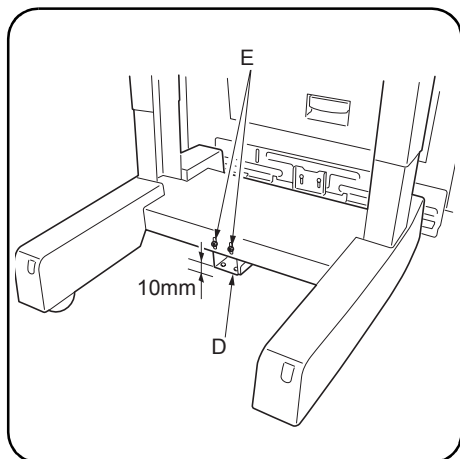
**10.** 将导向轨道 (D) 插入装订器 (A) 的底部。

**8.** ガイドレール (D) のコロ部 (5) を MFP 本体側に向ける。

**9.** レール取付板 (C) と床面の前後隙間が約 8.0mm になるように、レール取付板 (C) を MFP 本体にビス M4 × 10 バインド (F) 2 本で固定する。

**10.** ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の底部にガイドレール (D) を挿入する。



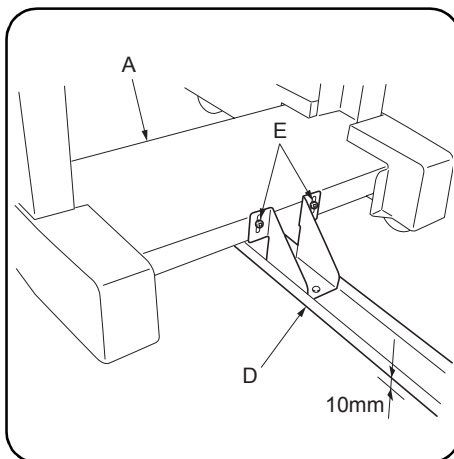


#### Fitting and adjusting the guide rail

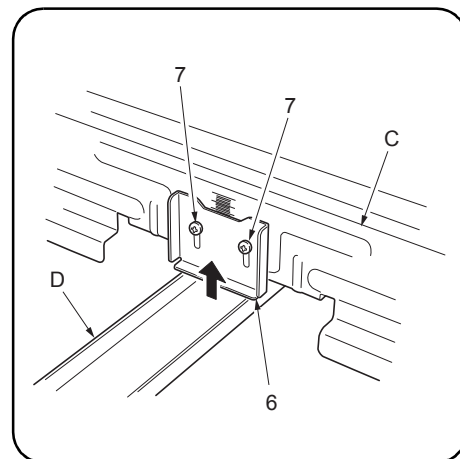
11. While pressing the guide rail (D) to the document finisher (A) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm, secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws (E).

##### Note

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move when the document finisher is separated.



12. Separate the document finisher (A) from the MFP and secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws (E) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm.



13. Loosen temporarily the two screws (7) that secure the sheet metal (6) of the rail mounting plate (C) on the MFP, raise the sheet metal (6) by two divisions of the scale from the guide rail (D), and tighten the two screws (7).

##### Note

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move smoothly or the document finisher may fall down.

#### Fixation et réglage de la glissière

11. Tout en pressant la glissière (D) contre le retoucheur de document (A) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm, la fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 6 (E).

##### Remarque

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer lorsque le retoucheur de document sera séparé.

12. Séparer le retoucheur de document (A) du MFP, puis le fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 6 (E) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm.

13. Desserrer provisoirement les deux vis (7) qui fixent la feuille métallique (6) de la plaque de montage du rail (C) sur le MFP, élever la feuille métallique (6) de deux crans sur l'échelle de la glissière (D), puis resserrer les deux vis (7).

##### Remarque

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer suffisamment ou le retoucheur de document risquera de tomber.

#### Fijación y ajuste del carril de guía

11. Mientras presiona el carril de guía (D) en el finalizador de documentos (A) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm, asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 × 6 (E).

##### Nota

Si el carril de guía no está bien ajustado, el carril de guía puede no moverse cuando se separa el finalizador de documentos.

12. Separe el finalizador de documentos (A) del MFP y asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 × 6 (E) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm.

13. Afloje temporalmente los dos tornillos (7) que aseguran la hoja de metal (6) de la placa de montaje de carril (C) en el MFP, levante la hoja de metal (6) con dos divisiones de la escala del carril de guía (D) y apriete los dos tornillos (7).

##### Nota

Si no se ajusta correctamente el carril de guía, el carril de guía puede no moverse suavemente o el finalizador de documentos puede caer.

#### Anbringen und Einstellen der Führungsschieneinheit

11. Die Führungsschiene (D) gegen den Dokument Finisher (A) gedrückt halten, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt, und mit zwei M4 × 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern.

##### Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich beim Trennen des Dokument Finishers eventuell nicht.

12. Den Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP trennen und mit zwei M4 × 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt.

13. Die zwei Schrauben (7), die das Blech (6) der Schienenmontageplatte (C) am MFP sichern, vorübergehend lösen, das Blech (6) um zwei Teilstreife der Skala von der Führungsschiene (D) aus anheben, und die zwei Schrauben (7) wieder anziehen.

##### Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich eventuell nicht reibungslos, oder der Dokument Finisher kann herunterfallen.

#### Montaggio e regolazione della guida della rotaia

11. Mentre si tiene premuta la guida della rotaia (D) alla finitrice di documenti (A) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm, fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 × 6 (E).

##### Nota

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi quando il separatore la finitrice di documenti verrà staccato.

12. Separare la finitrice di documenti (A) dall'MFP per fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 × 6 (E) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm.

13. Allentare temporaneamente le due viti (7) che fissano il foglio metallico (6) della piastra di montaggio della rotaia (C) dell'MFP, sollevare il foglio di metallo (6) di due posizioni sulla guida della rotaia (D) e serrare le due viti (7).

##### Nota

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi scorrevolmente oppure la finitrice di documenti potrebbe cadere.

#### 导向轨道的安装调整

11. 调整导向轨道(D)与地板之间的间距为10毫米左右,将导向轨道(D)插入装订器(A)到底,用两个M4×6固结螺钉(E)进行固定。

##### 注意

如果不能正确调整导向轨道的话,在分离装订器时,可能会发生导向轨道不能移动的情况。

12. 将装订器(A)分离MFP主机,调整导向轨道(D)与地板之间的间距为10毫米左右后,用两支M4×6固结螺钉(E)进行固定。

13. 松动固定在MFP主机侧轨道座(C)的金属板(6)上的两支固结螺钉(7),在金属板(6)碰及导向轨道(D)的状态下,抬升到第2个刻度的位置,然后用两支螺钉(7)固定。

##### 注意

如果不能正确调整的话,导向轨道则不能顺利移动,并会发生装订器倒置的情况。

#### ガイドレールの取付調整

11. ガイドレール (D) と床面の隙間が約 10mm になるように、ガイドレール (D) をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) に突き当てながら、ビス M4 × 6 バインド (E) 2 本で固定する。

##### 注意

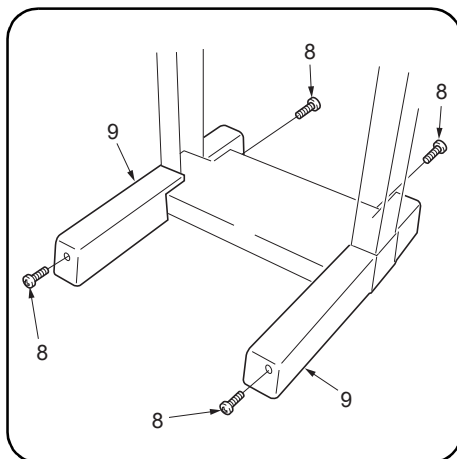
正しく調整しないと、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り離し時、ガイドレールが動かない恐れがある。

12. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) を MFP 本体より切り離し、ガイドレール (D) と床面の隙間が約 10mm になるように、ビス M4 × 6 バインド (E) 2 本で固定する。

13. MFP 本体側のレール取付板 (C) の板金 (6) を固定しているビス (7) 2 本をいったん緩め、板金 (6) をガイドレール (D) に当てた状態から 2 目盛り上の位置にあけて、ビス (7) 2 本を固定する。

##### 注意

正しく調整しないと、ガイドレールがスムーズに動かない。又ドキュメントフィニッシャーが倒れる恐れがある。



Slide the document finisher to engage it with the latch catch of the MFP. If the document finisher and the MFP do not engage securely, perform the following document finisher height adjustment.

#### Adjusting the height of the document finisher

1. Remove the front and rear covers (9) from the document finisher (A) by removing two screws (8) each.

Faire glisser le retoucheur de document pour l'engager dans le pontet du loquet du MFP. Si le retoucheur de document et le MFP ne s'engagent pas correctement, effectuer le réglage de hauteur suivant sur le retoucheur de document.

#### Réglage de la hauteur du retoucheur de document

1. Retirer les couvercles avant et arrière (9) du retoucheur de document (A) en retirant deux vis (8) sur chacun des couvercles.

Deslice el finalizador de documentos hasta que enganche con el cerrojo del MFP. Si el finalizador de documentos y el MFP no se acoplan de manera segura, realice el siguiente ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos.

#### Ajuste de altura del finalizador de documentos

1. Desmonte las tapas delantera y trasera (9) del finalizador de documentos (A) sacando los dos tornillos (8) cada uno.

Den Dokument Finisher verschieben, um ihn mit dem Riegelschloßbausatz des MFP in Eingriff zu bringen. Wenn der Dokument Finisher und der MFP nicht richtig ineinander eingreifen, führen Sie die folgende Höheneinstellung für den Dokument Finisher aus.

#### Einstellen der Dokument Finisherhöhe

1. Die Vorder- und Rückabdeckung (9) nach Entfernen von je zwei Schrauben (8) vom Dokument Finisher (A) abnehmen.

Fare scivolare la finitrice di documenti per farla innestare con il dispositivo di arresto dell'MFP. Qualora la finitrice di documenti e l'MFP non si innestino saldamente, osservare la seguente procedura di regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

#### Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti

1. Rimuovere i pannelli anteriore e posteriore (9) dalla finitrice di documenti (A) togliendo 2 viti (8) per ciascuno.

滑动装订器并连接于MFP主机的挂钩承支架上。如无法吻合，请按下述步骤调整装订器的高度。

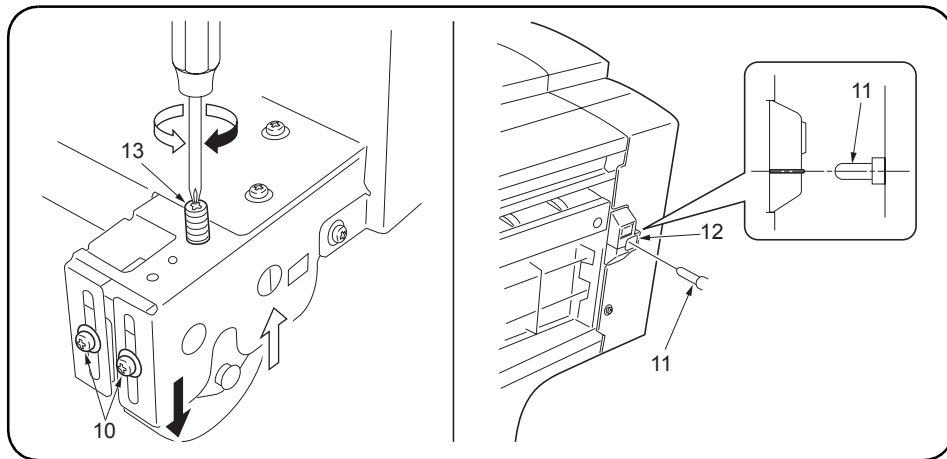
#### [调整装订器的高度]

- 1 卸下各两支小螺钉(8)，并取下装订器(A)的前后盖板(9)。

ドキュメントフィニッシャをスライドさせてMFP本体のラッチ受け板に連結させる。確実に連結しない場合は、次のドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整をおこなう。

#### [ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整]

1. ビス (8) 各 2 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前後カバー (9) を取り外す。



2. Loosen the two screws (10) on the rear right caster of the document finisher (A). Adjust the height of the rear right caster by turning its adjustment bolt (13) using a cross-headed screwdriver so that the axis of the pin (11) of the latch catch is aligned with the marking of the slot (12) of the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP (viewed from the machine front).

**Note:** Turning the adjustment bolt (13) clockwise lifts the document finisher (A), while turning it counterclockwise lowers the document finisher (A).

2. Desserrer les deux vis (10) de la roulette arrière droite du retoucheur de document (A). Régler la hauteur de la roulette arrière droite en tournant son boulon de réglage (13) à l'aide d'un tournevis cruciforme de manière que l'axe de la broche (11) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur la marque de la fente (12) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP (vue à partir de l'avant de la machine).

**Remarque:** Si l'on tourne le boulon de réglage (13) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'élève; si on le tourne dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'abaisse.

2. Afloje los dos tornillos (10) en la rueda trasera del finalizador de documentos (A). Ajuste la altura de la rueda trasera derecha girando su perno de ajuste (13) utilizando un destornillador de punta en cruz para que el eje del pasador (11) en el pestillo esté alineado con la marca de la ranura (12) del finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) esté unido a el MFP (vista del frente de la máquina).

**Nota:** Al girar el perno de ajuste (13) en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos (A) y al girar contra las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos (A).

2. Die zwei Schrauben (10) an der hinteren rechten Laufrolle des Dokument Finishers (A) lösen. Die Höhe der hinteren rechten Laufrolle durch Drehen ihrer Einstellschraube (13) mit einem Kreuzschlitzschraubenzieher so einstellen, dass die Achse des Stifts (11) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Markierung des Schlitzes (12) des Dokument Finishers (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP angesetzt ist (von der Gerätevorderseite gesehen).

**Hinweis:** Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube (13) im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Dokument Finisher (A) angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.

2. Allentare le due viti (10) sulla ruota orientabile posteriore destra della finitrice di documenti (A). Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile posteriore destra ruotandone il suo bullone di regolazione (13) a mezzo di un cacciavite a croce, in modo che l'asse del perno (11) del dispositivo di arresto risulti allineato ai contrassegni del foro (12) della finitrice di documenti (A) una volta che la finitrice stessa (A) viene unita all'MFP (vista dal lato frontale della macchina).

**Nota:** Ruotando il bullone di regolazione (13) in senso orario si solleva la finitrice di documenti (A), mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finitrice di documenti (A).

2. 将装订器(A)后右侧滚轮的两支固定螺钉(10)拧松。

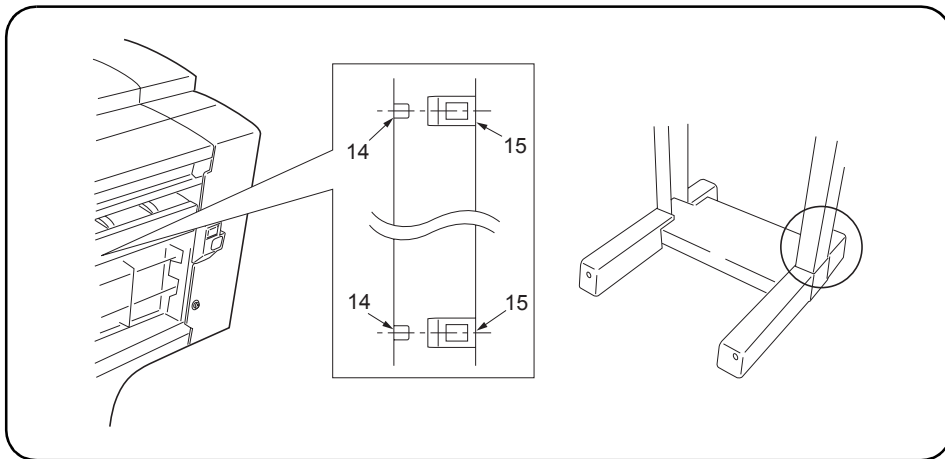
将装订器(A)与MFP主机连接, 为了使(从前面看时)挂钩承支架销(11)的中心与装订器(A)的长孔(12)的刻度相对准, 用十字螺丝刀旋转调节用螺钉(13), 对后右侧滚轮的高度进行调整。

将调节用螺钉(13)往顺时针方向旋转时, 可调高装订器(A), 而往逆时针方向旋转螺钉时, 则可调低高度。

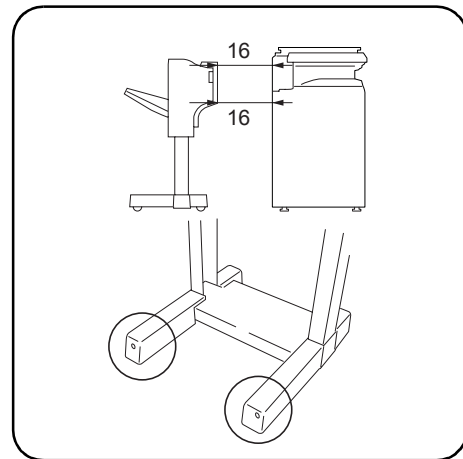
2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) 右後のキャスターの固定ビス (10) 2本を緩める。

ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)をMFP本体に連結し、前から見た時に、ラッチ受け板のピン(11)の中心が、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の長穴(12)の刻印に合うように、プラスドライバーを用いて調整用ボルト(13)を回し、右後のキャスターの高さ調整をおこなう。

調整用ボルト(13)を時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)が上がり、反時計方向に回すと下がる。



3. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 2 so that each center of the hooking portions (15) of the latch catch is aligned with the center of the two hooks (14) on the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP (viewed from above).



4. Adjust the height of the left two casters in the same manner as in step 2 so that the right and left gaps (16) between the document finisher (A) and the MFP are the same at the top and bottom when the document finisher (A) is detached from the MFP.

3. Régler la hauteur de la roulette avant droite en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que chacun des centres des parties d'accrochage (15) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur le centre des deux crochets (14) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP (vue à partir du haut).

4. Régler la hauteur des deux roulettes gauches en procédant en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que les écarts droit et gauche (16) entre le retoucheur de document (A) et le MFP soient identiques en haut et en bas lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est détaché du MFP.

3. Ajuste la altura de la rueda delantera derecha de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que cada centro de las partes de enganche (15) de cada pestillo esté alineado con el centro de los dos ganchos (14) en el finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está unido a el MFP (vista de arriba).

4. Ajuste la altura de las dos ruedas izquierdas de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que las separaciones derecha e izquierda (16) entre el finalizador de documentos (A) y el MFP son la mismas en las partes superior e inferior del finalizador de documentos (A) está soltado de la copiador o la impresora.

3. Die Höhe der vorderen rechten Laufrolle auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Mitte der Rasten (15) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Mitte der zwei Haken (14) am Dokument Finisher (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP angesetzt ist (von oben gesehen).

4. Die Höhe der beiden linken Laufrollen auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Abstände (16) auf der linken und rechten Seite zwischen dem Dokument Finisher (A) und dem MFP oben und unten gleich groß sind, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP abgenommen wird.

3. Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile anteriore destra allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che ciascun centro delle parti di aggancio (15) del dispositivo di arresto sia allineato al centro dei due ganci (14) della finitrice di documenti (A), una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene unita all'MFP (vista dall'alto).

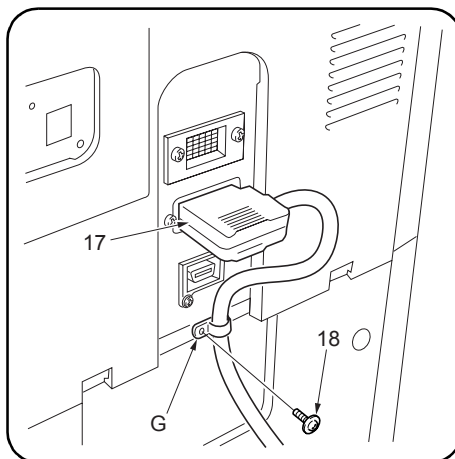
4. Regolare l'altezza delle due ruote orientabili sinistre allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che le distanze superiori e inferiori a destra e a sinistra (16) tra la finitrice di documenti (A) e l'MFP siano le stesse una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene separata dall'MFP.

3. 将装订器(A)与MFP主机连接, 使(从上面看时)装订器(A)的两个挂钩(14)与挂钩承支架的孔(15)中心相对准, 并按与步骤2相同的方法来调整前右侧滚轮的高度。

4. 为了将装订器(A)从MFP主机上卸下时使装订器(A)与MFP主机之间的左右间隔(16)能够上下相同平行, 按与步骤2相同的方法来调整左侧两处滚轮的高度。

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)をMFP本体に連結し、上から見た時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)のフック(14)2ヶ所とラッチ受け板の引っかけ部(15)の中心が合うように、手順2と同様にして右前のキャスターの高さ調整をおこなう。

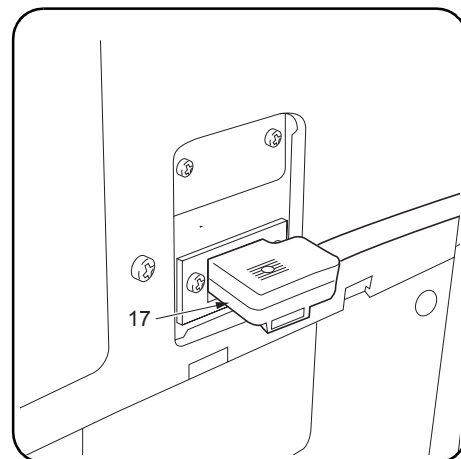
4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)をMFP本体から切り離れた時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)とMFP本体の左右の間隔(16)が上下で等しくなるように、手順2と同様にして左側のキャスター2カ所の高さ調整をおこなう。



5. Reattach the removed parts to their original positions.

#### Connecting the signal cable (monochrome machines only)

1. Connect the signal cable (17) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP, pass the cable through the clamp (G), and secure the clamp by tightening the screw (18) of the MFP.  
The cable length to the clamp (G) must be approximately 100 mm.



#### Connecting the signal cable (full-color machines only)

1. Connect the signal cable (17) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP.

5. Remettez les pièces enlevées à leur position d'origine.

#### Connexion du câble d'interconnexion (machines monochromes seulement)

1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (17) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP, passer le câble par la bride (G), puis fixer la bride en serrant la vis (18) du MFP.  
La longueur du câble jusqu'à la bride (G) doit être d'environ 100 mm.

#### Connexion du câble d'interconnexion (machines entièrement en couleurs seulement)

1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (17) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP.

5. Vuelva a instalar las piezas desmontadas en sus posiciones originales.

#### Conexión del cable de señal (sólo para máquinas monocromáticas)

1. Conecte el cable de señal (17) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP, pase el cable por la abrazadera (G) y asegure la abrazadera apretando el tornillo (18) del MFP.  
La longitud del cable a la abrazadera (G) debe ser de unos 100 mm.

#### Conexión del cable de señal (sólo para máquinas a todo color)

1. Conecte el cable de señal (17) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP.

5. Die entfernten Teile wieder an ihren ursprünglichen Positionen anbringen.

#### Anschließen des Signalkabels (nur Monochrommaschinen)

1. Das Signalkabel (17) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP anschließen, das Kabel durch die Klemme (G) führen, und die Klemme durch Anziehen der Schraube (18) des MFP befestigen.  
Die Kabellänge bis zur Klemme (G) muss ungefähr 100 mm betragen.

#### Anschließen des Signalkabels (nur Vollfarbmaschinen)

1. Das Signalkabel (17) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP anschließen.

5. Rimontare le parti rimosse nelle loro posizioni originali.

#### Connessione del cavo del segnale (solo per macchine in bianco e nero)

1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (17) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP, fare passare il cavo attraverso il morsetto (G) e fissare il morsetto stringendo la vite (18) dell'MFP.  
La lunghezza del cavo al morsetto (G) deve essere di circa 100 mm.

#### Connessione del cavo del segnale (solo per le macchine a colori)

1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (17) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP.

5. 卸下的部品按原样装上。

[连接信号电线：仅限于黑白机]

1. 连接装订器(A)的信号电线(17), 将电线穿过夹紧件(G), 然后, 用螺钉(18)一起紧固。  
到夹紧件(G)处的电线长度约需100mm。

[连接信号电线：仅限于全彩色机]

1. 装订器(A)的信号电线(17)连接在MFP主机上。

5. 取り外した部品を元通りに取り付け。

[信号線の接続: モノクロ機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の信号線(17)を接続し、ケーブルをクランプ(G)に通して、ビス(18)で締結する。  
クランプ(G)までのケーブルの長さは約100mmにすること。

[信号線の接続: フルカラー機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の信号線(17)をMFP本体に接続する。

### Operation check

1. Insert the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the main switch on.
2. Make test copies and check that the document finisher (A) operates correctly.

---

### Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Effectuer des copies d'essai et vérifier si le retoucheur de document (A) fonctionne correctement.

---

### Comprobación operacional

1. Inserte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Haga copias de prueba y verifique que el finalizador de documentos (A) funciona correctamente.

---

### Betriebstest

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Netzsteckdose ein und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter ein.
2. Machen Sie Probekopien, um sicherzustellen, dass der Dokument Finisher (A) einwandfrei funktioniert.

---

### Controllo del funzionamento

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa di rete e quindi premere il pulsante generale di accensione.
2. Eseguire copie di prova e controllare che la finitrice di documenti (A) funzioni correttamente.

---

### [ 确认运作 ]

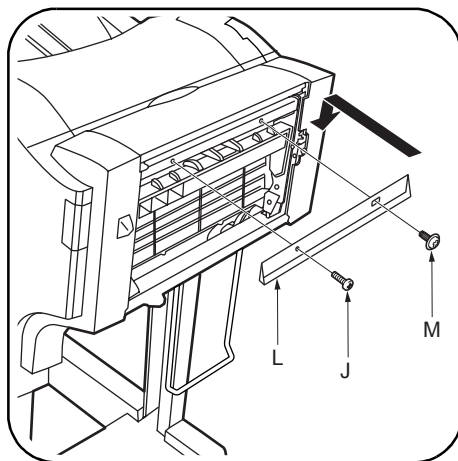
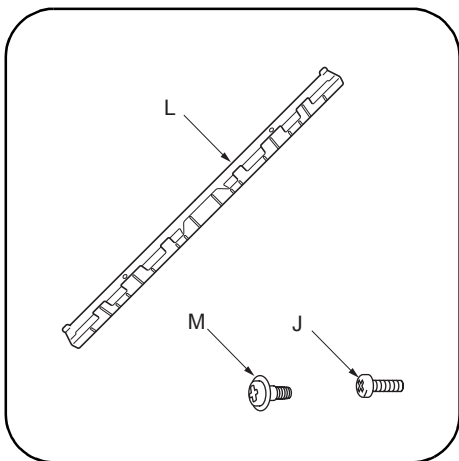
1. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座后，开启总电源。
2. 通过试印来确认装订器(A)的运作是否正常。

---

### [ 動作確認 ]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. テストコピーをおこない、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) が正常に動作することを確認する。





## English Addition and change of supplied parts

The parts supplied with the job separator described on page 1 are changed as below. In accordance with this change, the procedure is added and changed as follows.

### [Addition]

L Guide plate ..... 1  
M Shoulder screw ..... 1

### [Change]

J S Tite screw M4 × 10 ..... 5(4→5)

## Addition and change of procedure for installing finisher (full-color machines only)

### [Addition]

Perform the following operation after step 2 on page 2. Secure the guide plate (L) using the shoulder screw (M) and an S Tite screw M4 × 10 (J).

### [Change]

The screws (J) used in steps 3 and 4 on page 3 are changed to S Tite screws M4 × 10.

## Français Addition et changement apportés aux pièces fournies

Les pièces fournies avec le séparateur de travaux décrites à la page 1 sont changées comme indiqué ci-dessous. Conformément à ces changements, la procédure est ajoutée comme suit.

### [Addition]

L Plaque guide ..... 1  
M Vis d'épaule ..... 1

### [Changement]

J Vis S Tite M4 x 10 ..... 5(4→5)

## Addition et changement apportés à l'installation du finisseur (pour les machines entièrement couleurs seulement)

### [Addition]

Realicez l'opération suivante après l'étape 2 de la page 2. Fixez la plaque guide (L) à l'aide de la vis d'épaule (M) et d'une vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

### [Changement]

Les vis (J) utilisées dans les étapes 3 et 4 de la page 3 sont changées pour des vis S Tite M4 × 10.

## Español Adición y cambio de las partes suministradas

Las partes entregadas con este separador de trabajos descrito en la página 1 se cambian como se indica abajo. De acuerdo con este cambio, se agrega el procedimiento y se cambia como se indica a continuación.

### [Adición]

L Placa de guía ..... 1  
M Tornillo de hombro ..... 1

### [Cambio]

J Tornillo S Tite M4 x 10 ..... 5 (4 → 5)

## Adición y cambio del procedimiento para la instalación del finalizador (sólo en las máquinas a todo color)

### [Adición]

Realice el siguiente procedimiento después del paso 2 en la página 2. Asegure la placa de guía (L) utilizando el tornillo de hombro (M) y un tornillo S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

### [Cambio]

Los tornillos (J) utilizado en los pasos 3 y 4 en la página 3 cambian a tornillo S Tite M4 × 10.

## Deutsch Ergänzung und Änderung von gelieferte Teilen

Die Teile, die im Lieferumfang des auf Seite 1 beschriebenen Jobtrenners enthalten sind, wurden wie folgt geändert. Entsprechend dieser Änderung wurden die folgenden Verfahren ergänzt und geändert.

### [Ergänzung]

L Führungsplatte ..... 1  
M Bundschraube ..... 1

### [Änderung]

J S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10 ..... 5(4→5)

## Ergänzung und Änderung des Verfahrens zur Installation des Finishers (nur Vollfarbenmaschinen)

### [Ergänzung]

Führen Sie den folgenden Vorgang nach Schritt 2 auf Seite 2 durch. Die Führungsplatte (L) mit der Bundschraube (M) und einer S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10 (J) befestigen.

### [Änderung]

Die in den Schritten 3 und 4 auf Seite 3 verwendeten Schrauben (J) werden durch S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 ersetzt.

## Italiano Aggiunta e modifica delle parti fornite

Le parti fornite con il separatore dei lavori descritte a pagina 1 sono state cambiate come si vede qui in basso. In seguito a ciò, sono state eseguite le seguenti modifiche e aggiunte alla procedura.

### [Aggiunta]

L Piastra guida ..... 1  
M Vite a colletto ..... 1

### [Modifica]

J Vite S Tite M4 x 10 ..... 5(4→5)

## Aggiunta e modifica della procedura per installare il finirice (solo per le macchine a colori)

### [Aggiunta]

Esegui la seguente operazione dopo il passo 2 a pagina 2. Fissare la piastra guida (L) utilizzando la vite a colletto (M) e la vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

### [Modifica]

Le viti (J) utilizzate nei passi 3 e 4 a pagina 3 sono state cambiate con le viti S Tite M4 × 10.

## 简体中文 追加和变更附属品

将第 1 页的作业分离器附属品按以下要求进行变更。追加作业和变更按右记内容的要求进行。

### [追加]

L 导板 ..... 1  
M 阶梯螺钉 ..... 1

### [变更]

J 紧固螺钉 M4 × 10S ..... 5(4 → 5)

追加和变更安装订器时的步骤（只限全彩色机）

### [追加]

在第 2 页的步骤 2 后面进行以下作业。用阶梯螺钉 (M) 和紧固螺钉 M4 × 10S (J) 各 1 个固定导板 (L)。

### [变更]

将第 3 页的步骤 3 以及步骤 4 上记载的螺钉 (J) 变更为紧固螺钉 M4 × 10S。

## 日本語 付属品の追加・変更

1 ページのジョブセパレータ付属品を以下のように変更します。これに伴い、右記のように作業追加・変更します。

### [追加]

L ガイド板 ..... 1  
M 段付きビス ..... 1

### [変更]

J ビス M4 × 10S タイト ..... 5(4 → 5)

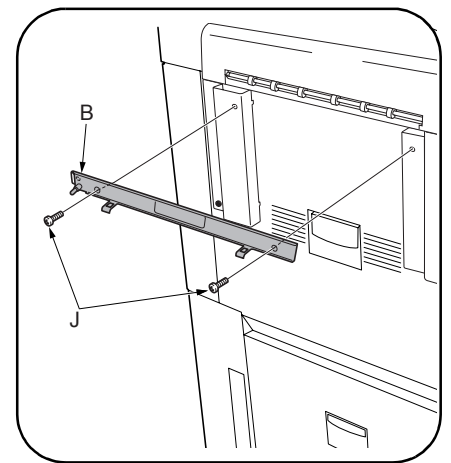
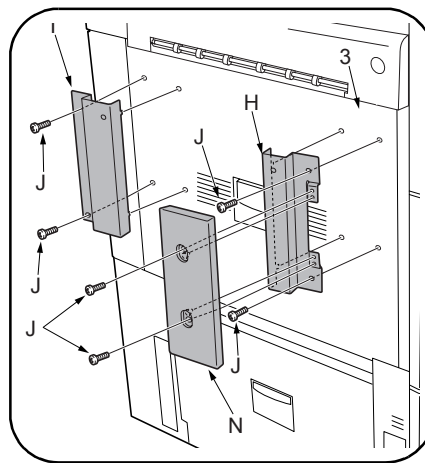
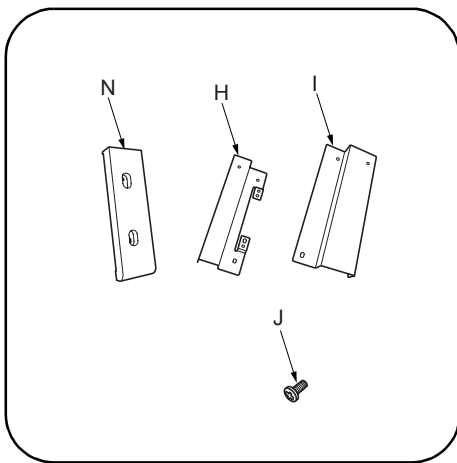
フィニッシャ設置時の手順追加・変更(カラー機のみ)

### [追加]

2 ページ、手順 2 の後に次の作業を行う。ガイド板 (L) を段付きビス (M) とビス M4 × 10S タイト (J) 各 1 本で固定する。

### [変更]

3 ページ、手順 3 および手順 4 に記載されているビス (J) がビス M4 × 10S タイトに変わります。



#### English Modification of Installation Guide for DF-730

The supplied parts with the job separator described on page 1 are modified as shown below:

##### [Addition]

N Cover AT ..... 1

##### [Change]

H Fixing plate F ..... 1

I Fixing plate R ..... 1

J S Tite screw M4 x 10 ..... 9(5→9)

Steps 3 and 4 on page 3 are modified as described below:

3. Fit the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) to the left cover (3) using two S Tite screws M4 x 10 (J) for each and fit the cover AT (N) to the fixing plate F (H) using two S Tite screws M4 x 10 (J).

4. Fit the latch catch (B) to the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) using two S Tite screws M4 x 10 (J).  
(Proceed to step 7.)

#### Français Modifications apportées au guide d'installation du DF-730

Les pièces fournies avec le séparateur de travaux décrit à la page 1 sont modifiées comme montré ci-dessous:

##### [Addition]

N Couvercle AT ..... 1

##### [Changement]

H Plaque de fixation F ..... 1

I Plaque de fixation R ..... 1

J Vis Tite S M4 x 10 ..... 9(5→9)

Les étapes 3 et 4 de la page 3 sont modifiées comme décrit ci-dessous:

3. Fixer la plaque de fixation F (H) et la plaque de fixation R (I) sur le couvercle de gauche (3) à l'aide de deux vis Tite S M4 x 10 (J) chaque et fixer le couvercle AT (N) sur la plaque de fixation F (H) à l'aide de deux vis Tite S M4 x 10 (J).

4. Fixer le cliquet (B) sur la plaque de fixation F (H) et sur la plaque de fixation R (I) à l'aide de deux vis Tite S M4 x 10 (J).  
(Passer à l'étape 7.)

#### Español Modificación de la Guía de Instalación para DF-730

Las partes provistas con el separador de trabajos descritas en la página 1 se modifican tal como se indica abajo:

##### [Adición]

N Cubierta AT ..... 1

##### [Cambio]

H Placa de fijación F (delantera) ..... 1

I Placa de fijación R (trasera) ..... 1

J Tornillo S Tite M4 x 10 ..... 9(5→9)

Los pasos 3 y 4 en la página 3 se modifican tal como se describen abajo:

3. Encaje la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) en la cubierta izquierda (3) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 x 10 (J) para cada una y encaje la cubierta AT (N) en la placa de fijación F (H) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 x 10 (J).

4. Encaje el pestillo (B) en la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) utilizando los dos tornillos S Tite M4 x 10 (J).  
(Vaya al paso 7.)

#### Deutsch Änderung der Installationsanleitung für DF-730

Die Teile, die im Lieferumfang des auf Seite 1 beschriebenen Jobtrenners enthalten sind, wurden wie folgt geändert.

##### [Ergänzung]

N Abdeckung AT ..... 1

##### [Änderung]

H Fixierplatte F ..... 1

I Fixierplatte R ..... 1

J S-Tite-Schraube M4 x 10 ..... 9(5→9)

Die Schritte 3 und 4 auf Seite 3 wurden wie folgt geändert:

3. Die Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) mit je zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 x 10 (J) an der linken Abdeckung (3) anbringen, und die Abdeckung AT (N) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 x 10 (J) an der Fixierplatte F (H) anbringen.

4. Die Verriegelungsklaue (B) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 x 10 (J) an der Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) anbringen.  
(Zu Schritt 7 übergehen.)

#### Italiano Modifica della guida all'installazione di DF-730

Le parti fornite con il separatore descritte a pagina 1 sono cambiate come si vede qui in basso:

##### [Aggiunta]

N Coperchio AT ..... 1

##### [Modifica]

H Piastra di fissaggio F ..... 1

I Piastra di fissaggio R ..... 1

J Vite S Tite M4 x 10 ..... 9(5→9)

I passi 3 e 4 a pagina 3 sono stati modificati nel modo indicato qui in basso:

3. Montare la piastra di fissaggio F (H) e la piastra di fissaggio R (I) sul coperchio sinistro (3) usando due viti S Tite M4 x 10 (J) per ciascuna di esse e montare il coperchio AT (N) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) usando due viti S Tite M4 x 10 (J).

4. Montare il dispositivo di arresto (B) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) e sulla piastra di fissaggio R (I) usando due viti S Tite M4 x 10 (J).  
(Procedere con il passo 7.)

#### 简体中文 DF-730 安装手册的变更

第 1 页的作业分离器附属品变更如下。

##### [补充]

N 盖板 AT ..... 1

##### [变更]

H 固定板 F ..... 1

I 固定板 R ..... 1

J 紧固螺丝 M4 x 10S ..... 9(5→9)

第 3 页的步骤 3、4 变更如下。

3. 将固定板 F (H) 和固定板 R (I) 分别用 2 个紧固螺丝 M4 x 10S (J) 固定在左盖板 (3) 上, 将盖板 AT (N) 用 2 个紧固螺丝 M4 x 10S (J) 固定在固定板 F (H) 上。

4. 将止动托板 (B) 用 2 个紧固螺丝 M4 x 10S (J) 固定在固定板 F (H) 和固定板 R (I) 上。  
(接着操作步骤 7)

#### 日本語 DF-730 設置手順書の変更

1 ページのジョブセパレータ付属品を以下のように変更します。

##### [追加]

N カバーAT ..... 1

##### [変更]

H 固定板 F ..... 1

I 固定板 R ..... 1

J ビス M4 x 10S タイト ..... 9(5→9)

3 ページ、手順 3、4 を次のように変更します。

3. 固定板 F (H) と固定板 R (I) を左カバー (3) にビス M4 x 10S タイト (J) 各 2 本で固定し、カバーAT (N) をビス M4 x 10S タイト (J) 2 本で固定板 F (H) に固定する。

4. ラッチ受け板 (B) をビス M4 x 10S タイト (J) 2 本で固定板 F (H) と固定板 R (I) に固定する。  
(手順 7 に進む)



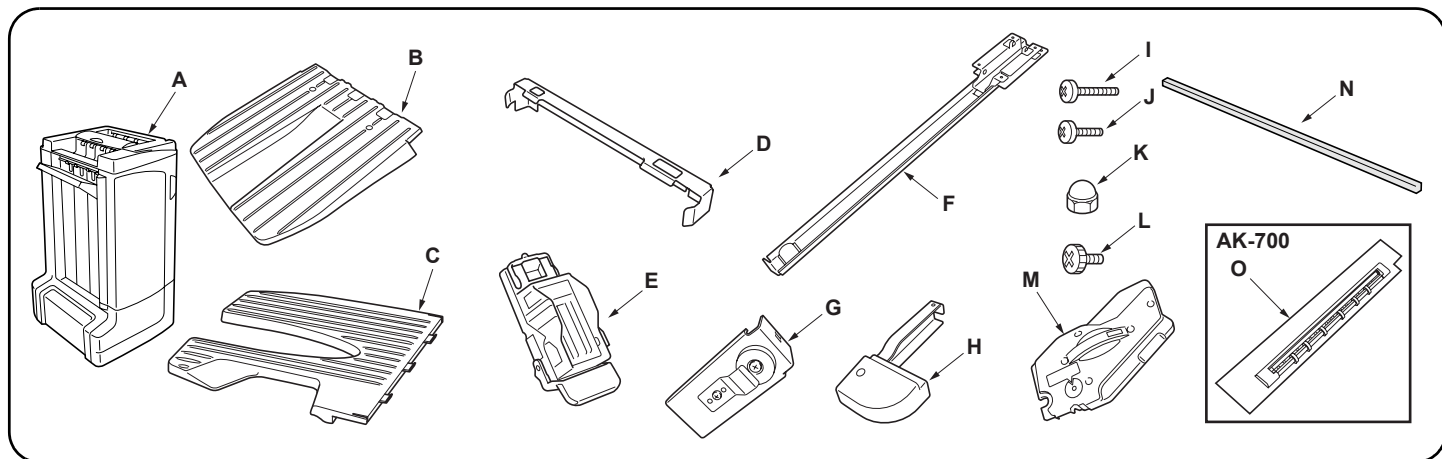
# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER**

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.

Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)

Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.

P/N: 3H327220



## English

### Supplied parts

A Document finisher	1
B Tray A	1
C Tray B	1
D Connecting plate	1
E Staple cartridge	1

F Base slider A	1
G Base slider B	1
H Plate foot R	1
I M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw	9
J M4 × 6 tap Tight S screw	4
K Nut	2
L Pin	2

M Internal tray cover	1
N Sponge	1

For installing the document finisher to a monochrome machine, part (O) above is separately needed.

O Curl eliminator	1
-------------------	---

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Retoucheur de document	1
B Bac A	1
C Bac B	1
D Plaque de connexion	1
E Cartouche d'agrafes	1

F Règle de base A	1
G Règle de base B	1
H Pied de plaque R	1
I Vis S taraudée M4 × 10	9
J Vis S taraudée M4 × 6	4
K Ecrou	2
L Broche	2

M Capot de bac interne	1
N Eponge	1

Pour installer le retoucheur de document sur une machine monochrome, la pièce (O) ci-dessous est requise séparément

O Élément d'élimination des boucles	1
-------------------------------------	---

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Finalizador de documentos	1
B Bandeja A	1
C Bandeja B	1
D Placa de conexión	1
E Cartucho de grapas	1

F Deslizador A	1
G Deslizador B	1
H Pedal R	1
I Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10	9
J Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 6	4
K Tuerca	2
L Pasador	2

M Cubierta de bandeja interna	1
N Esponja	1

Para instalar el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro será necesaria la parte (O) mostrada arriba.

O Eliminador de curvatura del papel	1
-------------------------------------	---

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Dokument-Finisher	1
B Fach A	1
C Fach B	1
D Verbindungsplatte	1
E Heftklammerkassette	1

F Basis-Schieber A	1
G Basis-Schieber B	1
H Plattenfuß R	1
I M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube	9
J M4 × 6 Passstift-Verbundschraube	4
K Mutter	2
L Stift	2

M Innenfach	1
N Schwamm	1

Für den Einbau des Dokument-Finishers auf einer Monochrommaschine ist der obere Teil (O) zusätzlich erforderlich.

O Glättungseinrichtung	1
------------------------	---

## Italiano

### Parti fornite

A Finitrice di documenti	1
B Vassoio A	1
C Vassoio B	1
D Piastra di connessione	1
E Cartuccia pinzatrice	1

F Scivolo di base A	1
G Scivolo di base B	1
H Piedino di sostegno R	1
I Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10	9
J Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 6	4
K Dad	2
L Perno	2

M Pannello del vassoio interno	1
N Spugna	1

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un macchinario in bianco e nero, è separatamente necessaria la parte (O) sopra.

O Eliminatore di arricciature	1
-------------------------------	---

## 简体中文

### 附属部件

A 装订器	1
B 托盘 A	1
C 托盘 B	1
D 连接板	1
E 订书钉盒	1

F 底座滑板 A	1
G 底座滑板 B	1
H 板脚座 R	1
I M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	9
J M4 × 6 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	4
K 螺母	2
L 销	2

M 内部托盘盖板	1
N 海绵	1

黑白机上安装装订器时，另外需要安装上述的部件 (O)。

O 防卷曲部件	1
---------	---

## 日本語

### 付属品

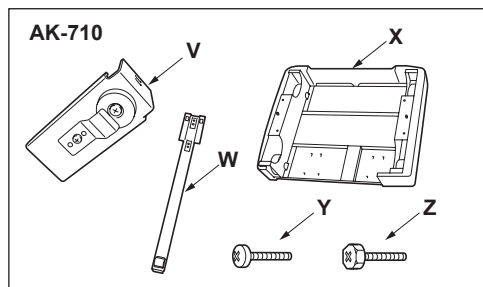
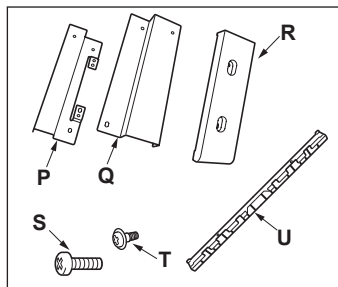
A ドキュメントフィニッシャー	1
B トレイ A	1
C トレイ B	1
D 連結板	1
E ステープルカートリッジ	1

F ベーススライダ A	1
G ベーススライダ B	1
H プレートフット R	1
I ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S	9
J ビス M4 × 6 タップタイト S	4
K ナット	2
L ピン	2

M 内部トレイカバー	1
N スポンジ	1

モノクロ機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合、(O) が別途必要となる。

O デカーラー	1
---------	---



When installing the document finisher to a full-color machine, parts (P), (Q), (R) and eight out of nine (S) supplied with the job separator are needed. Remaining parts (S), (T), and (U) are required only when installing DF-730.

P Fixing plate F .....	1
Q Fixing plate R .....	1
R Cover AT .....	1
S M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw .....	9

T Shoulder screw .....	1
U Guide plate .....	1
V Base slider B .....	1
W Base slider V .....	1
X Assembly base .....	1

Y M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw .....	9
Z M4 × 10 hexagon head screw .....	1

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur une machine entièrement en couleurs, les pièces (P), (Q), (R) et 8 des 9 (S) fournies avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises. Les pièces restantes (S), (T) et (U) ne sont requises que pour l'installation de DF-730.

P Plaque de fixation avant .....	1
Q Plaque de fixation arrière .....	1
R Couvercle AT .....	1
S Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 .....	9

T Vis d'épaule .....	1
U Plaque guide .....	1
V Règle de base B .....	1
W Règle de base V .....	1
X Base d'ensemble .....	1

Y Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 .....	9
Z Vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 .....	1

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una máquina a todo color serán necesarias las partes (P), (Q) y (R), y ocho de los nueve tornillos (S) suministrados con el separador de tareas. El resto de las partes (S), (T) y (U) sólo serán necesarias cuando se instale el DF-730.

P Placa de fijación F .....	1
Q Placa de fijación R .....	1
R Cubierta AT .....	1
S Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 .....	9

T Tornillo de hombro .....	1
U Placa guía .....	1
V Deslizador de base B .....	1
W Deslizador de base V .....	1
X Base del conjunto .....	1

Y Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 .....	9
Z Tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 .....	1

Asegúrese de quitar las cintas de fijación o el material amortiguador colocado en las partes suministradas.

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Vollfarbentkopierer angebracht wird, sind die Teile (P), (Q), (R) und acht Teile (P), (Q), (R) und acht von neun (S) Schrauben die mit dem Jobtrenner geliefert erforderlich. Die verbleibenden Teile (S), (T), und (U) sind nur dann erforderlich, wenn der DF-730 aufgestellt wird.

P Fixierplatte F .....	1
Q Fixierplatte R .....	1
R Abdeckung AT .....	1
S M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube .....	9

T Bundschraube .....	1
U Führungsplatte .....	1
V Basis-Schieber B .....	1
W Basis-Schieber V .....	1
X Bauteile-Basis .....	1

Y M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	9
Z M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube .....	1

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un macchinario a colori, sono necessarie le parti (P), (Q), (R) e otto su nove (S) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori. Le rimanenti parti (S), (T) e (U) sono necessarie solo nel caso di installazione del DF-730.

P Piastra di fissaggio F .....	1
Q Piastra di fissaggio R .....	1
R Coperchio AT .....	1
S Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 .....	9

T Vite a colletto .....	1
U Piastra della guida .....	1
V Scivolo di base B .....	1
W Scivolo di base V .....	1
X Base di assemblaggio .....	1

Y Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 .....	9
Z Vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 .....	1

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

全彩色机上安装装订器时，需要安装作业分离器上附属的部件 (P)、(Q)、(R) 和 9 个部件 (S) 中的 8 个。只有安装 DF-730 时需要剩余的部件 (S)、(T) 和 (U)。

P 固定板 F .....	1
Q 固定板 R .....	1
R 盖板 AT .....	1
S M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 .....	9

T 阶梯螺钉 .....	1
U 导向板 .....	1
V 底座滑板 B .....	1
W 底座滑板 V .....	1
X 组装底座 .....	1

Y M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 .....	9
Z M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 .....	1

请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

フルカラー機にドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (P)、(Q)、(R)、(S) 8 本が必要となる。DF-730 を設置する場合のみ、(S)、(T)、(U) が必要となる。

P 固定板 F .....	1
Q 固定板 R .....	1
R カバーAT .....	1
S ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S .....	9

T 段付きビス .....	1
U ガイド板 .....	1
V ベーススライダ B .....	1
W ベーススライダ V .....	1
X 組立ベース .....	1

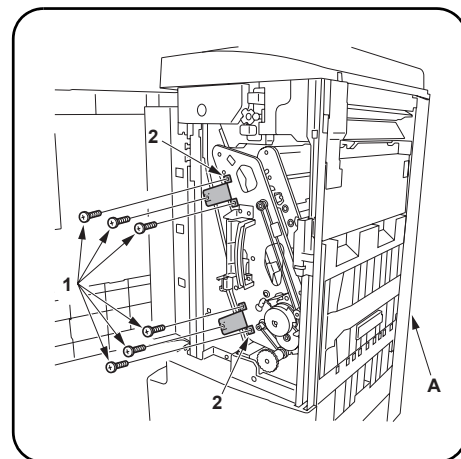
Y ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S .....	9
Z M4 × 10 六角ビス .....	1

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

### Installation Procedure

Install the job separator and then install the document finisher to the full-color machine. Be sure to install the document finisher before installing the center-folding unit.

Before installing the document finisher, make sure that the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.



### Removing the fittings

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Remove six screws (1) to remove two fittings (2).

### Procédure d'installation

Installer le séparateur de travaux, puis installer le retoucheur de document sur la machine entièrement en couleurs. Veiller à installer le retoucheur de document avant d'installer la plieuse.

Avant d'installer le retoucheur de document, s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le cordon d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.

### Enlèvement des fixations

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Retirer six vis (1) pour retirer deux fixations (2).

### Procedimiento de instalación

Instale el separador de tareas y luego instale el finalizador de documentos en la máquina a todo color. Asegúrese de instalar el finalizador de documentos antes de instalar la unidad de plegado central.

Antes de instalar el finalizador de documentos, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que su cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente.

### Extracción de los accesorios

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Quite los seis tornillos (1) para quitar los dos accesorios (2).

### Einbauverfahren

Bauen Sie zuerst den Jobtrenner und dann den Dokument-Finisher in den Vollfarbencopierer ein. Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Dokument-Finisher vor der Mittenfalteinheit angebracht wird.

Vor dem Einbau des Dokument-Finishers muss der MFP-Hauptschalter aktiviert, und das Netzkabel von der Steckdose abgezogen sein.

### Entfernen der Befestigungselemente

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Entfernen Sie die sechs Schrauben (1) um die Befestigungselemente (2) zu entfernen.

### Procedura di installazione

Installare il separatore di dei lavori e poi procedere all'installazione della finitrice di documenti sul macchinario a colori. Assicurarsi di installare la finitrice di documenti prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.

Prima di installare la finitrice di documenti, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della MFP sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.

### Rimozione dei pezzi di raccordo

1. 1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. 2. Togliere sei viti (1) per rimuovere i due pezzi di raccordo (2).

### 安裝步驟

安裝作業分離器，然後將裝訂器安裝到全彩色機中。  
請務必在安裝中縫裝訂一折頁單元前安裝裝訂器。

安裝裝訂器前，請確定 MFP 的主電源開關已經關閉並且電源線已從電源插座上拔下。

### 拆下固定件

1. 打開裝訂器 (A) 的前蓋板。
2. 拆下 6 顆螺釘 (1) 以便拆下 2 個固定件 (2)。

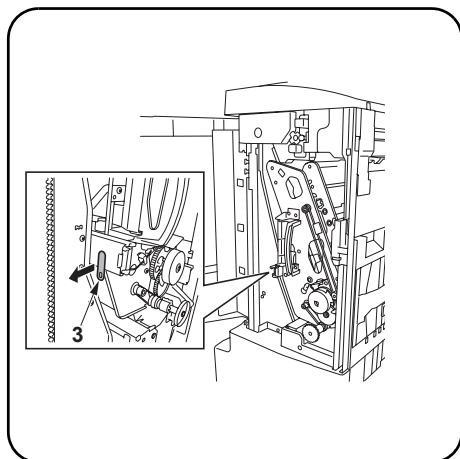
### 設置手順

フルカラー機にドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、先にジョブセパレータを設置しておくこと。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャの設置は、必ず中折りユニットの設置前に行うこと。

ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

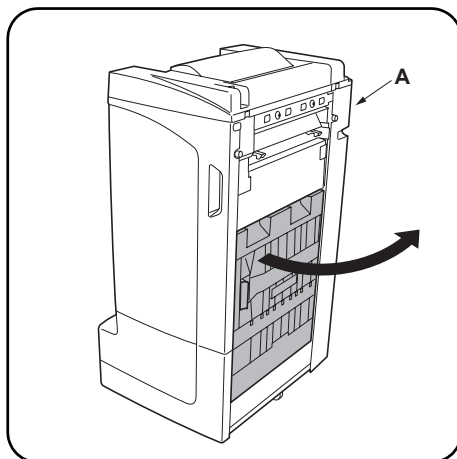
### 固定金具の取り外し

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
2. ビス (1) 6 本を外し、固定金具 (2) 2 個を取り外す。

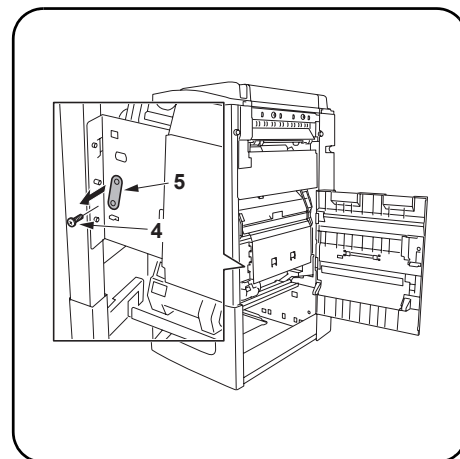


### Removing the slider fixing pin

3. Remove the fixing tape from the slider of the inner tray and remove the slider fixing pin A (3).



4. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).



5. Remove the screw (4) to remove the slider fixing pin B (5).

### Enlèvement de la broche de fixation de la règle

3. Retirer la bande de fixation de la règle du plateau interne et retirer la broche de fixation A (3).

4. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

5. Retirer la vis (4) pour retirer la broche de fixation de la règle B (5).

### Extracción del pasador de fijación del deslizador

3. Quite la cinta de fijación del deslizador de la bandeja interior y quite el pasador de fijación del deslizador A (3).

4. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

5. Quite el tornillo (4) para quitar el pasador de fijación del deslizador B (5).

### Entfernen des Schieber-Fixierstifts

3. Entfernen Sie das Klebeband vom Schieber des Innenfachs, und bauen Sie danach den Schieber-Fixierstift A (3) aus.

4. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

5. Lösen Sie die Schraube (4), um den Fixierstift B (5) vom Schieber zu entfernen.

### Rimozione del perno di fissaggio dello scivolo

3. Togliere il nastro adesivo dallo scivolo del vassoio interno e rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo A (3).

4. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

5. Togliere la vite (4) per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo B (5).

### 拆下滑板固定销

3. 从内部托盘的滑板上拆下固定胶带并拆下滑板固定销 A (3)。

4. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。

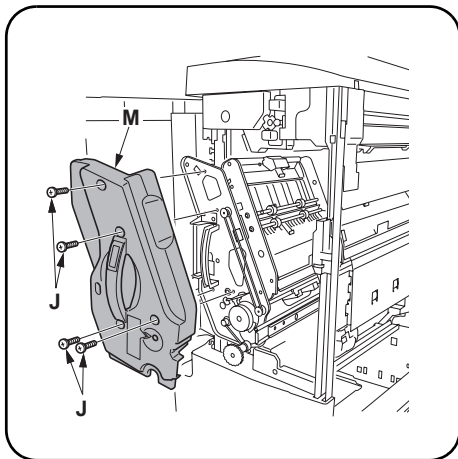
5. 拆下螺钉 (4) 以便拆下滑板固定销 B (5)。

### スライダ固定ピンの取り外し

3. 内部トレイのスライダの固定テープを剥がし、スライダ固定ピン A (3) を取り外す。

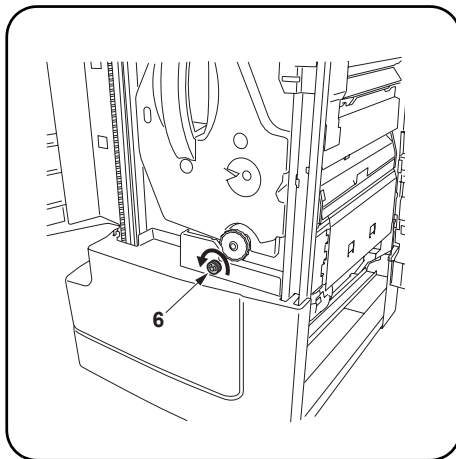
4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。

5. ビス (4) 1 本を外し、スライダ固定ピン B (5) を取り外す。



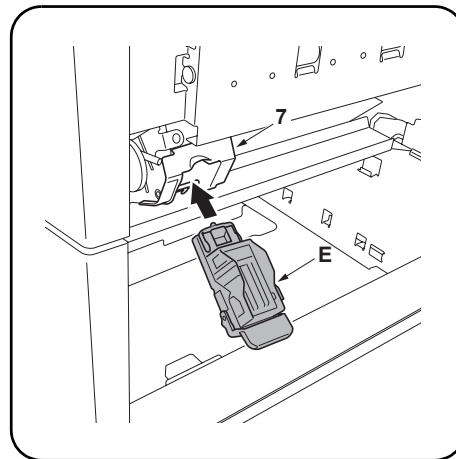
#### Installing the internal tray cover

6. Pull the internal tray out.
7. Install the internal tray cover (M) using the four M4 x 6 tap Tight S Screw (J).



#### Removing the fixing pin

8. Turn the fixing pin (6) counterclockwise to remove it.
9. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).



#### Installing the staple cartridge

10. Remove the fixing tape from the staple cartridge holder (7).
11. Insert the staple cartridge (E) into the staple cartridge holder (7).
12. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).

#### Installation du capot du bac interne

6. Faire ressortir le bac interne.
7. Installer le capot du bac interne (M) à l'aide des quatre vis S taraudées M4 x 6 (J).

#### Enlèvement de la broche de fixation

8. Faire tourner la broche de fixation (6) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre pour la retirer.
9. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

#### Installation de la cartouche d'agrafes

10. Retirer la bande de fixation du porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
11. Insérer la cartouche d'agrafes (E) dans le porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
12. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

#### Instalación de la cubierta de bandeja interna

6. Saque la bandeja interna.
7. Instale la cubierta de bandeja interna (M) utilizando los cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 x 6 (J).

#### Extracción del pasador de fijación

8. Gire el pasador de fijación (6) hacia la izquierda para quitarlo.
9. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

#### Instalación del cartucho de grapas

10. Quite la cinta de fijación del portacartucho de grapas (7).
11. Inserte el cartucho de grapas (E) en el portacartucho de grapas (7).
12. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

#### Entfernen der Innenfachabdeckung

6. Ziehen Sie das Innenfach heraus.
7. Bringen Sie die Innenfachabdeckung (M) mit den vier M4 x 6 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (J) an.

#### Entfernen des Fixierstifts

8. Drehen Sie den Fixierstift (6) gegen den Uhrzeigersinn, um ihn zu entfernen.
9. Schließen sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

#### Anbringen der Heftklammerkassette

10. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband von der Heftklammer-Kassettenhalterung (7) ab.
11. Setzen Sie die Heftklammerkassette (E) in die Kassettenhalterung (7) ein.
12. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

#### Installazione del pannello del vassoio interno

6. Estrarre il vassoio interno.
7. Installare il pannello del vassoio interno (M) utilizzando le quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 x 6 (J).

#### Rimozione del perno di fissaggio

8. Per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio (6) ruotarlo in senso antiorario.
9. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

#### Installazione della cartuccia pinzatrice

10. Staccare il nastro adesivo dal contenitore della cartuccia pinzatrice (7).
11. Inserire la cartuccia pinzatrice (E) nel contenitore (7).
12. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

#### 安装内部托盘盖板

6. 拉出内部托盘。
7. 用 4 颗 M4 x 6 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (J) 安装内部托盘盖板 (M)。

#### 拆下固定销

8. 逆时针旋转固定销 (6) 将其拆下。
9. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

#### 安装订书钉盒

10. 从订书钉盒支架 (7) 上拆下固定胶带。
11. 将订书钉盒 (E) 插入订书钉盒支架 (7)。
12. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。

#### 内部トレイカバーの取り付け

6. 内部トレイを引き出す。
7. ビス M4 x 6 タップタイト S (J) 4 本で、内部トレイカバー (M) を取り付け。

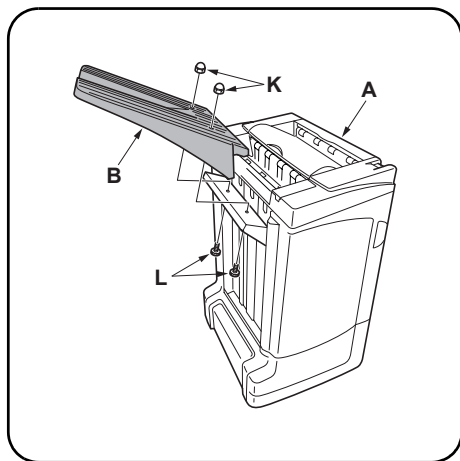
#### 固定ピンの取り外し

8. 固定ピン (6) を左に回して取り外す。
9. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。

#### ステーブルカートリッジの取り付け

10. ステーブルカートリッジホルダー (7) の固定テープを剥がす。
11. ステーブルカートリッジホルダー (7) にステーブルカートリッジ (E) を挿入する。
12. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを閉じる。

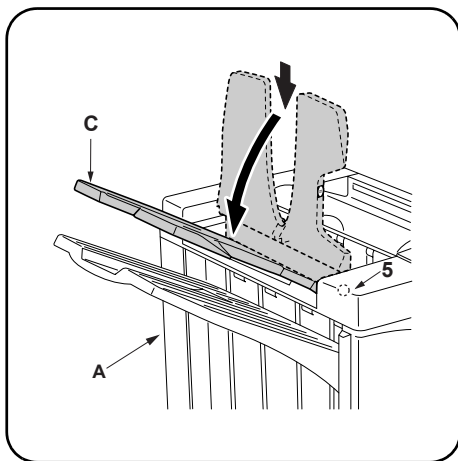




### Installing the trays

**For full color machine only. Follow step 27 on page 18 for the installation procedure.**

13. Use two nuts (K) and two pins (L) to install the tray A (B) to the document finisher (A).



14. Fit the right and left projections (5) of the tray B (C) onto the document finisher (A) from its top.

15. Follow each procedure below depending on monochrome or full-color machine.

**When using a monochrome machine: Proceed to step 1 on page 7**

**When using a full-color machine: Proceed to step 1 on page 11**

### Installation des bacs

**Pour la machine entièrement en couleurs seulement. Suivre l'étape 27 de la page 18 pour la procédure d'installation.**

13. Utiliser deux écrous (K) et deux broches (L) pour installer le bac A (B) sur le retoucheur de document (A).

14. Fixer les saillies droite et gauche (5) du bac B (C) sur le retoucheur de document (A) depuis le haut.

15. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous en fonction de la machine monochrome ou de la machine entièrement en couleurs.

**Lors de l'utilisation de la machine monochrome: passer à l'étape 1 de la page 7**

**Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs: passer à l'étape 1 de la page 11**

### Instalación de las bandejas

**Para la máquina a todo color solamente. Siga el paso 27 de la página 18 para realizar el procedimiento de instalación.**

13. Utilice dos tuercas (K) y dos pasadores (L) para instalar la bandeja A (B) en el finalizador de documentos (A).

14. Coloque los resaltos derecho e izquierdo (5) de la bandeja B (C) sobre el finalizador de documentos (A) desde su parte superior.

15. Siga cada procedimiento de abajo dependiendo de si la máquina es de blanco y negro o de a todo color.

**Cuando utilice una máquina de blanco y negro: Vaya al paso 1 de la página 7**

**Cuando utilice una máquina a todo color: Vaya al paso 1 de la página 11**

### Anbringen der Fächer

**Nur für Vollfarbemaschine. Folgen Sie hinsichtlich des Einbauverfahrens dem Schritt 27 auf Seite 18.**

13. Verwenden Sie die beiden Muttern (K) und die beiden Stifte (L), um das Fach A (B) in den Dokument-Finisher (A) einzubauen.

14. Setzen Sie die rechten und linken Vorsprünge (5) des Fachs B (C) von oben auf den Dokument-Finisher (A).

15. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, je nachdem, ob es sich um eine Monochrommaschine bzw. einen Vollfarbentkopierer handelt.

**Bei Verwendung einer Monochrommaschine: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 7 weiter**

**Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbentkopierers: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 11 weiter**

### Installazione dei vassoio

**Solamente per macchinari a colori. Per la procedura di installazione, seguire il punto 27 a pagina 18.**

13. Utilizzare due dadi (K) e due perni (L) per installare il vassoio A (B) alla finitrice di documenti (A).

14. Inserire dall'alto della finitrice di documenti (A) le parti sporgenti destra e sinistra (5) del vassoio B (C) nella finitrice stessa.

15. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda che si tratti di un macchinario in bianco e nero oppure di uno a colori.

**In caso si utilizzi un macchinario in bianco e nero: Procedere con il punto 1 a pagina 7**

**IN caso si utilizzi un macchinario a colori: Procedere con il punto 1 a pagina 11**

### 安装托盘

**仅供全彩色机。有关安装步骤，请执行第 18 页上的步骤 27。**

13. 用 2 颗螺母 (K) 和 2 颗销 (L) 将托盘 A (B) 安装到装订器 (A) 上。

14. 将托盘 B (C) 的右部和左部突出部 (5) 从顶部固定在装订器 (A) 上。

15. 请根据黑白机或全彩色机执行下列步骤。

使用黑白机时：进行第 7 页上的第 1 步

使用全彩色机时：进行第 11 页上的第 1 步

### トレイの取り付け

**フルカラー機の場合、18 ページ手順 27 で取り付けること。**

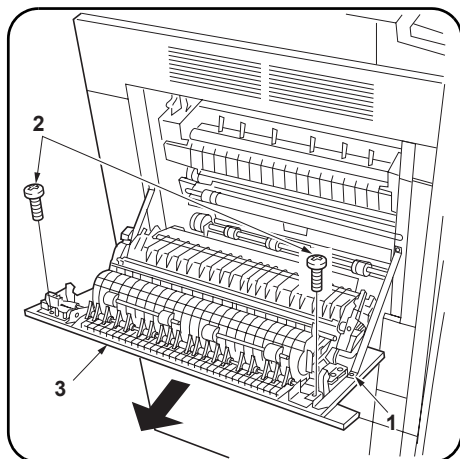
13. ナット (K) 2 個とピン (L) 2 個でドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) にトレイ A (B) を取り付ける。

14. トレイ B (C) の左右の突起 (5) をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) へ上からはめ込む。

15. モノクロ機、フルカラー機別に、下記の手順へ進む。

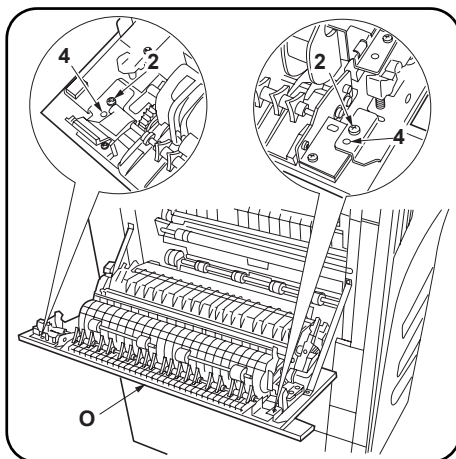
モノクロ機の場合 7 ページ手順 1 へ進む

フルカラー機の場合 11 ページ手順 1 へ進む

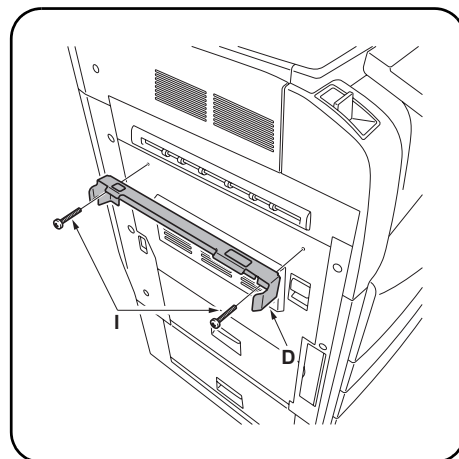


**[When installing the document finisher to the monochrome machine]  
Installing the curl eliminator**

1. Open the eject cover (1) of the MFP.
2. Remove two screws (2) securing the feed-shift guide assembly (3) to remove the assembly.



3. Fit the curl eliminator (O) to the eject cover (1) such that the projections (4) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (O).
4. Secure the curl eliminator (O) using two screws (2) removed in step 2.



**Installing the connecting plate**

5. Install the connecting plate (D) to the left side of the MFP using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (I).

**[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine monochrome]  
Installation de l'élément d'élimination des boucles**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (1) du MFP.
2. Retirer deux vis (2) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (3) pour retirer l'assemblage.

3. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (O) sur le couvercle d'éjection (1) de façon à ce que les saillies (4) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de l'élément d'élimination des boucles (O).
4. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (O) à l'aide de deux vis (2) retirées à l'étape 2.

**Installation de la plaque de connexion**

5. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur le côté gauche du MFP à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).

**[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro]  
Instalación del eliminador de curvatura del papel**

1. Abre la cubierta de expulsión (1) de la MFP.
2. Quite dos tornillos (2) que aseguran el conjunto de la guía de cambio de alimentación (3) para quitar el conjunto.

3. Coloque el eliminador de curvatura del papel (O) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) de forma que los resaltes (4) de la cubierta se coloquen en los dos extremos del eliminador de curvatura del papel (O).
4. Asegure el eliminador de curvatura del papel (O) utilizando dos tornillos (2) quitados en el paso 2.

**Instalación de la placa de conexión**

5. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en el lado izquierdo de la MFP utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).

**[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf der Monochrommaschine angebracht wird]  
Anbringen der Glättungseinrichtung**

1. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1) des MFP.
2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (2), welche die Papiervorschub-Umschalt-Führungseinheit (3) befestigt, um diese auszubauen.

3. Setzen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (O) so auf die Auswurfabdeckung (1) auf, dass die Vorsprünge (4) der Abdeckung in die beiden Enden der Glättungseinrichtung (O) eingreifen.
4. Befestigen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (O) mit den im Schritt 2 entfernten Schrauben (2).

**Anbringen der Verbindungsplatte**

5. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D) auf der linken Seite des MFP mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) an.

**[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio in bianco e nero]  
Installazione dell'eliminatore di arricciature**

1. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (1) della MFP.
2. Togliere le due viti (2) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (3) e rimuovere il gruppo.

3. Montare l'eliminatore di arricciature (O) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) in modo tale che le parti sporgenti (4) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore di arricciature (O).
4. Fissare l'eliminatore di arricciature (O) utilizzando le due viti (2) rimosse al punto 2.

**Installazione della piastra di connessione**

5. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) sul lato destro della MFP utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).

**[将装订器安装到黑白机上时]  
安装防卷曲部件**

1. 打开 MFP 的出纸盖板 (1)。
2. 拆下固定分支导向组件 (3) 的 2 颗螺钉 (2) 以便拆下组件。

3. 将防卷曲部件 (O) 固定在出纸盖板 (1) 上, 让盖板上的突出部 (4) 嵌入防卷曲部件 (O) 的两端。
4. 用在步骤 2 中拆下的 2 颗螺钉 (2) 固定防卷曲部件 (O)。

**安装连接板**

5. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 将连接板 (D) 安装到 MFP 的左侧。

**[モノクロ機ヘッドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合]  
デカーラーの取り付け**

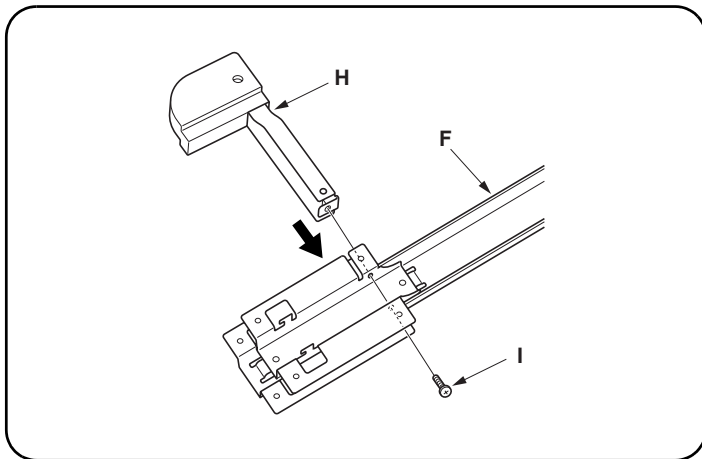
1. MFP 本体の排出カバー (1) を開く。
2. ビス (2) 2 本を外し、分岐ガイド組立 (3) を取り外す。

3. デカーラー (O) の両端に半押し (4) がはまる位置で、デカーラー (O) を排出カバー (1) に取り付ける。
4. 手順 2 で外したビス (2) 2 本でデカーラー (O) を固定する。

**連結板の取り付け**

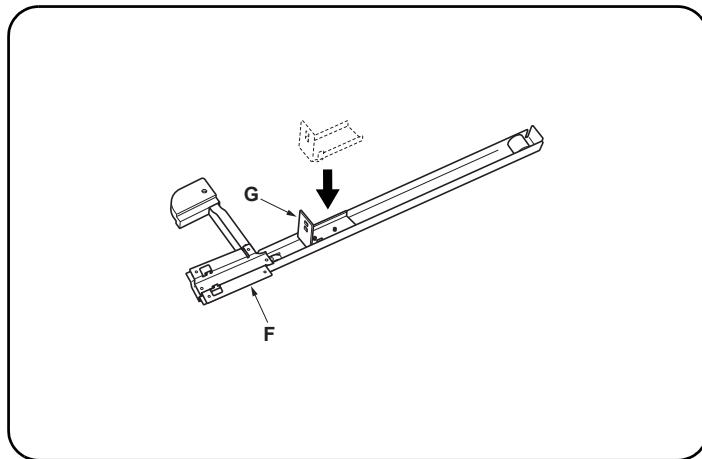
5. MFP 本体の左側にビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 2 本で連結板 (D) を取り付ける。





#### Assembling the base slider

6. Install plate foot R (H) to base slider A (F) using M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I).



7. Place base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F).

8. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP.

**When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 9**  
**When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 16**

#### Assemblage de la règle de base

6. Installer le pied de plaque R (H) sur la règle de base A (F) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).

7. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F).

8. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP.

**Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 9**

**Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 16**

#### Ensamblaje del deslizador de base

6. Instale el pedal R (H) en el deslizador A (F) utilizando el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).

7. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F).

8. Siga el procedimiento indicado abajo que sea más adecuado al tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP.

**Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 9**

**Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 16**

#### Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

6. Bringen Sie den Plattenfuß R (H) am Basis-Schieber A (F) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) an.

7. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) am Basis-Schieber A (F) an.

8. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP angebrachten Papiervorschubtyp zutreffend ist.

**Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 9 weiter**

**Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 16 weiter**

#### Assemblaggio dello scivolo di base

6. Installare il piedino di sostegno R (H) allo scivolo di base A (F) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).

7. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sopra lo scivolo di base A (F).

8. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP.

**In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 9**

**In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 16**

#### 组装底座滑板

6. 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 将板脚座 R (H) 安装到底座滑板 A (F)。

7. 将底座滑板 B (G) 放在底座滑板 A (F) 上。

8. 请执行适合附属在 MFP 上供纸盒类型的下列步骤。

使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时：转到第 9 步

使用 3000 张的供纸盒时：转到第 16 步

#### ベーススライダの組立

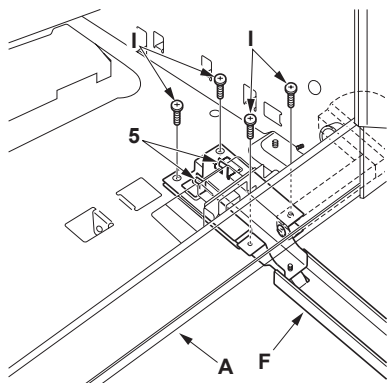
6. ベーススライダ A (F) にプレートフット R (H) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で取り付ける。

7. ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。

8. MFP 本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。

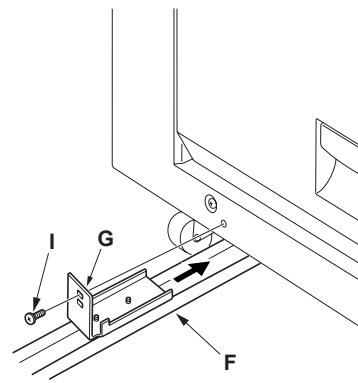
500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 9 へ

3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 16 へ



### When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets Installing the base slider

9. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
10. Insert base slider A (F) into the lower right of the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (5).
11. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).



12. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP.
13. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I).  
**Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) through the upper hole of base slider B (G).**
14. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).
15. Move to step 1 on page 19.

### Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles Installation de la règle de base

9. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
10. Insérer la règle de base A (F) dans la partie inférieure droite du retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (5).
11. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).

12. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP.
13. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).  
**Faire passer la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) par l'orifice supérieur de la règle de base B (G).**
14. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
15. Passer à l'étape 1 de la page 19.

### Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas Instalación del deslizador de base

9. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
10. Inserte el deslizador A (F) en la parte inferior derecha del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (5).
11. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).

12. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP.
13. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).  
**Ponga un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) a través del agujero superior del deslizador B (G).**
14. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
15. Vaya al paso 1 de la página 19.

### Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

9. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
10. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) auf der unteren rechten Seite des Dokument-Finishers (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (5) ein.
11. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).

12. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links am MFP ein.
13. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I).  
**Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) durch das obere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).**
14. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
15. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 19 weiter.

### In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli Installare lo scivolo di base

9. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
10. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) nella parte inferiore destra della finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (5).
11. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).

12. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP.
13. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).  
**Far passare la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) attraverso il foro superiore dello scivolo di base B (G).**
14. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
15. Andare a pagina 19, punto 1.

### 使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时 安装底座滑板

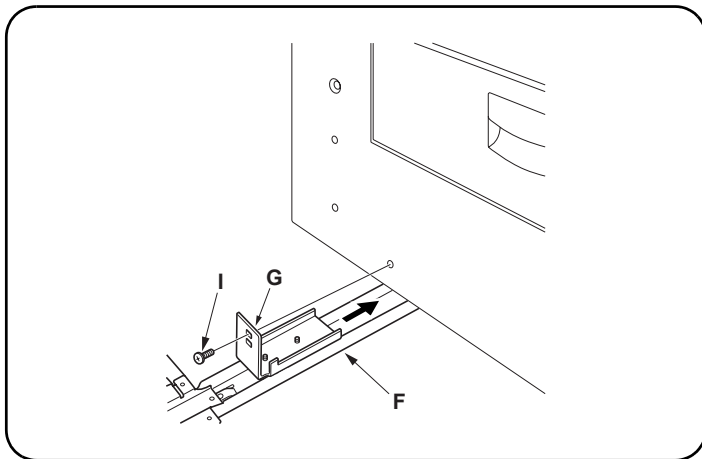
9. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
10. 将底座滑板 A (F) 插到装订器 (A) 的右下侧，并挂上簧片 (5)。
11. 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)。

12. 插入底座滑板 A (F)，然后将底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 的左下侧。
13. 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G)。  
将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) 的上部孔。
14. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
15. 转到第 19 页上的第 1 步。

### 500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 ベーススライダの取り付け

9. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の右カバーを開く。
10. ベーススライダ A (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の右下へ差し込み、ツメ (5) を引っ掛ける。
11. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で固定する。

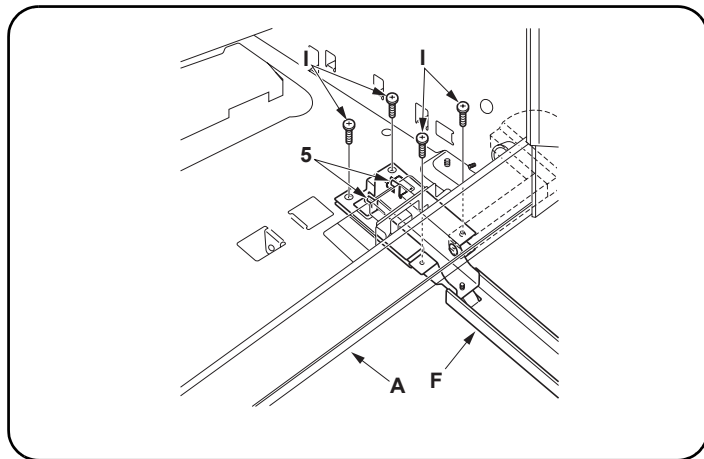
12. MFP 本体の左下にベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B (G) を差し込む。
13. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で固定する。  
**ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) は、ベーススライダ B (G) の上の穴に通すこと。**
14. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の右カバーを閉じる。
15. 19 ページ手順 1 へ進む。



#### When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets

##### Installing the base slider

16. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP.
17. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I).  
**Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) through the lower hole of the base slider B (G).**



18. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
19. Insert base slider A (F) under the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (5).
20. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).
21. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).
22. Move to step 1 on page 19.

#### Lors de l'utilisation d'un alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles

##### Installation de la règle de base

16. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP.
17. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).  
**Faire passer la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) par l'orifice inférieur de la règle de base B (G).**

18. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
19. Insérer la règle de base A (F) sous le retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (5).
20. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).
21. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
22. Passer à l'étape 1 de la page 19.

#### Cuando utilice un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas

##### Instalación del deslizador de base

16. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP.
17. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).  
**Ponga un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) a través del agujero inferior del deslizador B (G).**

18. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
19. Inserte el deslizador A (F) debajo del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (5).
20. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
21. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
22. Vaya al paso 1 de la página 19.

#### Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter

##### Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

16. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf der unteren linken Seite des MFP ein.
17. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I).  
**Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Bundschraube (I) durch das untere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).**

18. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
19. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter dem Dokument-Finisher (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (5) ein.
20. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).
21. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
22. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 19 weiter.

#### In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli

##### Installare lo scivolo di base

16. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP.
17. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).  
**Far passare la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) attraverso il foro inferiore dello scivolo di base B (G).**

18. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
19. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) sotto la finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (5).
20. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
21. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
22. Andare a pagina 19, punto 1.

#### 使用 3000 张的供纸盒时

##### 安装底座滑板

16. 插入底座滑板 A (F)，然后将底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 的左下侧。
17. 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G)。  
**将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) 的下部孔。**

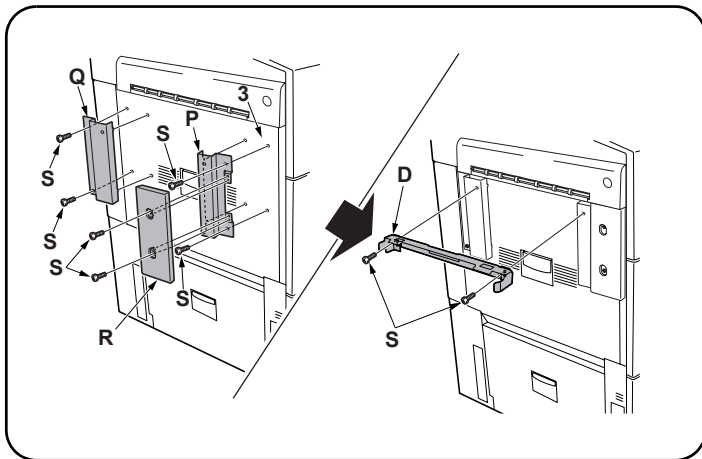
18. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
19. 将底座滑板 A (F) 插到装订器 (A) 下，并挂上簧片 (5)。
20. 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)。
21. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
22. 转到第 19 页上的第 1 步。

#### 3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合

##### ベーススライダの取り付け

16. MFP 本体の左下にベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B (G) を差し込む。
17. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で固定する。  
**ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) は、ベーススライダ B (G) の下の穴に通すこと。**

18. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。
19. ベーススライダ A (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の下へ差し込み、ツメ (5) を引っ掛ける。
20. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で固定する。
21. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを閉じる。
22. 19 ページ手順 1 へ進む。



**[When installing the document finisher to the full-color machine]  
Installing the fixing and connecting plates**

1. Install fixing plates F (P) and R (Q) to the MFP using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (S) for each plate.
2. Install cover AT (R) to fixing plate F (P) using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (S).
3. Install the connecting plate (D) to fixing plates F (P) and R (Q) using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (S).

**[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine entièrement en couleurs]  
Installation des plaques de fixation et de connexion**

1. Installer les plaques de fixation avant (P) et arrière (Q) sur le MFP à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (S) par plaque.
2. Installer le couvercle AT (R) sur la plaque de fixation avant (P) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (S).
3. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur les plaques de fixation avant (P) et arrière (Q) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (S).

**[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en la máquina a todo color]  
Instalación de las placas de fijación y conexión**

1. Instale las placas de fijación F (P) y R (Q) en la MFP utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (S) para cada placa.
2. Instale la cubierta AT (R) en la placa de fijación F (P) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (S).
3. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en las placas de fijación F (P) y R (Q) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (S).

**[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher am Vollfarbengerät angebracht wird]  
Anbringen der Fixier- und Verbindungsplatten**

1. Bringen Sie die Fixierplatten F (P) und R (Q) am MFP mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (S) für jede Platte an.
2. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung AT (R) auf der Fixierplatte F (P) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (S) an.
3. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D) auf den Fixierplatten F (P) und R (Q) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (S) an.

**[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio a colori]  
Installazione delle piastre di fissaggio e di connessione**

1. Installare le piastre di fissaggio F (P) e R (Q) alla MFP utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (S) per ciascuna piastra.
2. Installare il coperchio AT (R) alla piastra di fissaggio F (P) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (S).
3. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) alle piastre di fissaggio F (P) e R (Q) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (S).

**[ 将装订器安装到全彩色机上时 ]**

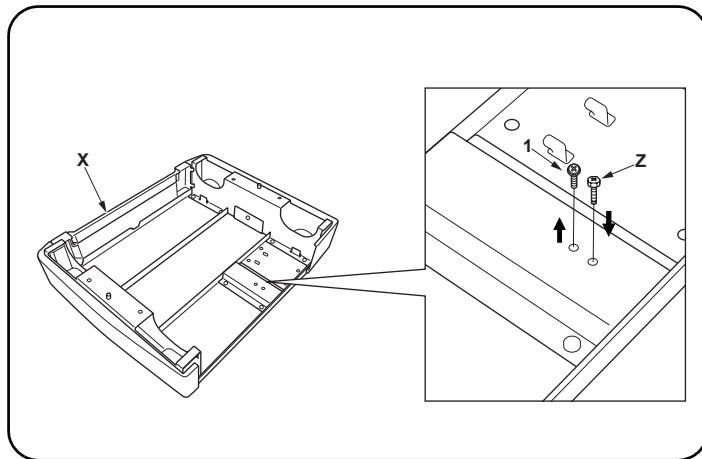
**安装固定板和连接板**

1. 用每张板的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (S) 将固定板 F (P) 和 R (Q) 安装到 MFP。
2. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (S) 将盖板 AT (R) 安装到固定板 F (P)。
3. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (S) 将连接板 (D) 安装到固定板 F (P) 和 R (Q) 上。

**[ フルカラー機ヘッドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合 ]**

**固定板と連結板の取り付け**

1. MFP 本体に固定板 F (P) と固定板 R (Q) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (S) 各 2 本で取り付け。
2. 固定板 F (P) にカバー AT (R) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (S) 2 本で取り付け。
3. 固定板 F (P) と固定板 R (Q) に連結板 (D) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (S) 2 本で取り付け。



**Before adjusting the document finisher height**

4. Remove the screw (1) from the left side of the assembly base (X), insert M4 × 10 hexagon head screw (Z) into the right side hole to tighten it temporarily.

**Avant d'ajuster la hauteur du retoucheur de document**

4. Retirer la vis (1) du côté gauche de la base d'ensemble (X), insérer la vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 (Z) dans l'orifice de droite pour la resserrer temporairement.

**Antes de ajustar la altura del finalizador de documentos**

4. Quite el tornillo (1) del lado izquierdo de la base del conjunto (X) e inserte el tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 (Z) en el agujero del lado derecho para apretarlo temporalmente.

**Vor dem Einstellen der Höhe des Dokument-Finishers**

4. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (1) von der linken Seite der Bauteile-Basis (X), stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube (Z) in das rechte Loch ein, und ziehen Sie diese danach vorübergehend an.

**Prima di regolare l'altezza della finitrice di documenti**

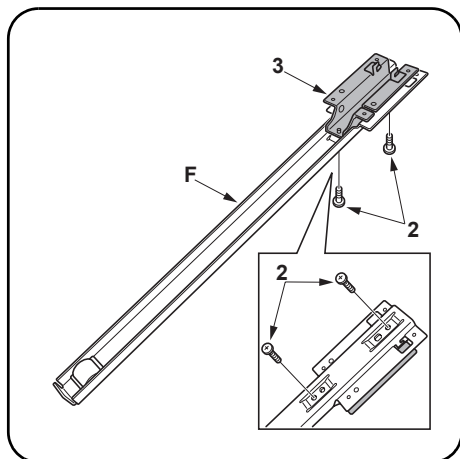
4. Togliere la vite (1) dal lato sinistro della base di assemblaggio (X) e inserire la vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 (Z) nel foro sul lato destro per fissarla temporaneamente.

**调整装订器高度前**

4. 从组件底座 (X) 的左侧拆下螺钉 (1)，将 M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 (Z) 插入右侧孔将其暂时拧紧。

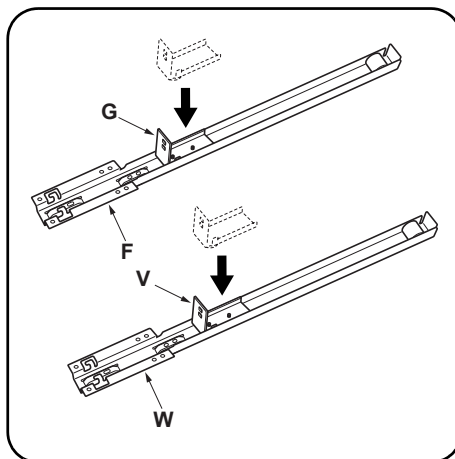
**高さ調整の準備**

4. 組立ベース (X) の左側のビス (1) 1 本を外し、M4 × 10 六角ビス (Z) を右側の穴に外れない程度に仮締める。



#### Disassembling the base slider

5. Remove the two screws (2) from the base slider A (F) to remove the stay foot (3).



#### Reassembling the base slider

6. Put base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F). In the same way, put base slider B (V) onto base slider V (W).

7. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP.

**When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 8**

**When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 14**

#### Démontage de la règle de base

5. Retirer les deux vis (2) de la règle de base A (F) pour retirer le pied de la retenue (3).

#### Remontage de la règle de base

6. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F). De la même façon, mettre la règle de base B (V) en place sur la règle de base V (W).

7. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP.

**Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 8**

**Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 14**

#### Desmontaje del deslizador de base

5. Quite los dos tornillos (2) del deslizador A (F) para quitar la pata de apoyo (3).

#### Montaje del deslizador de base

6. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F). De la misma forma, ponga el deslizador de base B (V) sobre el deslizador de base V (W).

7. Siga cada procedimiento de abajo dependiendo del tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP.

**Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 8**

**Cuando utilice un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 14**

#### Zerlegen des Basis-Schiebers

5. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (2) vom Basis-Schieber A (F), um den Strebenfuß (3) auszubauen.

#### Zusammenbauen des Basis-Schiebers

6. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf den Basis-Schieber A (F). Verfahren Sie in gleicher Weise, indem Sie den Basis-Schieber B (V) auf den Basis-Schieber V (W) setzen.

7. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP angebrachten Papier-vorschubtyp zutreffend ist.

**Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 8 weiter.**

**Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 14 weiter.**

#### Smontaggio dello scivolo di base

5. Togliere le due viti (2) dallo scivolo di base A (F) per rimuovere il piedino di bloccaggio (3).

#### Riassemblaggio dello scivolo di base

6. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sullo scivolo di base A (F). Allo stesso modo, collocare lo scivolo di base B (V) sullo scivolo di base V (W).

7. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP.

**In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 8**

**In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 14**

#### 拆卸底座滑板

5. 从底座滑板 A (F) 上拆下 2 颗螺钉 (2) 以便拆下固定脚座 (3)。

#### 重新组装底座滑板

6. 将底座滑板 B (G) 放在底座滑板 A (F) 上。同样，将底座滑板 B (V) 放在底座滑板 V (W) 上。

7. 请执行适合附属在 MFP 上供纸盒类型的下列步骤。

使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时: 转到第 8 步  
使用 3000 张的供纸盒时: 转到第 14 步

#### ベーススライダの分解

5. ベーススライダ A (F) のビス 2 本 (2) を外し、ステイフット (3) を取り外す。

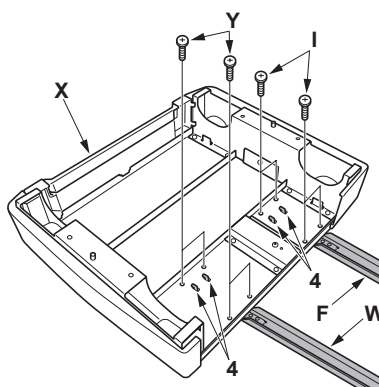
#### ベーススライダの組み立て

6. ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。同様にベーススライダ V (W) にベーススライダ B (V) を置く。

7. MFP 本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。

500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 8 へ  
3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 14 へ





### Installing the base slider

#### When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets

8. Insert base slider V (W) and base slider A (F) that was disassembled in step 5 under the assembly base (X) and hook the tabs (4).

9. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (W) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (Y) respectively.

### Installation de la règle de base

#### Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles

8. Insérer la règle de base V (W) et la règle de base A (F) démontées à l'étape 5 sous la base d'ensemble (X) et accrocher les onglets (4).

9. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (W) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.

### Instalación del deslizador de base

#### Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas

8. Inserte el deslizador de base V (W) y el deslizador A (F) que fueron desmontados en el paso 5 debajo de la base del conjunto (X) y enganche las lengüetas (4).

9. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y fije el deslizador de base V (W) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.

### Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

#### Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter

8. Führen Sie den im Schritt 5 zerlegten Basis-Schieber V (W) sowie den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter den Bauteile-Basis (X) und rasten Sie die Laschen (4) ein.

9. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) sowie den Basis-Schieber V (W) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y).

### Installazione dello scivolo di base

#### In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli

8. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (W) e lo scivolo di base A (F) smontato al punto 5 sotto la base di assemblaggio (X) e agganciare le linguette (4).

9. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (W) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).

### 安装底座滑板

#### 使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时

8. 将在步骤 5 中拆下的底座滑板 V (W) 和底座滑板 A (F) 插到组装底座 (X) 下，并挂上簧片 (4)。

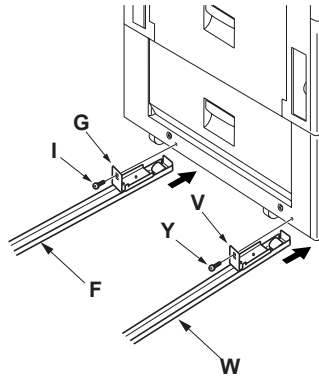
9. 分别用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)，用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 V (W)。

### ベーススライダの取り付け

#### 500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合

8. 組立ベース (X) の下にベーススライダ V (W) と、手順 5 で分解したベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、ツメ (4) を引っ掛ける。

9. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で、ベーススライダ V (W) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 4 本でそれぞれ固定する。



10. Insert base slider A (F) and base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP.  
 11. Insert base slider V (W) and base slider B (V) into the lower right of the MFP.

12. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) and fix base slider B (V) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (Y) respectively.  
**Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I)(Y) through the upper holes of base sliders B (G) (V).**  
 13. Move to step 19 on page 16.

10. Insérer la règle de base A (F) et la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP.  
 11. Insérer la règle de base V (W) et la règle de base B (V) dans la partie inférieure droite du MFP.

12. Fixer le règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base B (V) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.  
**Faire passer les vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) (Y) par les orifices supérieurs des règles de base B (G) (V).**  
 13. Passer à l'étape 19 de la page 16.

10. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP.  
 11. Inserte el deslizador de base V (W) y el deslizador de base B (V) en la parte inferior derecha de la MFP.

12. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y fije el deslizador de base B (V) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.  
**Ponga los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) e (Y) a través de los agujeros superiores de los deslizadores B (G) (V).**  
 13. Vaya al paso 19 de la página 16.

10. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links in den MFP ein.  
 11. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber V (W) und den Basis-Schieber B (V) unten rechts in den MFP ein.

12. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) bzw. den Basis-Schieber B (V) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (Y).  
**Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) (Y) durch die oberen Löcher des Basis-Schieber B (G) (V).**  
 13. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 19 auf Seite 16 weiter.

10. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP.  
 11. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (W) e lo scivolo di base B (V) nella parte inferiore destra della MFP.

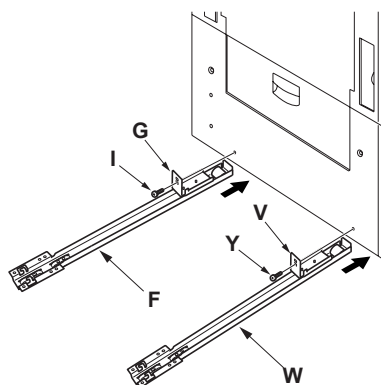
12. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base B (G) una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base B (V) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).  
**Far passare le viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) (Y) attraverso i fori superiori degli scivoli di base B (G) (V).**  
 13. Andare a pagina 16, punto 19.

10. 将底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 的左下侧。  
 11. 将底座滑板 V (W) 和底座滑板 B (V) 插入 MFP 的右下侧。

12. 分别用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G), 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 B (V)。  
**将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) (Y) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) (V) 的上部孔。**  
 13. 转到第 16 页上的第 19 步。

10. ベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ B (G) を MFP 本体の左下へ差し込む。  
 11. ベーススライダ V (W) とベーススライダ B (V) を MFP 本体の右下に差し込む。

12. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で、ベーススライダ B (V) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 1 本でそれぞれ固定する。  
**ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) (Y) は、ベーススライダ B (G) (V) の上の穴に通すこと。**  
 13. 16 ページ手順 19 へ進む。



#### When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used

14. Insert base slider A (F) and base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP.
15. Insert base slider V (W) and base slider B (V) into the lower right of the MFP.

16. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) and fix base slider B (V) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (Y) respectively.  
**Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I)(Y) through the lower holes of the base sliders B (G) (V).**

#### Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles

14. Insérer la règle de base A (F) et la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP.
15. Insérer la règle de base V (W) et la règle de base B (V) dans la partie inférieure droite du MFP.

16. Fixer le règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base B (V) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.  
**Faire passer les vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) (Y) par les orifices inférieurs des règles de base B (G) (V).**

#### Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas

14. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP.
15. Inserte el deslizador de base V (W) y el deslizador de base B (V) en la parte inferior derecha de la MFP.

16. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y fije el deslizador de base B (V) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.  
**Ponga los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) e (Y) a través de los agujeros inferiores de los deslizadores B (G) (V).**

#### Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter

14. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links in den MFP ein.
15. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber V (W) und den Basis-Schieber B (V) unten rechts in den MFP ein.

16. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) bzw. den Basis-Schieber B (V) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (Y).  
**Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) (Y) durch die unteren Löcher des Basis-Schieber B (G) (V).**

#### In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli

14. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP.
15. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (W) e lo scivolo di base B (V) nella parte inferiore destra della MFP.

16. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base B (V) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).  
**Far passare le viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) (Y) attraverso i fori inferiori degli scivoli di base B (G) (V).**

#### 使用 3000 张的供纸盒时

14. 将底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 的左下侧。
15. 将底座滑板 V (W) 和底座滑板 B (V) 插入 MFP 的右下侧。

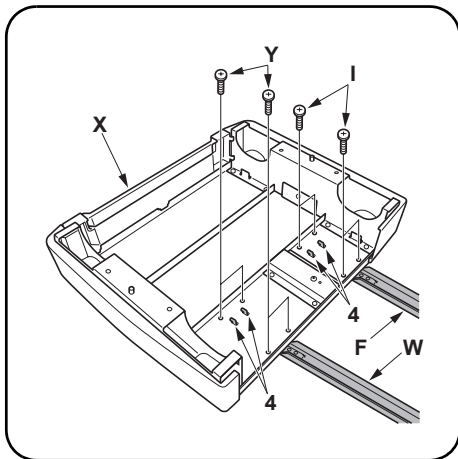
16. 分别用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G)，用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 B (V)。  
**将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) (Y) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) (V) 的下部孔。**

#### 3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合

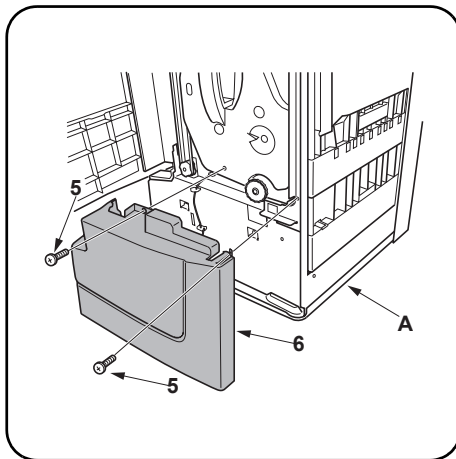
14. ベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ B (G) を MFP 本体の左下へ差し込む。
15. ベーススライダ V (W) とベーススライダ B (V) を MFP 本体の右下に差し込む。

16. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で、ベーススライダ B (V) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 1 本でそれぞれ固定する。  
**ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) (Y) は、ベーススライダ B (G) (V) の下の穴に通すこと。**



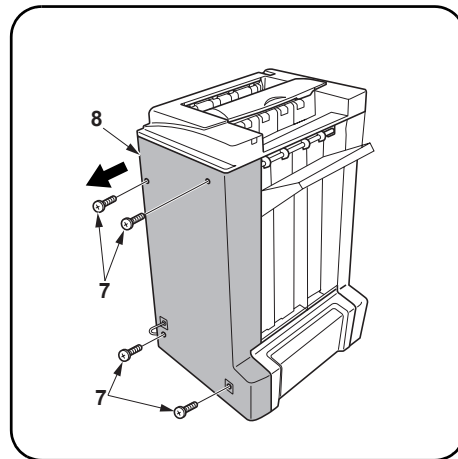


17. Insert base slider A (F) that was disassembled in step 5 and base slider V (W) under the assembly base (X) and hook the tabs (4).
18. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (W) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (Y) respectively.



#### Removing the cover

19. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
20. Remove two screws (5) to remove the lower front cover (6).
21. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).



22. Remove four screws (7) to remove the back cover (8) from the document finisher (A).

17. Insérer la règle de base A (F) démontée à l'étape 5 et la règle de base V (W) sous la base d'ensemble (X) et accrocher les onglets (4).
18. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (W) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.

#### Enlèvement du capot

19. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
20. Retirer les deux vis (5) pour retirer le capot inférieur avant (6).
21. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

22. Retirer quatre vis (7) pour retirer le capot arrière (8) du retoucheur de document (A).

17. Inserte el deslizador A (F) que fue desmontado en el paso 5 y el deslizador de base V (W) debajo de la base del conjunto (X) y enganche las lengüetas (4).
18. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y el deslizador de base V (W) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.

#### Extracción de la cubierta

19. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
20. Quite los dos tornillos (5) para quitar la cubierta delantera inferior (6).
21. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

22. Quite los cuatro tornillos (7) para quitar la cubierta trasera (8) del finalizador de documentos (A).

17. Führen Sie den im Schritt zerlegten Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber V (W) unter die Bauteile-Basis (X), und rasten Sie die Laschen (4) danach ein.
18. Befestigen den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I), und befestigen Sie danach den Basis-Schieber V (W) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y).

#### Entfernen der Abdeckung

19. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung am Dokument-Finisher (A).
20. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (5), um die untere vordere Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.
21. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

22. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (7), um die hintere Abdeckung (8) vom Dokument-Finisher (A) abzunehmen.

17. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) smontato al punto 5 e lo scivolo di base V (W) sotto la base di assemblaggio (X) e agganciare le linguette (4).
18. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (W) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).

#### Rimozione del pannello

19. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
20. Togliere due viti (5) per rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (6).
21. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

22. Togliere quattro viti (7) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (8) dalla finitrice di documenti (A).

17. 将在步骤 5 中拆下的底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 V (W) 插到组装底座 (X) 下, 并挂上簧片 (4)。
18. 分别用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F), 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 V (W)。

#### 拆下盖板

19. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
20. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (5) 以便拆下前下盖板 (6)。
21. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

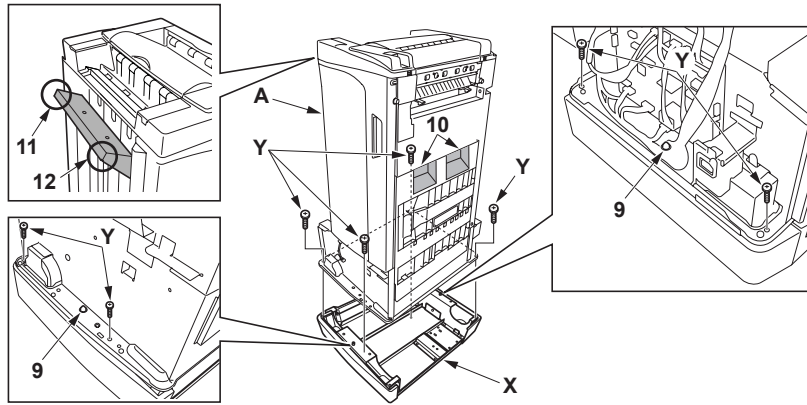
22. 从装订器 (A) 上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (7) 以便拆下后盖板 (8)。

17. 組立ベース (X) の下に手順 5 で分解したベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ V (W) を差込み、ツメ (4) を引っ掛ける。
18. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で、ベーススライダ V (W) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 4 本でそれぞれ固定する。

#### カバーの取り外し

19. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
20. ビス (5) 2 本外し、前下カバー (6) を取り外す。
21. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。

22. ビス (7) 4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の後カバー (8) を取り外す。



#### Installing the assembly base (Be sure to perform step 23 by two service personnel)

23. Align the projection (9) on the assembly base (X) with the hole of the document finisher (A) and place the document finisher (A) on the assembly base (X).

**Lift up the document finisher (A) by two service personnel simultaneously by one to hold (10) and the other to hold (11) and (12). Be sure to perform this step by two service personnel, not by one personnel.**

24. Fix the document finisher (A) to the assembly base (X) using four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (Y).

#### Installation de la base d'ensemble (Veiller à faire effectuer l'étape 23 par deux employés de service)

23. Aligner la saillie (9) de la base d'ensemble (X) sur l'orifice du retoucheur de document (A) et mettre le retoucheur de document (A) en place sur la base d'ensemble (X).

**Faire soulever le retoucheur de document (A) par deux employés de service ensemble, l'un tenant (10) et l'autre Tenant (11) et (12). Veiller à ce que cette étape soit effectuée par deux employés de service et non par un seul.**

24. Fixer le retoucheur de document (A) sur la base d'ensemble (X) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (Y).

#### Instalación de la base del conjunto (Asegúrese de que el paso 23 lo ejecuten dos personas del servicio de instalación)

23. Alinee el resalto (9) de la base del conjunto (X) con el agujero del finalizador de documentos (A) y ponga el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (X).

**El finalizador de documentos (A) deberá ser levantado simultáneamente por dos personas del personal de servicio, una de ellas sujetando la parte (10) y la otra las partes (11) y (12). Asegúrese de que este paso lo lleven a cabo dos personas del personal de servicio, no una sola.**

24. Fije el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (X) utilizando cuatro tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y).

#### Anbringen der Bauteil-Basis (Führen Sie den Schritt 23 mit zwei Personen aus)

23. Richten Sie den Vorsprung (9) auf der Bauteile-Basis (X) mit dem Loch im Dokument-Finisher (A) aus, und setzen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) danach auf die Bauteile-Basis (X).

**Heben Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) zusammen mit einer zweiten Person gleichzeitig an. Eine Person hält die Stelle (10) fest, während die andere Person die Stellen (11) und (12) festhält. Führen Sie diesen Schritt unbedingt mit zwei Personen durch.**

24. Befestigen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) an die Bauteile-Basis (X) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y).

#### Installazione della base di assemblaggio (Assicurarsi che il punto 23 venga eseguito da due membri del personale)

23. Allineare la parte sporgente (9) della base di assemblaggio (X) al foro della finitrice di documenti (A) e collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) sopra la base di assemblaggio (X).

**Due membri del personale sollevino la finitrice di documenti (A) simultaneamente, uno reggendo (10) e l'altro reggendo (11) e (12). Assicurarsi che ad eseguire questo punto siano due membri del personale e non una persona sola.**

24. Fissare la finitrice di documenti (A) alla base di assemblaggio (X) utilizzando quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).

#### 安装组装底座 (请务必由两名维修人员执行第 23 步)

23. 将组装底座 (X) 上的突出部 (9) 对准装订器 (A) 的孔, 并将装订器 (A) 放在组装底座 (X) 上。

由两名维修人员同时抬起装订器 (A), 一名按住 (10), 另一名按住 (11) 和 (12)。请务必由两名维修人员执行此步骤, 而不是一个人。

24. 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 将装订器 (A) 固定到组装底座 (X)。

#### 組立ベースの取り付け (手順 23 は必ず 2 人で行うこと)

23. 組立ベース (X) の突起 (9) とドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の穴を合わせ、組立ベース (X) にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を乗せる。

1 人が (10) の部分を、もう 1 人が (11)、(12) の部分を持ち、2 人で同時にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を持ち上げる。必ず 2 人で作業を行い、1 人では行わないこと。

24. ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 4 本で組立ベース (X) にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を固定する。

### Installing the cover

25. Use four screws (7) removed from the document finisher in step 22 to reinstall the back cover (8).
26. Use two screws (5) removed from the document finisher in step 20 to reinstall the lower front cover (6).

### Installing the tray

27. Install tray A (B) and tray B (C) to the document finisher (A). Refer to steps 13 and 14 on page 6 for the installation.

---

### Installation du capot

25. Utiliser cinq vis (7) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 22 pour réinstaller le capot arrière (8).
26. Utiliser deux vis (5) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 20 pour réinstaller le capot inférieur avant (6).

### Installation des bacs

27. Installer le bac A (B) et le bac B (C) sur le retoucheur de document (A). Se référer aux étapes 13 et 14 de la page 6 pour l'installation.

---

### Instalación de la cubierta

25. Utilice cuatro tornillos (7) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 22 para volver a instalar la cubierta trasera (8).
26. Utilice dos tornillos (5) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 20 para volver a instalar la cubierta delantera inferior (6).

### Instalación de la bandeja

27. Instale la bandeja A (B) y la bandeja B (C) en el finalizador de documentos (A). Consulte los pasos 13 y 14 para hacer la instalación.

---

### Anbringen der Abdeckung

25. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (7), welche Sie im Schritt 22 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die hintere Abdeckung (8) wieder anzubringen.
26. Verwenden Sie die beiden Schrauben (5), welche Sie im Schritt 20 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die vordere Abdeckung (6) wieder anzubringen.

### Anbringen des Fachs

27. Bringen Sie das Fach A (B) und das Fach B (C) am Dokument-Finisher (A) an. Beziehen Sie sich hinsichtlich des Einbaus auf die Schritte 13 und 14 auf Seite 6.

---

### Installazione del pannello

25. Utilizzare le quattro viti (7) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 22 per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (8).
26. Utilizzare le due viti (5) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 20 per reinstallare il pannello inferiore anteriore (6).

### Installazione del vassoio

27. Installare il vassoio A (B) e il vassoio B (C) sulla finitrice di documenti (A). Per l'installazione, fare riferimento ai punti 13 e 14 a pagina 6.

---

### 安装盖板

25. 用在步骤 22 中从装订器上拆下的 4 颗螺钉 (7) 重新安装后盖板 (8)。
26. 用在步骤 20 中从装订器上拆下的 2 颗螺钉 (5) 重新安装前下盖板 (6)。

### 安装托盘

27. 将托盘 A (B) 和托盘 B (C) 安装到装订器 (A) 上。有关安装, 请参考第 6 页上的步骤 13 和 14。

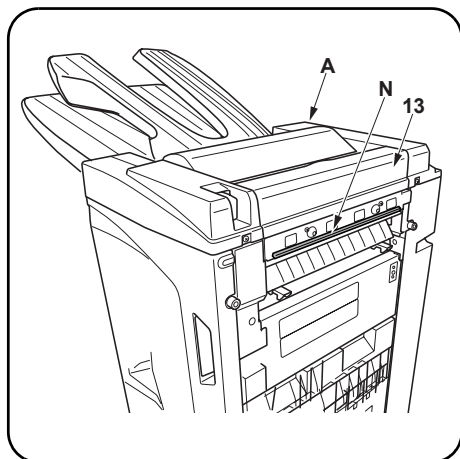
---

### カバーの取り付け

25. 手順 22 で外した後カバー (8) をビス (7) 4 本で元通り取り付け。
26. 手順 20 で外した前下カバー (6) をビス (5) 2 本で元通り取り付け。

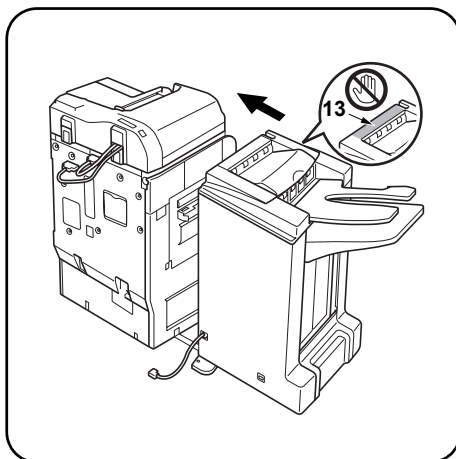
### トレイの取り付け

27. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) にトレイ A (B) とトレイ B (C) を取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 13、14 を参照のこと。



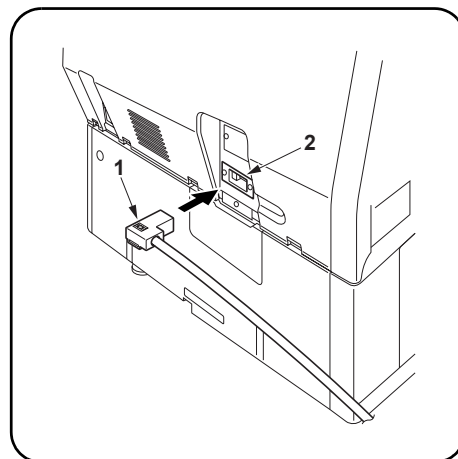
#### Installing the sponge

1. Clean the sheet metal section under the upper cover (13) of the document finisher (A) with alcohol.
2. Peel the release paper off the sponge (N) and adhere the sponge to the sheet metal section.



#### [Installing the document finisher and the MFP]

3. Bring the document finisher (A) near the MFP and connect them.  
For connecting the document finisher (A) and the MFP, do not hold the upper cover (13) of the document finisher.



#### Connecting the signal line

4. Connect the signal line (1) of the document finisher (A) to the connector (2) at the back of the MFP.

#### Installation de l'éponge

1. Nettoyer la partie en feuille de métal du capot supérieur (13) du retoucheur de document (A) avec de l'alcool.
2. Peler le papier de libération de l'éponge (N) et coller l'éponge sur la partie en feuille de métal.

#### [Installation du retoucheur de document et du MFP]

3. Approcher le retoucheur de document (A) du MFP et les connecter.  
Pour connecter le retoucheur de document (A) et le MFP, ne pas tenir le capot supérieur (13) du retoucheur de document.

#### Connexion de la ligne d'interconnexion

4. Connecter la ligne d'interconnexion (1) du retoucheur de document (A) au connecteur (2) à l'arrière du MFP.

#### Instalación de la esponja

1. Limpie con alcohol la sección de la hoja metálica situada debajo de la cubierta superior (13) del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Despegue el papel de la esponja (N) y pegue la esponja en la sección de la hoja metálica.

#### [Instalación del finalizador de documentos y la MFP]

3. Acerque el finalizador de documentos (A) a la MFP y conéctelos.  
Para conectar el finalizador de documentos (A) y la MFP, no sujete la cubierta superior (13) del finalizador de documentos.

#### Conexión de la línea de señales

4. Conecte la línea de señales (1) del finalizador de documentos (A) al conector (2) de la parte trasera de la MFP.

#### Anbringen des Schwamms

1. Reinigen Sie den Metallbereich unter der oberen Abdeckung (13) des Dokument-Finishers (A) mit Alkohol.
2. Ziehen Sie die Klebeschuttfolie vom Schwamm (N) ab, und kleben Sie den Schwamm dann an der Metallfläche an.

#### [Anbringen des Dokument-Finishers und des MFP]

3. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) nahe am MFP an, und verbinden Sie beide Komponenten miteinander.  
Wenn der Dokument-Finisher (A) und der MFP verbunden werden, darf die obere Abdeckung (13) des Dokument-Finishers nicht festgehalten werden.

#### Anschließen der Signalleitung

4. Schließen Sie die Signalleitung (1) des Dokument-Finishers (A) am Stecker (2) auf der Rückseite des MFP an.

#### Installazione della spugna

1. Pulire con alcool la sezione in lamiera sotto il pannello superiore (13) della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Staccare la carta protettiva dalla spugna (N) e far aderire la spugna alla sezione in lamiera.

#### [Installazione della finitrice di documenti e della MFP]

3. Avvicinare la finitrice di documenti (A) alla MFP e collegarle.  
Nel connettere la finitrice di documenti (A) e la MFP, non reggere il pannello superiore (13) della finitrice.

#### Connessione del cavo del segnale

4. Collegare il cavo del segnale (1) della finitrice di documenti (A) al connettore (2) sul retro della MFP.

#### 安装海绵

1. 用酒精清洁装订器 (A) 的上盖板 (13) 下的金属板部位。
2. 剥离海绵 (N) 上的隔离纸, 将海绵粘到金属板部位。

#### [ 安装装订器和 MFP]

3. 将装订器 (A) 放在 MFP 附近, 并将其连接。  
连接装订器 (A) 和 MFP 时, 不要按住装订器的上盖板 (13)。

#### 连接信号线

4. 将装订器 (A) 的信号线 (1) 连接到 MFP 后部的插头 (2)。

#### スポンジの貼り付け

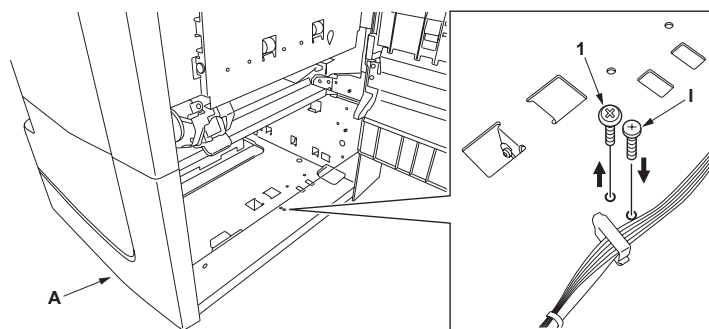
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の上カバー (13) の下の板金部をアルコール清掃する。
2. スポンジ (N) の剥離紙を剥ぎ取り、貼り付ける。

#### [ ドキュメントフィニッシャと MFP の取り付け]

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を MFP 本体へ寄せ、MFP 本体と接続する。  
接続する際、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の上カバー (13) を絶対に持たないこと。

#### 信号線の接続

4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の信号線 (1) を MFP 本体後側のコネクタ (2) に接続する。



### [Adjusting the document finisher height]

#### When using a monochrome machine

1. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Remove the screw (1) from the left bottom of the document finisher (A) and install the document finisher to the right hole using M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I).  
The more tightening M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I), the more document finisher height increases.

### [Ajustement de la hauteur du retoucheur de document]

#### Lors de l'utilisation d'une machine monochrome

1. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Retirer la vis (1) de la partie inférieure gauche du retoucheur de document (A) et installer le retoucheur de document sur l'orifice de droite à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).  
Plus la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) est serrée, plus la hauteur du retoucheur de document augmente.

### [Ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos]

#### Cuando utilice una máquina de blanco y negro

1. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Quite el tornillo (1) de la parte inferior izquierda del finalizador de documentos (A) e instale el finalizador de documentos en el agujero derecho utilizando los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).  
Cuanto más se aprieten los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) más aumentará la altura del finalizador de documentos.

### [Einstellen der Höhe des Dokument-Finishers]

#### Bei Verwendung einer Monochrommaschine

1. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (1) links unten am Dokument-Finisher (A), und befestigen Sie den Dokument-Finisher danach mit einer M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) am rechten Loch.  
Je stärker die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) festgezogen wird, desto größer ist der Höhenzuwachs für den Dokument-Finisher.

### [Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti]

#### In caso di utilizzo di un macchinario in bianco e nero

1. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Togliere la vite (1) dalla parte inferiore sinistra della finitrice di documenti (A) e installare la finitrice nel foro destro utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).  
Più si stringe la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I), più aumenta l'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

### [ 調整装订器高度 ]

#### 使用黑白机时

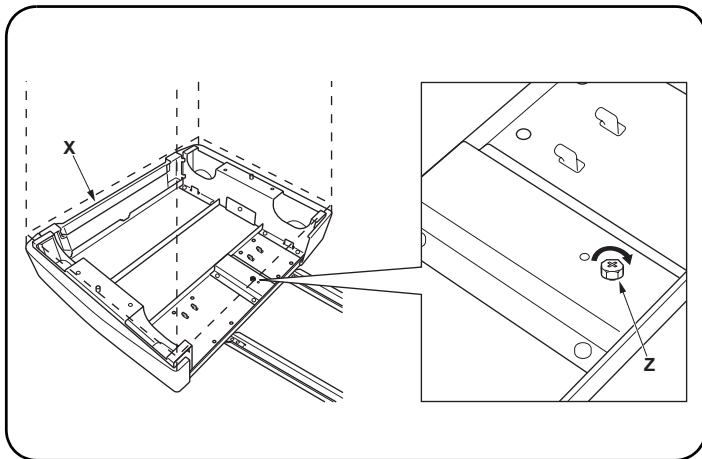
1. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
2. 从装订器 (A) 的左下部拆下螺钉 (1) 并用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 将装订器安装到右孔。  
M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 拧得越紧，装订器的高度就越高。

### [ ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整 ]

#### モノクロ機の場合

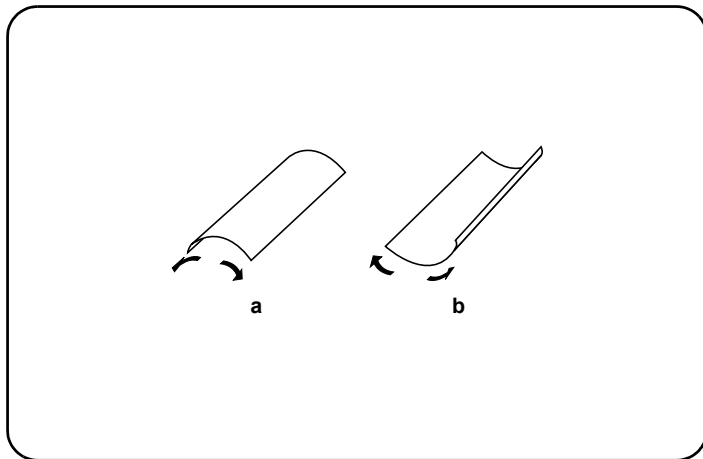
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。
  2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) 底部左側のビス (1) 1 本を外し、ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) を右側の穴へ取り付け。
- ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) を締めつけるほど、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが高くなる。





#### [When using the full-color machine]

1. Tighten M4 × 10 hexagon head screw (Z), which was temporarily tightened in step 4 on page 11, using a spanner.  
The more tightening M4 × 10 hexagon head screw (Z), the more document finisher height increases.



#### [Checking the curl]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. Perform a test copy to check the paper is fed.
3. Check the curl of the copy sample, and if the curl is tight, follow the next step to adjust it.

#### [Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs]

1. Serrer la vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 (Z) temporairement serrée à l'étape 4 de la page 11 à l'aide d'une clé de serrage.  
Plus la vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 (Z) est serrée, plus la hauteur du retoucheur de document augmente.

#### [Vérification de la boucle]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.
2. Effectuer une copie de test pour s'assurer que le papier est alimenté.
3. Vérifier la boucle sur l'échantillon de copie et si la boucle est serrée, suivre l'étape suivante pour l'ajuster.

#### [Cuando utilice la máquina a todo color]

1. Apriete el tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 (Z), que fue apretado temporalmente en el paso 4 de la página 11, utilizando una llave inglesa.  
Cuanto más se apriete el tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 (Z), más aumentará la altura del finalizador de documentos.

#### [Comprobación de la curvatura del papel]

1. Enchufe la MFP a una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. Haga una copia de prueba para asegurarse de que avance el papel.
3. Compruebe la curvatura del papel de la muestra de la copia y si ésta es mucha, siga el paso siguiente para ajustarla.

#### [Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbengeräts]

1. Ziehen Sie die im Schritt 4 auf Seite 11 vorübergehend angezogene M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube (Z) mit einem Schraubenschlüssel fest.  
Je stärker die M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube (Z) festgezogen wird, desto größer ist der Höhenzuwachs für den Dokument-Finisher.

#### [Überprüfen der Papierwellung]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an, und aktivieren Sie den Geräteschalter.
2. Machen Sie eine Testkopie, um sich zu vergewissern, dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.
3. Überprüfen Sie die Testkopie auf Wellung. Falls das Papier zu stark aufgerollt ist, folgen Sie dem nächsten Schritt zur Einstellung.

#### [In caso di utilizzo di un macchinario a colori]

1. Fissare la vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 (Z), stretta temporaneamente al punto 4 di pagina 11, utilizzando una chiave.  
Più si stringe la vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 (Z), più aumenta l'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

#### [Controllo dell'arricciatura]

1. Collegare la MFP alla presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova per verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
3. Controllare l'arricciatura della copia di prova e, se è notevole, procedere come indicato nel punto successivo per regolarla.

#### [使用全彩色机时]

1. 用扳子拧紧在第 11 页上第 4 步中暂时拧紧的 M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 (Z)。  
M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 (Z) 拧得越紧，装订器的高度就越高。

#### [检查卷曲状态]

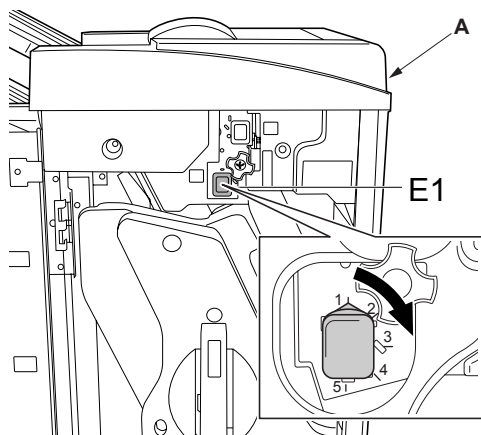
1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源开关。
2. 进行测试复印检查送纸。
3. 检查复印样本的卷曲状态，如果卷曲严重，按照下一步进行调整。

#### [フルカラー機の場合]

1. 11 ページ、手順 4 で仮締めした M4 × 10 六角ビス (Z) を、スパナ等を使い締め付ける。  
M4 × 10 六角ビス (Z) を締め付けるほど、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが高くなる。

#### [カール状態の確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. テストコピーを行い、通紙を確認する。
3. コピーサンプルのカール状態を確認し、カールが大きい場合、次の手順で調整を行う。



### Checking the curl

#### If the copy sample curl is tightly turning down:

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Pull the pressure roller bottom adjusting knob E1 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.

3. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).
4. Perform a test copy.
5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 until the paper becomes straight.

### Vérification de la boucle

#### Si la boucle de l'échantillon de copie est serrée vers le bas:

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Tirer la molette de réglage inférieure du rouleau de pression E1 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.

3. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
4. Effectuer une copie de test.
5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

### Comprobación de la curvatura

#### Si la muestra de la copia está muy curvada hacia abajo:

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Tire del control de ajuste inferior del rodillo de presión E1 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.

3. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
4. Haga una copia de prueba.
5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

### Überprüfen der Papierwellung

#### Wenn die Testkopie straff nach unten aufgerollt wird:

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Ziehen Sie den unteren Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E1 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.

3. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
4. Machen Sie eine Testkopie.
5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 2 bis 4, bis das Papier sich glättet.

### [Controllo dell'arricciatura]

#### Se la copia di prova è notevolmente arricciata verso il basso:

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Tirare la manopola di regolazione inferiore del rullo di pressione E1 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.

3. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
4. Eseguire una copia di prova.
5. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 2 al punto 4 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

### 检查卷曲状态

#### 如果复印样本严重向下卷曲时:

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
2. 将压力辊底部调整旋钮 E1 朝向自身方向拉, 并按照升序旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。

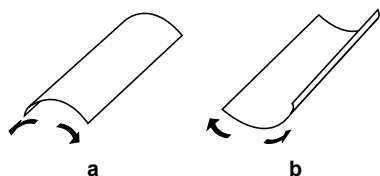
3. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
4. 进行测试复印。
5. 重复第 2 步到第 4 步直到纸张变直。

### カール状態の調整

#### コピーサンプルのカールが下向きに大きい場合 (a)

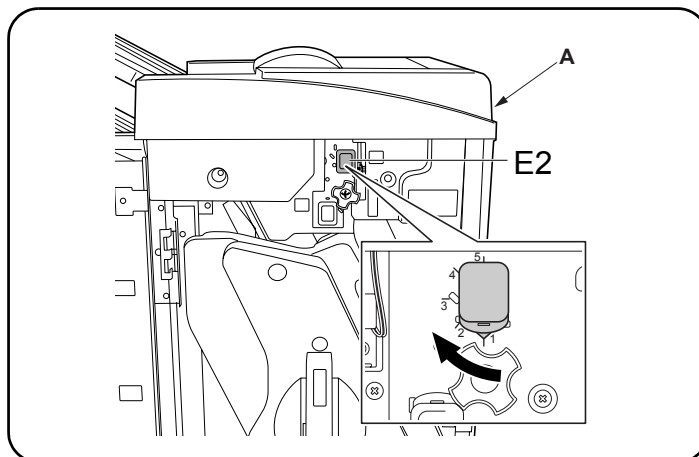
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の前カバーを開く。
2. 加圧ローラ下調整つまみ E1 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の前カバーを閉じる。
4. テストコピーを行う。
5. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。



**If the copy sample curl is tightly turning up:**

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Pull the pressure roller top adjusting knob E2 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.
3. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).



4. Perform a test copy.
5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 until the paper becomes straight.

**Si la boucle de l'échantillon de copie est serrée vers le haut:**

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Tirer la molette de réglage supérieure du rouleau de pression E2 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.
3. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

4. Effectuer une copie de test.
5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

**Si la muestra de la copia está muy curvada hacia arriba:**

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Tire del control de ajuste superior del rodillo de presión E2 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.
3. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

4. Haga una copia de prueba.
5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

**Wenn die Testkopie straff nach oben aufgerollt wird:**

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Ziehen Sie den oberen Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E2 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.
3. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

4. Machen Sie eine Testkopie.
5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 2 bis 4, bis das Papier sich glättet.

**Se la copia di prova è notevolmente arricciata verso l'alto:**

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Tirare la manopola di regolazione superiore del rullo di pressione E2 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.
3. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

4. Eseguire una copia di prova.
5. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 2 al punto 4 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

**如果复印样本严重向上卷曲时:**

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
2. 将压力辊顶部调整旋钮 E2 朝向自身方向拉, 并按照升序旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。
3. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

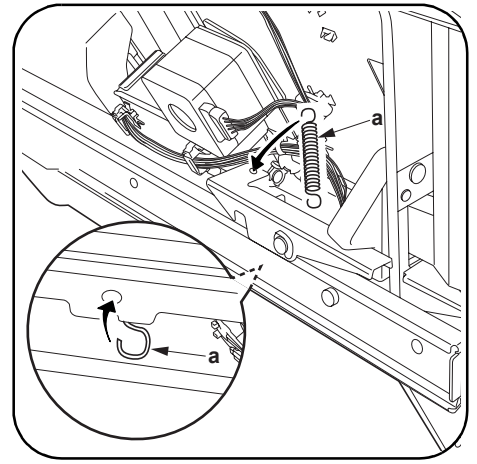
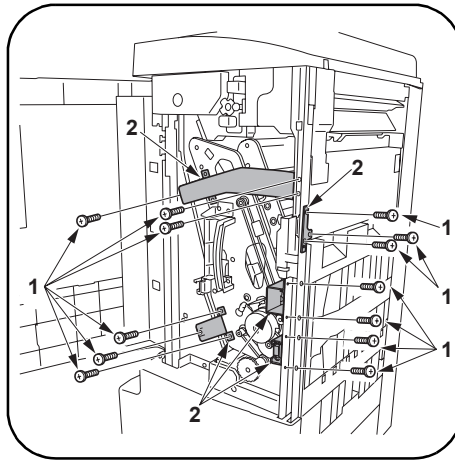
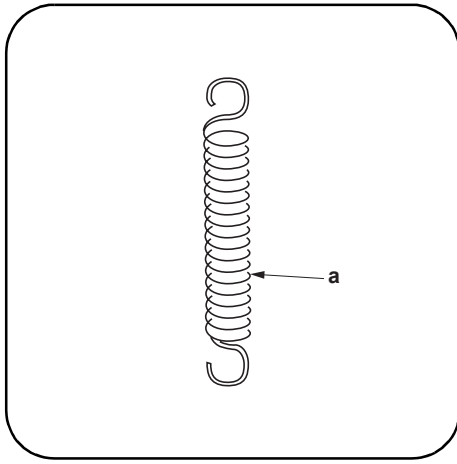
4. 进行测试复印。
5. 重复第 2 步到第 4 步直到纸张变直。

**コピーサンプルのカールが上向きに大きい場合 (b)**

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の前カバーを開く。
2. 加圧ローラ上調整つまみ E2 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。
3. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の前カバーを閉じる。

4. テストコピーを行う。
5. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 2 ～ 4 を繰り返す。





#### English

### Addition of procedure in installing the finisher

#### Supplied parts

a Spring hook..... 1

Step 2 on page 3 is changed to the following procedure. Carry out this step after step 5 on page 4.

2. Remove 13 screws (1) to remove five fittings (2).  
A yellow label is pasted on the fittings.

The following step is added after step 6 on page 5.

7. Remove the fixing tape from the handle of the internal tray and attach the spring hook (a).

#### Français

### Procédure additionnelle pour l'installation du retoucheur de document

#### Pièces fournies

a Crochet de ressort..... 1

L'étape 2 de la page 3 est changée pour la procédure suivante. Effectuer cette étape après l'étape 5 de la page 4.

2. Retirer 13 vis (1) pour retirer cinq fixations (2).  
Une étiquette jaune est collée sur les fixations.

L'étape suivante est ajoutée après l'étape 6 de la page 5.

7. Retirer la bande de fixation de la poignée du bac interne et fixer le crochet de ressort (a).

#### Español

### Adición al procedimiento de instalación del finalizador

#### Partes suministradas

a Gancho de resorte..... 1

El paso 2 en la página 3 cambia al siguiente procedimiento. Realice este paso después del paso 5 en la página 4.

2. Quite los 13 tornillos (1) para quitar los cinco accesorios (2).  
Hay una etiqueta amarilla pegada en los accesorios.

Se agrega el siguiente paso al paso 6 en la página 5.

7. Quite la cinta de fijación del mango de la bandeja interior y coloque el gancho de resorte (a).

#### Deutsch

### Ergänzung zum Installationsverfahren des Finishers

#### Gelieferte Teile

a Federhaken..... 1

Schritt 2 auf Seite 3 wurde zu dem folgenden Verfahren geändert. Führen Sie diesen Schritt nach Schritt 5 auf Seite 4 aus.

2. Entfernen Sie die 13 Schrauben (1) um die Befestigungselemente (2) zu entfernen.  
Ein gelber Aufkleber ist an den Befestigungselementen angebracht.

Der folgende Schritt wird nach Schritt 6 auf Seite 5 hinzugefügt.

7. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband vom Griff des Innenfachs, und den Federhaken (a) anbringen.

#### Italiano

### Procedura addizionale per l'installazione della finitrice

#### Parti fornite

a Gancio a molla..... 1

Il passo 2 a pagina 3 è stato sostituito con la seguente procedura. Eseguire questo passo dopo il passo 5 a pagina 4.

2. Togliere 13 viti (1) per rimuovere i cinque pezzi di raccordo (2).  
Un'etichetta gialla è incollata sui pezzi di raccordo (2).

Il seguente passo viene aggiunto dopo il passo 6 a pagina 5.

7. Staccare il nastro adesivo dalla maniglia del vassoio interno e fissare il gancio a molla (a).

#### 简体中文

### 装订器安装时的追加步骤

#### 附属部件

a 弹簧挂钩..... 1

将第 3 页的步骤 2 改成如下步骤，并在完成第 4 页步骤 5 之后进行。

2. 拆下 13 颗螺钉 (1) 以便拆下 5 个固定件 (2)。  
在固定件上贴有黄色标签。

在进行第 5 页的步骤 6 之后，追加如下步骤。

7. 从内部托盘上拆下把手固定胶带，然后安装弹簧挂钩 (a)。

#### 日本語

### フィニッシャ設置時の手順追加

#### 付属品

a バネフック..... 1

3 ページ、手順 2 を次の手順に変更する。この作業は、4 ページ、手順 5 の後に行う。

2. ビス (1) 13 本を外し、固定金具 (2) 5 個を取り外す。  
固定金具には、黄色のシールを貼っています。

5 ページ、手順 6 の後に、次の手順を追加

7. 内部トレイの取手の固定テープを剥がし、バネフック (a) を取り付け。

**NOTICE OF REVISION**  
**REVISIONSHINWEIS**  
**訂正情報**

**AVIS DE REVISION**  
**AVVISO DI REVISIONE**

**AVISO DE REVISION**  
**更正信息**

The illustration on “procedure 12” is revised as follows.

L'illustration de la “procédure 12” a été révisée comme suit.

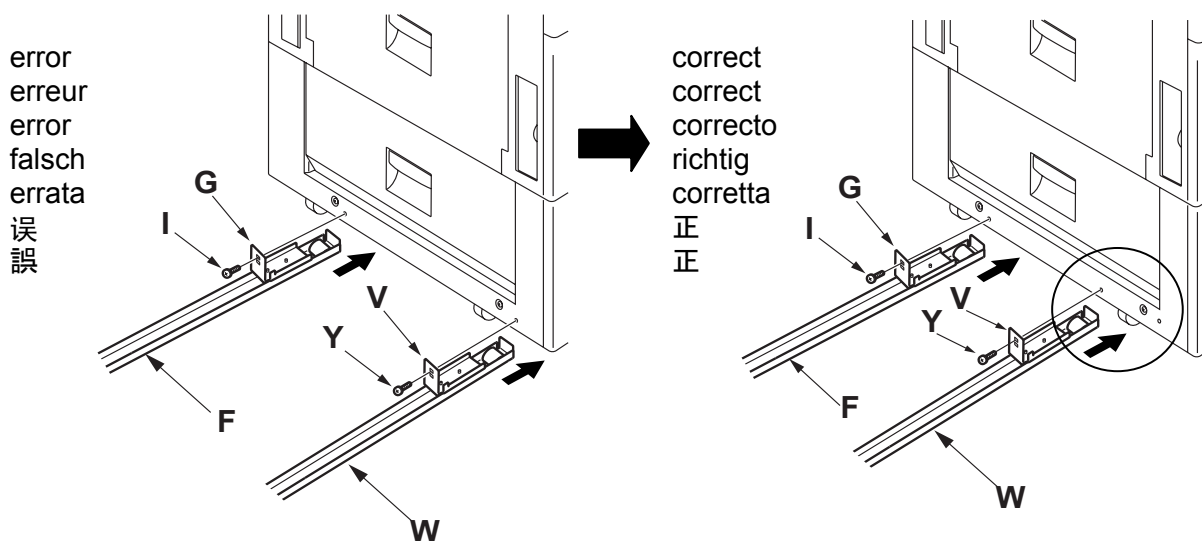
La figura en el “procedimiento 12” se revisa tal como se indica.

Die Abbildung zu “Vorgang 12” wird wie folgt revidiert.

L'illustrazione riportata nella sezione “Procedura 12” è stata riveduta come segue.

步骤12 因图示中有误，特此更正。

手順12 イラストに誤記がありましたので、訂正します。



The illustration on “procedure 16” is revised as follows.

L'illustration de la “procédure 16” a été révisée comme suit.

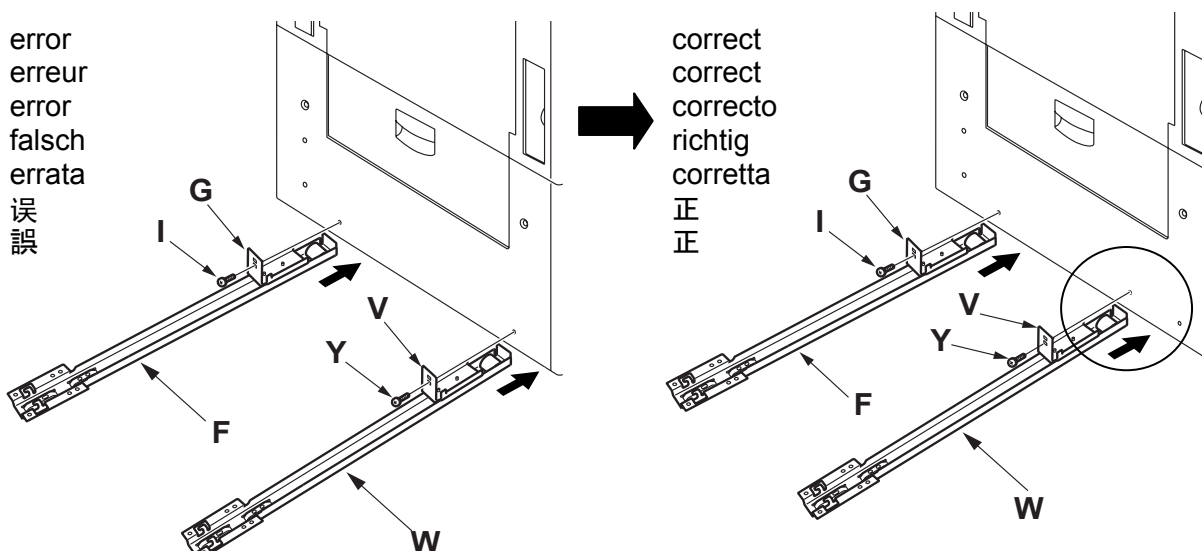
La figura en el “procedimiento 16” se revisa tal como se indica.

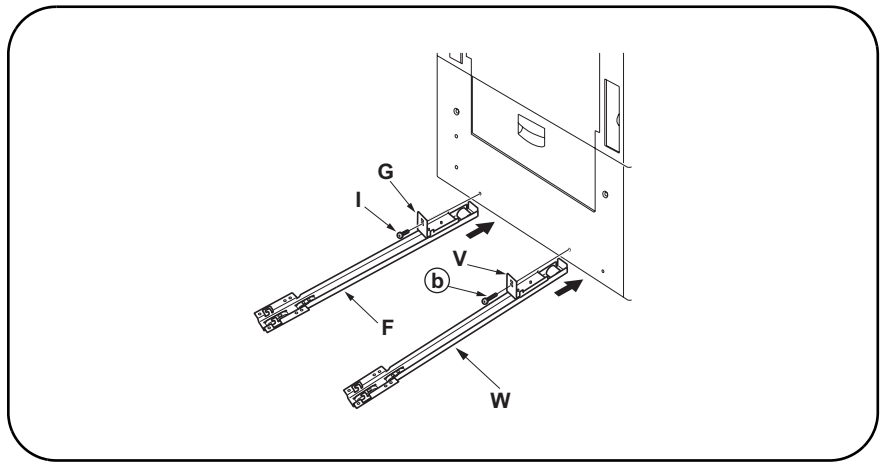
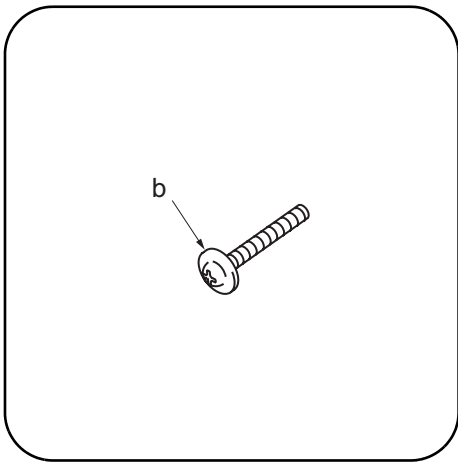
Die Abbildung zu “Vorgang 16” wird wie folgt revidiert.

L'illustrazione riportata nella sezione “Procedura 16” è stata riveduta come segue.

步骤16 因图示中有误，特此更正。

手順16 イラストに誤記がありましたので、訂正します。





## English Addition of supplied parts

The following part is added to the supplied parts for AK-710 on page 2 of Installation Guide for DF-710/AK-710. In accordance with this addition, the procedure is changed as shown right.

### [Addition]

- b TP Taptite S screw M4x 14 ..... 1
- **When the paper feeder of 500 sheets x 2 is used**  
One TP Taptite S screw M4 x 14 (b) is left.
- **When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used**  
One Taptite S screw M4 x 10 (I) is left.

## When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used

### [Change]

Step 16 on page 15 is changed as follows.

16. Fix the base slider B (G) with the Taptite S screw M4 x 10 (I) and the base slider B (V) with the TP Taptite S screw M4 x 14 (b) respectively.

**Put the Taptite S screw M4 x 10 (I) and TP Taptite S screw M4 x 14 (b) through the lower holes of the base sliders B (G) and (V).**

## Français Addition de pièces fournies

Les pièces suivantes ont été ajoutées aux pièces fournies pour AK-710 (à la page 2 du Guide d'installation pour DF-710/AK-710). La procédure est donc modifiée (voir ci-contre).

### [Addition]

- b Vis TP Taptite S M4 x 14 ..... 1
- **Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 500 feuilles x 2**  
Une vis TP Taptite S M4 x 14 (b) est superflue.
- **Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles**  
Une vis Taptite S M4 x 10 (I) est superflue.

## Lorsqu'on use l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles

### [Changement]

L'étape 16 de la page 15 est changée comme suit.

16. Fixer respectivement la règle de base B(G) avec la vis Taptite S M4 x 10(I) et la règle de base B (V) avec la vis TP Taptite S M4 x 14(b).

**Faire passer la vis Taptite S M4 x 10(I) et la vis TP Taptite S M4 x 14 (b) par les orifices inférieurs des règles de base B(G) et (V).**

## Español Adición de partes suministradas

La parte siguiente se adiciona a las partes suministradas para AK-710 en la página 2 de la Guía de instalación para el DF-710/AK-710. De acuerdo con esta adición, se cambia el procedimiento como se indica a la derecha.

### [Adición]

- b Tornillo TP Taptite S M4x 14 ..... 1
- **Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 500 hojas x 2**  
Sobra un tornillo TP Taptite S M4 x 14 (b).
- **Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 3000 hojas**  
Sobra un tornillo Taptite S M4 x 10 (I).

## Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 3000 hojas

### [Cambio]

El paso 16 en la página 15 cambia de la siguiente forma.

16. Fije el deslizador de base B (G) con el tornillo Taptite S M4 x 10 (I) y el deslizador de base B (V) con el tornillo TP Taptite S M4 x 14 (b) respectivamente.

**Ponga el tornillo Taptite S M4 x 10 (I) y el tornillo TP Taptite S M4 x 14 (b) a través de los agujeros inferiores de los deslizadores de base B (G) y (V).**

## Deutsch Ergänzung von gelieferten Teilen

Mit dem folgenden Teil wurden die gelieferten Teile für AK-710 auf Seite 2 der Installationsanleitung für DF-710/AK-710 ergänzt. Entsprechend dieser Ergänzung wurde das Verfahren wie rechts gezeigt geändert.

### [Ergänzung]

- b TP Taptite S-Schraube M4x 14 ..... 1
- **Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 500 Blätter x 2**  
Eine TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 14 (b) ist übrig.
- **Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter**  
Eine Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 10 (I) ist übrig.

## Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter

### [Änderung]

Schritt 16 auf Seite 15 wurde folgendermaßen geändert.

16. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 10 (I) bzw. den Basis-Schieber B (V) mit der TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 14 (b).

**Stecken Sie die Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 10 (I) und die TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 14 (b) durch die unteren Löcher der Basis-Schieber B (G) und (V).**

## Italiano Aggiunta alle parti fornite

La seguente parte è stata aggiunta alle parti fornite per l'AK710 a pagina 2 della Guida all'installazione del DF-710/AK-710. In seguito a ciò, la procedura è stata modificata nel modo mostrato qui a destra.

### [Aggiunta]

- b Vite TP Taptite S M4 x 14 ..... 1
- **Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 500 fogli x 2**  
Viene lasciata una vite TP Taptite S M4 x 14 (b)
- **Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli**  
Viene lasciata una vite Taptite S M4 x 10 (I)

## Quando si utilizza un alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli

### [Modifica]

Il passo 16 a pagina 15 viene modificato nel seguente modo.

16. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base B (G) con la vite Taptite S M4 x 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base B (V) con la vite TP Taptite S M4 x 14 (b).

**Fare passare la vite Taptite S M4 x 10 (I) e quella TP Taptite S M4 x 14 attraverso i fori inferiori degli scivoli di base B (G) e (V).**

## 简体中文 追加附属品

DF-710/AK-710 安装手册第 2 页的 AK-710 附属品按以下要求进行追加  
追加作业和变更按右记内容的要求进行。

### [追加]

- b 螺纹紧固 S 螺丝 M4 × 14TP ..... 1
- **使用 500 张 × 2 个供纸盒时**  
剩下 1 个螺纹紧固 S (b) 螺丝 M4 × 14TP。
- **使用 3000 张供纸盒时**  
剩下 1 个螺纹紧固 S (I) 螺丝 M4 × 10。

## 使用 3000 张供纸盒时

### [变更]

将第 15 页、步骤 16 按以下要求变更。

16. 用 1 个螺纹紧固 S (I) 螺丝 M4 × 10 紧固底座滑板 B (G)，用 1 个螺纹紧固 S (b) 螺丝 M4 × 14TP 紧固底座滑板 B (V)。

**将螺纹紧固 S (I) 螺丝 M4 × 10 和螺纹紧固 S (b) 螺丝 M4 × 14TP 穿过底座滑板 B (G) (V) 的下孔。**

## 日本語 付属品の追加

DF-710/AK-710 設置手順書 2 ページの AK-710 付属品を以下のように追加します。これに伴い、右記のように作業変更します。

### [追加]

- b ビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S ..... 1
- **500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダーの場合**  
ビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S (b) が 1 本余ります。
- **3000 枚ペーパーフィーダーの場合**  
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) が 1 本余ります。

## 3000 枚ペーパーフィーダーの場合

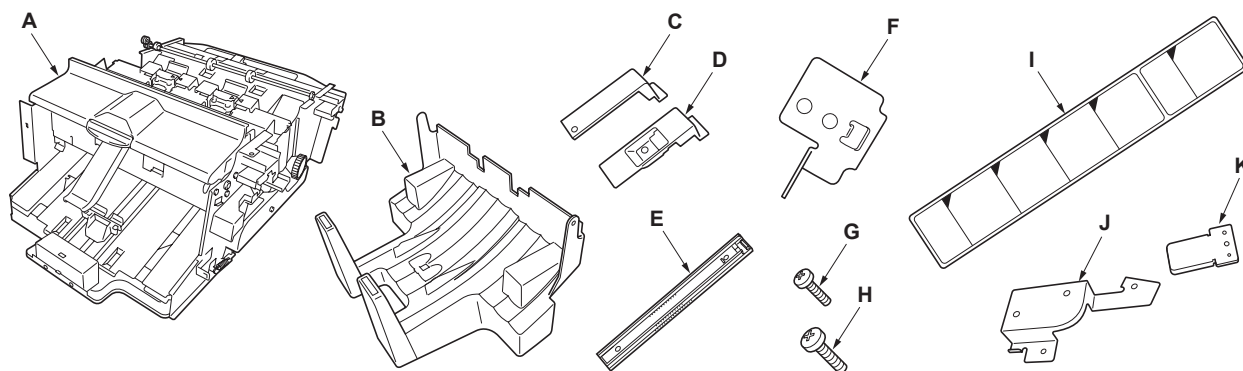
### [変更]

15 ページ、手順 16 を次のように変更します。

16. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で、ベーススライダ B (V) をビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S (b) 1 本でそれぞれ固定する。

**ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) ビスおよび M4 × 14TP タップタイト S (b) は、ベーススライダ B (G) (V) の下の穴に通すこと。**

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR CENTER-FOLDING UNIT**



## English

### Supplied parts

A Center-Folding unit .....	1
B Folding tray .....	1
C Rear cover .....	1
D Front cover .....	1
E Slider .....	2

F Douser .....	1
G M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw .....	2
H M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw .....	11
I Label .....	1
J Cover handle saddle .....	1

(K) will be used when the center-folding unit is installed on the full-color machine.

(K) will not be used in monochrome machine.  
K Cover V .....

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Plieuse .....	1
B Bac de pliage .....	1
C Capot arrière .....	1
D Capot avant .....	1
E Règle .....	2

F Ombreur .....	1
G Vis P taraudées M3 × 8 .....	2
H Vis S taraudées M4 × 8 .....	11
I Etiquette .....	1
J Poignée de capot à cheval .....	1

(K) utilisé lorsque la plieuse est installée sur la machine pleine couleurs.

(K) n'est pas utilisé sur une machine monochrome  
K Capot V .....

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Unidad de plegado .....	1
B Bandeja de plegado .....	1
C Cubierta posterior .....	1
D Cubierta frontal .....	1
E Deslizador .....	2

F Pantalla paraluz .....	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 .....	2
H Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 .....	11
I Etiqueta .....	1
J Placa de manilla de cubierta .....	1

(K) se utilizará cuando la unidad de plegado esté instalada en la máquina a todo color.

(K) no se utilizará en la máquina de blanco y negro.  
K Cubierta V .....

Asegúrese de quitar cualquier cinta de fijación o material de amortiguación colocado en las partes suministradas.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Mittenfalteinheit .....	1
B Faltfach .....	1
C Hintere Abdeckung .....	1
D Vordere Abdeckung .....	1
E Schieber .....	2

F Abschirmung .....	1
G M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	2
H M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	11
I Aufkleber .....	1
J Abdeckungsalter .....	1

(K) Ist erforderlich, wenn die Mittenfalteinheit am Vollfarbencopierer installiert wird.

(K) Ist bei Schwarzweiß-Kopierern nicht erforderlich.  
K Abdeckung V .....

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

## Italiano

### Parti fornite

A Unità di piegatura centrale .....	1
B Vassoio di piegatura .....	1
C Pannello posteriore .....	1
D Pannello anteriore .....	1
E Scivolo .....	2

F Dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) .....	1
G Viti con testa a croce P M3 × 8 .....	2
H Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 .....	11
I Etichetta .....	1
J Slitta coprimanopola .....	1

(K) da utilizzarsi quando l'unità di piegatura centrale è installata su un macchinario a colori.

(K) da non utilizzarsi su macchinari monocromi.  
K Pannello V .....

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

## 简体中文

### 附属部件

A 中缝装订—折页单元 .....	1
B 折叠托盘 .....	1
C 后盖板 .....	1
D 前盖板 .....	1
E 滑板 .....	2

F 探测器 .....	1
G M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 .....	2
H M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 .....	11
I 标签 .....	1
J 盖板手柄鞍座 .....	1

全彩色机上安装中缝装订—折页单元时将使用 (K)。

黑白机上不使用 (K)。

K 盖板 V .....

请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

## 日本語

### 付属品

A 中折りユニット .....	1
B 中折りトレイ .....	1
C カバー後 .....	1
D カバー前 .....	1
E スライダー .....	2

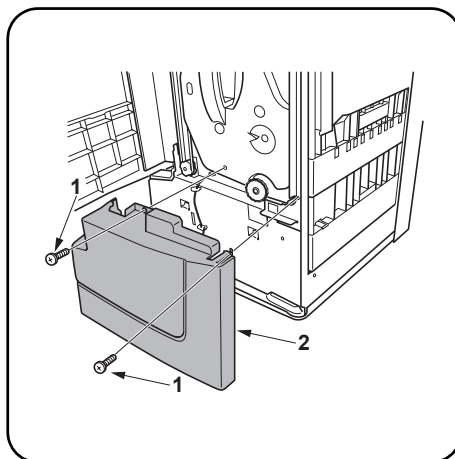
F 遮光板 .....	1
G ビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P .....	2
H ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S .....	11
I ラベル .....	1
J カバーハンドルサドル .....	1

フルカラー機に中折りユニットを設置する場合、(K) を使用する。

モノクロ機では (K) は使用しない。

K カバー V .....

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

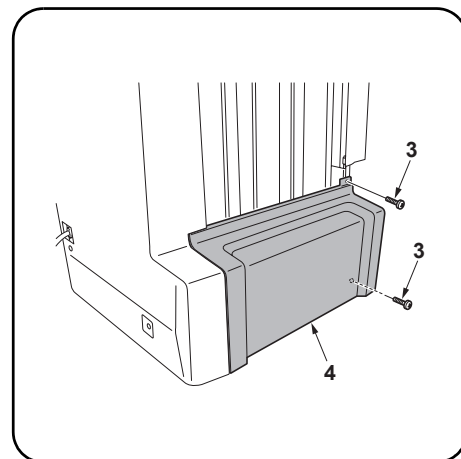


### Procedure

Before installing the center-folding unit, turn the MFP's main power switch off and unplug the power cable from the power supply. Install the document finisher, and then install the center-folding unit.

### Removing the cover.

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher.
2. Remove two screws (1) and remove lower front cover (2).



3. Remove two screws (3) and remove lower left cover (4).

### Procédure

Avant d'installer la plieuse mettre l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise de courant. Installer le finisseur de document, puis installer la plieuse.

### Enlèvement du capot.

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer deux vis (1) et retirer le capot avant inférieur (2).

3. Retirer deux vis (3) et retirer le capot gauche inférieur (4).

### Procedimiento

Antes de instalar la unidad de plegado, desconecte el interruptor de alimentación principal de la MFP y desenchufe el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la unidad de plegado.

### Extracción de la cubierta.

1. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (1) y la cubierta frontal inferior (2).

3. Quite dos tornillos (3) y la cubierta inferior izquierda (4).

### Einbauverfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Mittenfalteinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Mittenfalteinheit an.

### Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (1) und danach die vordere untere Abdeckung (2).

3. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (3) und danach die vordere untere Abdeckung (4).

### Procedura

Prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa. Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di piegatura centrale.

### Rimuovere il pannello.

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice.
2. Togliere due viti (1) e rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (2).

3. Togliere due viti (3) e rimuovere il pannello inferiore sinistro (4).

### 步骤

安装中缝装订一折页单元前, 请关闭 MFP 的主电源开关并从电源拔下电源线。安装文档整理器, 然后安装中缝装订一折页单元。

### 拆下盖板。

1. 打开文档整理器的前盖板。
2. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1), 然后拆下前下盖板 (2)。

3. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (3), 然后拆下左下盖板 (4)。

### 設置手順

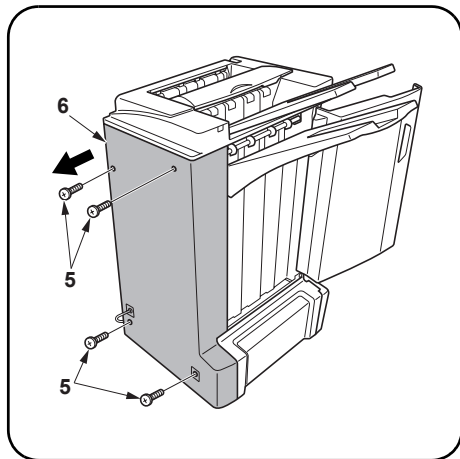
中折りユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、中折りユニットを設置すること。

### カバーの取り外し

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開く。
2. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、前下カバー (2) を取り外す。

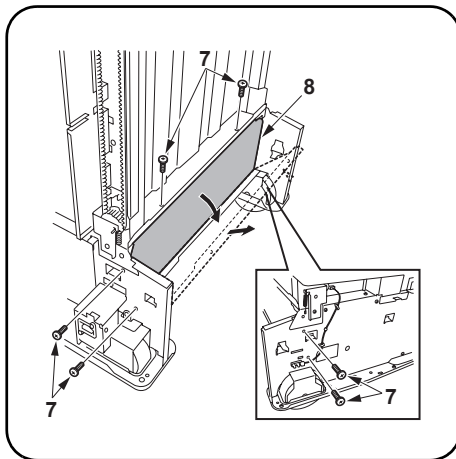
3. ビス (3) 2 本を外し、左下カバー (4) を取り外す。





#### Removing the back cover.

4. Remove the four screws (5) to remove the back cover (6) from the document finisher.



#### Removing the reinforcing plate.

5. Remove six screws (7) to remove the left reinforcing plate (8). Tilt the left reinforcing plate (8) to pull out upwards.

#### Installing the back cover.

6. Use the four screws (5) which was removed from the document finisher in step 4 and reinstall the back cover (6).

#### Enlèvement du capot arrière.

4. Retirer les quatre vis (5) pour retirer le capot arrière (6) du finisseur de document.

#### Enlèvement de la plaque de renfort.

5. Retirer six vis (7) pour retirer la plaque de renfort de gauche (8). Incliner la plaque de renfort de gauche (8) pour la faire ressortir vers le haut.

#### Installation du capot arrière.

6. Utiliser les quatre vis (5) retirées du finisseur de document à l'étape 4 et réinstaller le capot arrière (6).

#### Extracción de la cubierta posterior.

4. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) para quitar la cubierta posterior (6) del finalizador de documentos.

#### Extracción de la placa de refuerzo.

5. Quite seis tornillos (7) para quitar la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8). Incline la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8) para sacarla hacia arriba.

#### Instalación de la cubierta posterior.

6. Utilice los cuatro tornillos (5) que fueron quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 4 y vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (6).

#### Entfernen der hinteren Abdeckung.

4. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) vom Dokument-Finisher, um die hintere Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.

#### Entfernen der Verstärkungsplatte.

5. Entfernen Sie die sechs Schrauben (7), um die linke Verstärkungsplatte (8) auszubauen. Neigen Sie die Verstärkungsplatte (8), um sie nach außen herauszuziehen.

#### Anbringen der hinteren Abdeckung.

6. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (5), welche im Schritt 4 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurden, und bringen Sie danach die hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder an.

#### Rimuovere il pannello posteriore.

4. Togliere le quattro viti (5) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (6) dalla finitrice.

#### Rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo.

5. Togliere sei viti (7) per rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8). Inclinare la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8) ed estrarla verso l'alto.

#### Installare il pannello posteriore.

6. Utilizzare le quattro viti (5) rimosse dalla finitrice nel passo 4 e reinstallare il pannello posteriore (6).

#### 拆下后盖板。

4. 从文档整理器上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (5) 以便拆下后盖板 (6)。

#### 拆下加强板。

5. 拆下 6 颗螺钉 (7) 以便拆下左加强板 (8)。将左加强板 (8) 倾斜向上拉出。

#### 安装后盖板。

6. 用在步骤 4 中从文档整理器上拆下的 4 颗螺钉 (5) 重新安装后盖板 (6)。

#### 後カバーの取り外し

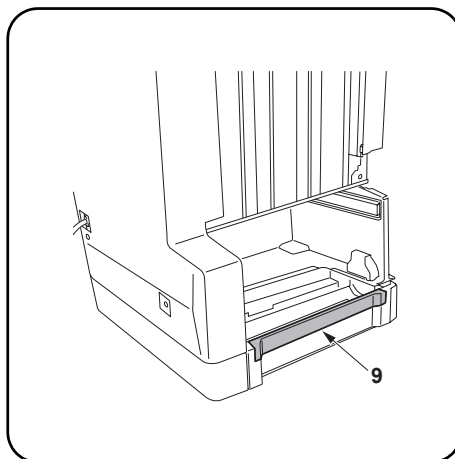
4. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、後カバー (6) を取り外す。

#### 補強板の取り外し

5. ビス (7) 6 本を外し、補強板左 (8) を取り外す。補強板左 (8) は斜めに傾け、上方向へ取り外すこと。

#### 後カバーの取り付け

6. 手順 4 で外した後カバー (6) をビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。

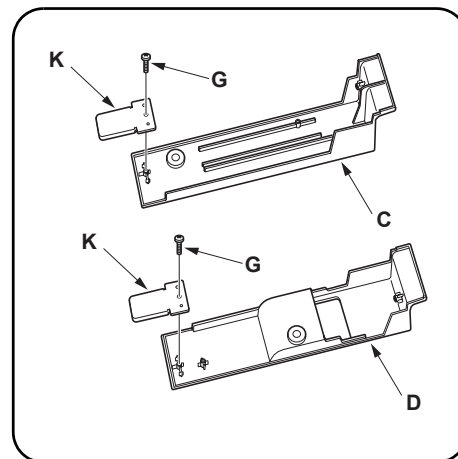


**[To install the center-folding unit on the full-color machine]**

7. Steps 8 and 9 below will be required when the center-folding unit (A) is installed on the full-color machine.

**Removing the divided part.**

8. Remove divided part (9) from the base where the document finisher is located.



**Reassembling the covers.**

9. Install cover V (K) onto each of rear cover (C) and front cover (D) respectively with a M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (G).

**[Installation de la plieuse sur la machine pleine couleurs]**

7. Les étapes 8 et 9 ci-dessous sont nécessaires lorsque la plieuse (A) est installée sur la machine pleine couleurs.

**Enlèvement de la pièce divisée.**

8. Retirer la pièce divisée (9) de la base sur laquelle le finisseur de document est situé.

**Remontage des capots.**

9. Installer le capot V (K) sur le capot arrière (C) et sur le capot avant (D) à l'aide d'une vis P taraudée M3 × 8 chaque (G).

**[Para instalar la unidad de plegado en la máquina a todo color]**

7. Los pasos 8 y 9 de abajo serán necesarios cuando la unidad de plegado (A) se instale en la máquina a todo color.

**Extracción de la parte dividida.**

8. Quite la parte dividida (9) de la base donde se encuentre situado el finalizador de documentos.

**Reinstalación de las cubiertas.**

9. Instale la cubierta V (K) en cada cubierta posterior (C) y cubierta frontal (D) respectivamente con un tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 (G).

**[Anbringen der Mittenfalteinheit am Vollfarbepkopierer]**

7. Die nachfolgenden Schritte 8 und 9 sind erforderlich, wenn die Mittenfalteinheit (A) am Vollfarbepkopierer installiert wird.

**Entfernen der Abtrennung.**

8. Entfernen Sie die Abtrennung (9) von der Grundplatte des Dokument-Finishers.

**Anbringen der Abdeckungen.**

9. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung V (K) auf jede hintere Abdeckung (C) bzw. vordere Abdeckung (D) mit einer M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbandschraube (G) an.

**[Installare l'unità di piegatura centrale su un macchinario a colori]**

7. I successivi passi 8 e 9 sono necessari quando l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) viene installata su macchinari a colori.

**Rimuovere la parte divisa.**

8. Rimuovere la parte divisa (9) dalla base dove la finitrice è situata.

**Riassemblare i pannelli.**

9. Installare il pannello V (K) su ognuno dei pannelli posteriore (C) e anteriore (D) rispettivamente con viti con testa a croce P M4 × 8 (G).

**[ 若要在全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元 ]**

7. 在全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 时, 需要执行下面的步骤 8 和步骤 9。

**拆下分离部分。**

8. 从文档整理器的底座上拆下分离部分 (9)。

**重新组装盖板。**

9. 分别用 1 颗 M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 (G) 将盖板 V (K) 安装到每个后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D) 上。

**[ フルカラー機に設置する場合 ]**

7. フルカラー機に中折りユニット (A) を設置する場合、次の手順 8、9 の作業が必要となる。

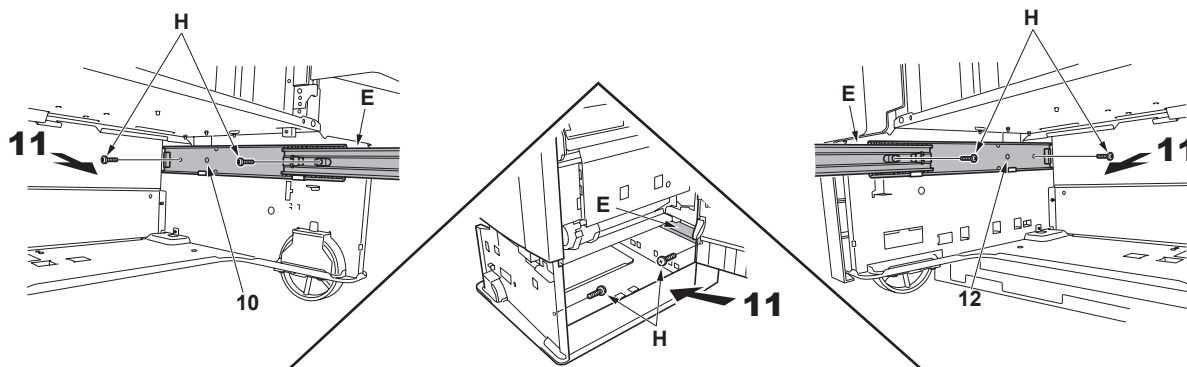
**割部を取り除く**

8. ドキュメントフィニッシャを乗せている組立ベースの割部 (9) を取り除く。

**カバーの組み立て**

9. カバー後 (C) とカバー前 (D) に、カバーV(K) をビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P(G) 1 本でそれぞれ取り付ける。





### Installing the slider.

10. Align slider (E) with projection (10) on the front-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.
11. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H). To tighten the screw at the rear side of slider (E) easily, open the right cover of the document finisher and secure the screw from the right side (11) of the document finisher.

12. Align slider (E) with projection (12) on the back-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.

13. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

### Installation de la règle.

10. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (10) de la plaque avant du finisseur de document et installer la règle.
11. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H). Pour pouvoir serrer facilement la vis à l'arrière de la règle (E), ouvrir le capot de droite du finisseur de document et fixer la vis depuis le côté droit (11) du finisseur de document.

12. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (12) à l'arrière de la plaque latérale du finisseur de document et installer la règle.

13. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

### Instalación del deslizador.

10. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (10) de la placa del lado frontal del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.
11. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H). Para apretar fácilmente el tornillo del lado posterior del deslizador (E), abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y asegure el tornillo desde el lado derecho (11) del finalizador de documentos.

12. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (12) de la placa del lado posterior del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.

13. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

### Anbringen des Schiebers.

10. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (10) auf der vorderen Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.
11. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H). Um die Schraube auf der Rückseite des Schiebers (E) ohne Problems festzuziehen, öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und ziehen Sie die Schraube von der rechten Seite (11) des Dokument-Finishers her an.

12. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (12) auf der hinteren Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.

13. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit zwei M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H).

### Installare lo scivolo.

10. Installare lo scivolo (E) allineandolo alla parte sporgente (10) sulla lastra anteriore della finitrice.
11. Fare uscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H). Per fissare con facilità la vite alla parte posteriore dello scivolo (E), aprire il pannello destro della finitrice e serrare la vite dal lato destro (11) della finitrice.

12. Allineare lo scivolo (E) alla parte sporgente (12) sulla lastra posteriore della finitrice e installarlo.

13. Far fuoriuscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

### 安裝滑板。

10. 將滑板 (E) 與文档整理器前側板上的突出部 (10) 對齊並重新安裝滑板。
11. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 顆 M4 x 8 攻絲緊固型 S 螺釘 (H) 固定。若要輕鬆拧紧滑板 (E) 後部的螺釘，打開文档整理器的右蓋板并从文档整理器右侧 (11) 固定螺釘。

12. 將滑板 (E) 与文档整理器后側板上的突出部 (12) 對齊并重新安裝滑板。

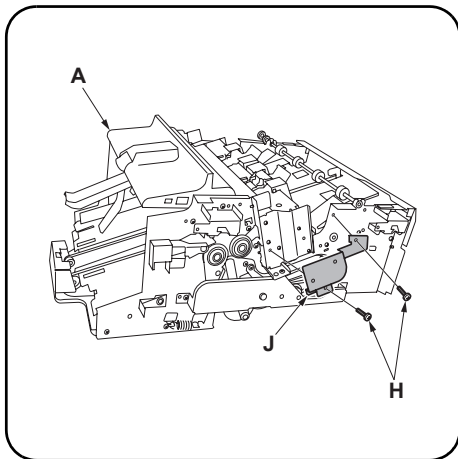
13. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 顆 M4 x 8 攻絲緊固型 S 螺釘 (H) 固定。

### スライダの取り付け

10. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャー前側板の突起 (10) に合わせて取り付け。
11. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。スライダ (E) 後側のビスは、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの右カバーを開き、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの右方向 (11) から作業すると締めやすい。

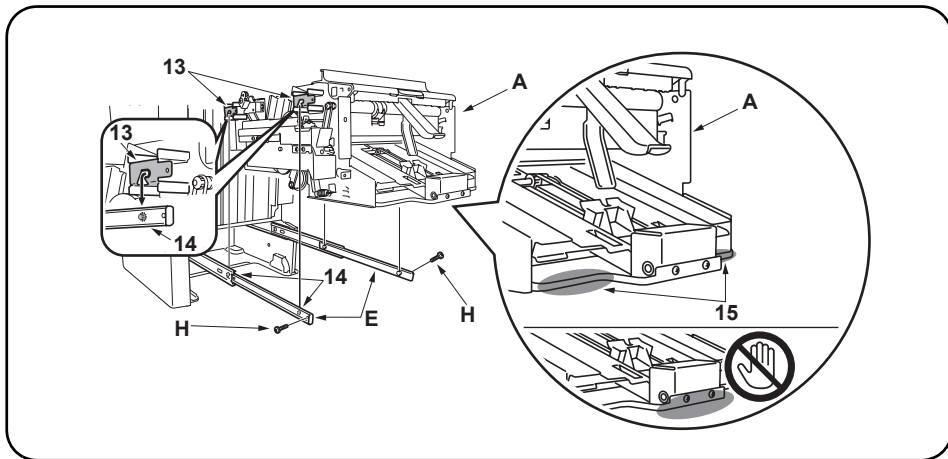
12. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャー後側板の突起 (12) に合わせて取り付け。

13. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。



#### Installing the cover handle saddle.

14. Install cover handle saddle (J) on the front side of center-folding unit (A) with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).



#### Installing the center-folding unit.

15. Pull out sliders (E) till they stop.
16. Align pawl (13) of center-folding unit (A) with projection (14) of slider (E) and place the center-folding unit onto the slider.  
**Be sure to hold both the rear bottom and front side (15) of center-folding unit (A) and place the unit onto slider (E).**
17. Secure center-folding unit (A) with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

#### Installation de la poignée de capot à cheval.

14. Installer la poignée de capot à cheval (J) sur l'avant de la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

#### Installation de la plieuse.

15. Faire ressortir les règles (E) jusqu'à ce qu'elles s'arrêtent.
16. Aligner le cliquet (13) de la plieuse (A) sur la saillie (14) de la règle (E) et mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle.  
**Veiller à tenir le fond arrière et l'avant (15) de la plieuse (A) et à mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle (E).**
17. Fixer la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

#### Instalación de la placa de manilla de cubierta.

14. Instale la placa de manilla de cubierta (J) en el lado frontal de la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

#### Instalación de la unidad de plegado.

15. Saque los deslizadores (E) hasta que se paren.
16. Alinee el trinquete (13) de la unidad de plegado (A) con el resalto (14) del deslizador (E) y coloque la unidad de plegado en el deslizador.  
**Asegúrese de sujetar el lado inferior posterior y el central (15) de la unidad de plegado (A) y colocar la unidad en el deslizador (E).**
17. Asegure la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

#### Anbringen des Abdeckungshalters.

14. Bringen Sie den Abdeckungshalter (J) auf der Vorderseite der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) an.

#### Anbringen der Mittenfalteinheit.

15. Ziehen Sie die Schieber (E) soweit heraus, bis Sie anschlagen.
16. Richten Sie die Sperrklinke (13) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit dem Vorsprung (14) des Schiebers (E) aus, und setzen Sie danach die Mittenfalteinheit auf den Schieber.  
**Halten Sie die untere Hinter- und Vorderseite (15) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) fest und setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit danach auf den Schieber (E).**
17. Ziehen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) fest.

#### Installare la slitta coprimanopola.

14. Installare la slitta coprimanopola (J) sul lato anteriore dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) per mezzo di due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

#### Installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.

15. Tirare in fuori gli scivolo (E) finché si bloccano.
16. Allineare il dentello (13) dell'unità centrale di piegatura (A) alla parte sporgente (14) dello scivolo (E) e posarvi sopra l'unità stessa.  
**Assicurarsi di reggere bene sia la parte posteriore bassa che quella anteriore (15) dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) e posare l'unità sullo scivolo (E).**
17. Fissare l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

#### 安装盖板手柄鞍座。

14. 用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 将盖板手柄鞍座 (J) 安装到中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的前部。

#### 安装中缝装订一折页单元。

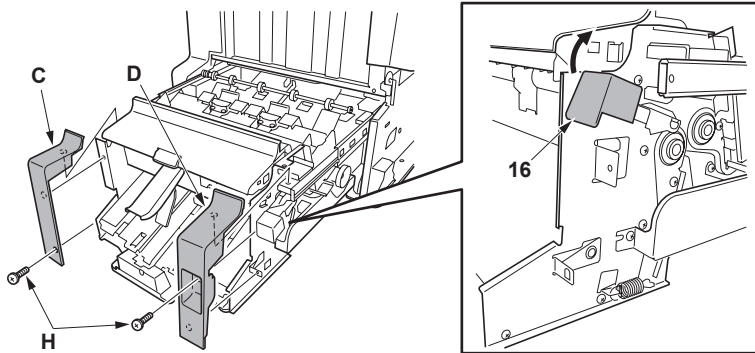
15. 拉出滑板 (E) 直到其停止下来。
16. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的卡爪 (13) 对准滑板 (E) 的突出部 (14), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板上。  
**请务必握住中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的后部和前部 (15), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板 (E) 上。**
17. 用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定中缝装订一折页单元 (A)。

#### カバーハンドルサドルの取り付け

14. カバーハンドルサドル (J) を中折りユニット (A) 前側にビス M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で取り付ける。

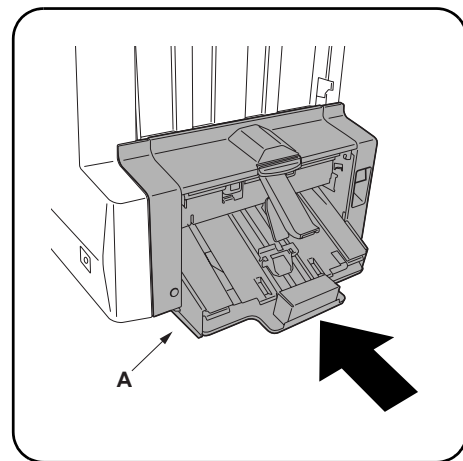
#### 中折りユニットの取り付け

15. スライダ (E) を最後まで引き出す。
16. 中折りユニット (A) のツメ (13) をスライダ (E) の突起 (14) に合わせて乗せる。  
**中折りユニット (A) は、必ず後側の底部と前側の (15) の部分を持ってスライダ (E) に乗せること。**
17. M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で中折りユニット (A) を固定する。



### Installing covers.

18. Fit the projections at the rear side of rear cover (C) and front cover (D) into the center-folding unit's holes and install the covers.  
It is easy to install front cover (D) by lifting center-folding unit releasing lever (16).  
Install the cover assembled in step 6 when the center-folding unit is installed into the full-color machine.
19. Use two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H) to secure rear cover (C) and front cover (D).



20. Store center-folding unit (A) into the document finisher.

If center-folding unit (A) is not stored completely inside the document finisher, the unit cannot be fixed in the document finisher and center-folding unit (A) won't operate properly.

### Installation des capots.

18. Ajuster les saillies à l'arrière du capot arrière (C) et du capot avant (D) dans les orifices de la plieuse et installer les capots.  
Il est facile d'installer le capot avant (D) en soulevant le levier de relâchement de la plieuse (16).  
Installer le capot assemblé à l'étape 6 lorsque la plieuse est installée dans la machine pleine couleurs.
19. Utiliser deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H) pour fixer le capot arrière (C) et le capot avant (D).

20. Ranger la plieuse (A) dans le finisseur de document.

Si la plieuse (A) n'est pas complètement rangée à l'intérieur du finisseur de document, la plieuse ne peut pas être fixée dans le finisseur de document et la plieuse (A) ne fonctionne pas correctement.

### Instalación de cubiertas.

18. Coloque los resaltes del lado posterior de la cubierta posterior (C) y de la cubierta frontal (D) dentro de los agujeros de la unidad de plegado e instale las cubiertas.  
Es más fácil instalar la cubierta frontal (D) levantando la palanca de liberación de la unidad de plegado (16).  
Instale la cubierta ensamblada en el paso 6 cuando la unidad de plegado esté instalada en la máquina a todo color.
19. Utilice dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H) para asegurar la cubierta posterior (C) y la cubierta frontal (D).

20. Meta la unidad de plegado (A) en el finalizador de documentos.

Si la unidad de plegado (A) no se mete completamente en el finalizador de documentos, ésta no podrá fijarse en el finalizador de documentos y no funcionará correctamente.

### Anbringen der Abdeckungen.

18. Führen Sie die Vorsprünge an der Rückseite der hinteren Abdeckung (C) sowie der vorderen Abdeckung (D) in die Löcher der Mittenfalteinheit ein, und bringen Sie danach die Abdeckungen an.  
Um den Einbau der vorderen Abdeckung (D) zu erleichtern, ist der Entriegelungshebel (16) der Mittenfalteinheit anzuheben.  
Bringen Sie nun die in Schritt 6 zusammengesetzte Abdeckung an, nachdem die Mittenfalteinheit in den Vollfarbepkopierer eingebaut wurde.
19. Verwenden Sie die beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H), um die hintere Abdeckung (C) und die vordere Abdeckung (D) zu befestigen.

20. Setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) in den Dokument-Finisher ein.

Wenn die Mittenfalteinheit (A) nicht vollständig in den Dokument-Finisher eingesetzt wurde, kann die Mittenfalteinheit nicht im Dokument-Finisher befestigt werden, und die Mittenfalteinheit (A) funktioniert dann nicht richtig.

### Installare i pannelli.

18. Inserire le parti sporgenti sul retro dei pannelli posteriore (C) e anteriore (D) nei fori dell'unità di piegatura centrale e installare i pannelli. È semplice installare il pannello anteriore (D) sollevando la leva di rilascio unità (16). Installare il pannello assemblato nel passo 6 nel momento in cui l'unità di piegatura centrale è installata nel macchinario a colori.
19. Utilizzare due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H) per fissare i pannelli posteriore (C) ed anteriore (D).

20. Inserire perfettamente l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) nella finitrice.

Se l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non è del tutto inserita all'interno della finitrice, è impossibile fissarla alla finitrice stessa e l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non funzionerà correttamente.

### 安装盖板。

18. 将后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D) 后部的突出部固定在中缝装订一折页单元孔中并安装盖板。  
将中缝装订一折页单元释放杆 (16) 抬起以便更容易安装前盖板 (D)。  
在全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元时, 安装在步骤 6 中组装的盖板。
19. 使用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D)。

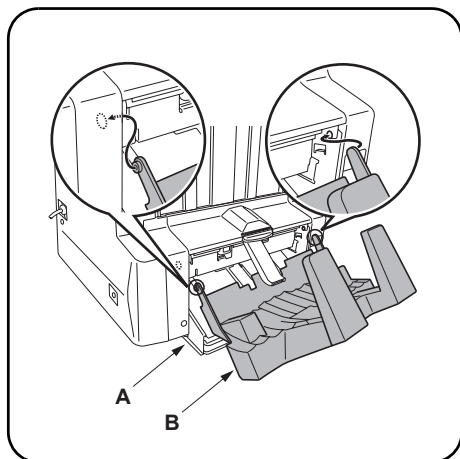
20. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 保存到文档整理器中。

如果中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 未完全保存到文档整理器中, 则无法在文档整理器中固定装置并且中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 无法正常工作。

### カバーの取り付け

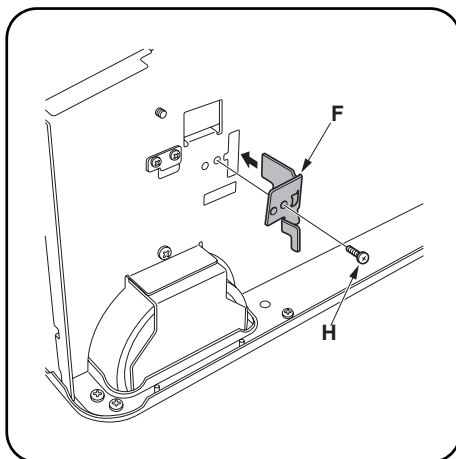
18. カバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を、裏側の突起を中折りユニット (A) の穴にはめ込み、取り付ける。  
カバー前 (D) は、中折りユニット解除レバー (16) を上げると取り付けやすい。  
フルカラー機に取り付ける場合、手順 9 で組み立てたカバーを取り付けること。
19. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本でカバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を固定する。

20. 中折りユニット (A) をドキュメントフィニッシャーに収納する。  
確実に収納されていない場合、中折りユニット (A) がドキュメントフィニッシャーに固定されず、中折りユニット (A) が正常に動作しない。



#### Installing the folding tray.

21. Fit the projection of folding tray (B) into the inside hole of center-folding unit (A).



#### Installing the douser.

- Before installing the douser (F), make sure that center-folding unit (A) is securely stored.  
22. Insert douser (F) into the lower front left of the document finisher and secure the douser with a M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw (H).

#### Reinstalling the cover.

23. Reinstall the lower front cover that was removed in step 2 in place with two screws (1).  
24. Close the front cover of the document finisher.

#### Installation du bac de pliage.

21. Ajuster la saillie du bac de pliage (B) dans l'orifice intérieur de la plieuse (A).

#### Installation de l'ombreur.

- Avant d'installer l'ombreur (F), s'assurer que la plieuse (A) est bien rangée.  
22. Insérer l'ombreur (F) dans l'avant gauche inférieur du finisseur de document et fixer l'ombreur à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (H).

#### Remontage du capot.

23. Remonter le capot avant inférieur retiré à l'étape 2 à l'aide de deux vis (1).  
24. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

#### Instalación de la bandeja plegable.

21. Coloque el resalto de la bandeja plegable (B) dentro del agujero de la unidad de plegado (A).

#### Instalación de la pantalla paraluz.

- Antes de instalar la pantalla paraluz (F), asegúrese de que la unidad de plegado (A) esté firmemente metida.  
22. Introduzca la pantalla paraluz (F) en la parte frontal inferior izquierda del finalizador de documentos y asegure la pantalla paraluz con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

#### Reinstalación de la cubierta.

23. Reinstale en su lugar con dos tornillos (1) la cubierta frontal inferior que fue quitada en el paso 2.  
24. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

#### Anbringen des Faltfachs.

21. Führen Sie den Vorsprung des Faltfachs (B) in das innere Loch der Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein.

#### Anbringen der Abschirmung.

- Vor dem Anbringen der Abschirmung (F) ist sicherzustellen, dass die Mittenfalteinheit (A) sicher eingesetzt ist.  
22. Stecken Sie die Abschirmung (F) in die untere linke Vorderseite des Dokument-Finishers ein, und ziehen Sie die Abschirmung danach mit einer M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (H) fest.

#### Anbringen der Abdeckung.

23. Bringen Sie die in Schritt 2 entfernte untere Frontabdeckung wieder an und verwenden Sie hierfür die beiden Schrauben (1).  
24. Schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

#### Installare il vassoio di piegatura.

21. Inserire la parte sporgente del vassoio di piegatura (B) nel foro interno dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).

#### Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser).

- Prima di procedere all'installazione del dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F), assicurarsi che l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) sia perfettamente inserita.  
22. Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F) nella facciata inferiore a sinistra della finitrice e fissarlo con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

#### Reinstallare il pannello.

23. Reinstallare nella sua posizione originale il pannello anteriore inferiore rimosso nel passo 2 con due viti (1).  
24. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

#### 安装折叠托盘。

21. 将折叠托盘 (B) 的突出部固定在中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的内部孔。

#### 安装探测器。

- 安装探测器 (F) 前, 请确定中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 已牢固地保存。  
22. 将探测器 (F) 插入文档整理器的左前下侧, 并用 1 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定探测器。

#### 重新安装盖板。

23. 用 2 颗螺钉 (1) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的前下盖板。  
24. 关闭文档整理器的前盖板。

#### 中折りトレイの取り付け

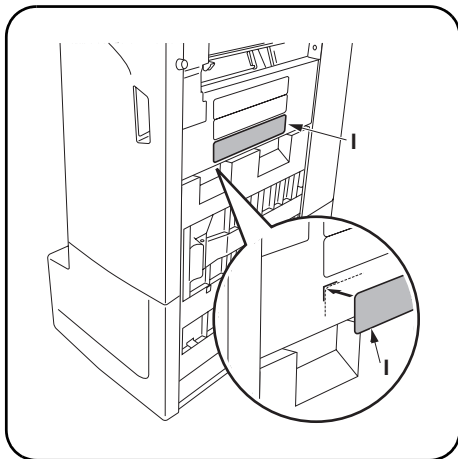
21. 中折りトレイ (B) の突起を中折りユニット (A) の内側の穴にはめ、取り付ける。

#### 遮光板の取り付け

- 遮光板 (F) を取り付ける前に、中折りユニット (A) が確実に収納されていることを確認すること。  
22. 遮光板 (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャー正面の左下へ差し込み、M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 1 本で固定する。

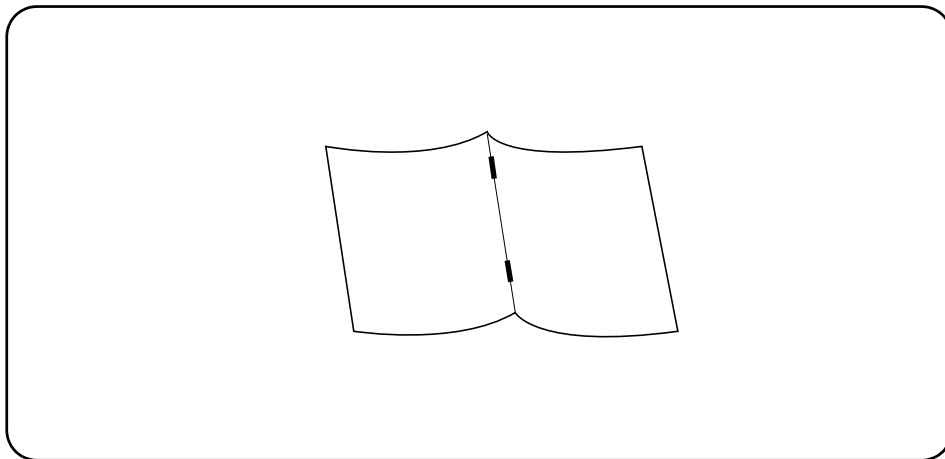
#### カバーの取り付け

23. 手順 2 で外した前下カバー (2) をビス (1) 2 本で元通り取り付け。  
24. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前カバーを閉じる。



#### Adhering the label.

25. Clean the area where the label is adhered on the right cover of the document finisher with alcohol and adhere label (I) aligning with making-off line.



#### [Checking staple position]

1. In the center-stapling mode, perform a test copy with the paper fed from the main tray. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Check the distance from the center of the paper to the staple position. If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.  
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

#### Collage de l'étiquette.

25. Nettoyer la zone où l'étiquette doit être collée sur le capot de droite du finisseur de document avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (I) en l'alignant, sur la ligne indiquée.

#### [Vérification de la position des agrafes]

1. Dans le mode d'agrafage central, effectuer une copie de test avec la papier alimenté depuis le plateau principal. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:  
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)
2. Vérifier la distance entre le centre du papier et l'emplacement de l'agrafe. Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

#### Para pegar la etiqueta.

25. Limpie con alcohol el área donde va a pegar la etiqueta (I) en la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y péguela alineándola con la línea de referencia.

#### [Comprobación de la posición de grapado]

1. En el modo de grapado central, realice una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja principal. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Compruebe la distancia desde el centro del papel a la posición de grapado. Si la distancia no está dentro del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

#### Anbringen des Aufklebers.

25. Reinigen Sie den Bereich auf der rechten Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers mit Alkohol, richten Sie den Aufkleber (I) aus und kleben Sie ihn dann fest.

#### [Überprüfen der Heftklammerposition]

1. Machen Sie im Mitten-Heftklammermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom Hauptfach aus zugeführt wird. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Prüfen Sie den Abstand von der Mitte des Papiers zur Heftklammerposition. Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist gemäß den folgenden Schritten vorzugehen, um die Position zu korrigieren.  
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

#### Incollare l'etichetta.

25. Pulire con alcool la zona dove si applica l'etichetta sul pannello destro della finitrice. Attaccare l'etichetta (I) allineandola alla linea di taglio.

#### [Controllare la posizione della pinzatrice]

1. In modalità "pinzatura centrale", eseguire una copia di prova con carta alimentata dal vassoio principale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei seguenti formati di carta:  
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Controllare la distanza tra il centro del foglio e la posizione della pinzatrice. Se la distanza non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire i seguenti passaggi per regolarne la posizione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

#### 粘貼标签。

25. 用酒精清洁在文档整理器右盖板上粘貼标签的区域并与脱离线对齐粘貼标签 (I)。

#### [检查装订位置]

1. 在中央装订模式中，从主托盘进纸进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. 检查纸张中央到装订位置的距離。如果距離超出標準值範圍，按照下列步驟調整位置。  
<標準值> 距離中央的距離：±2mm 內

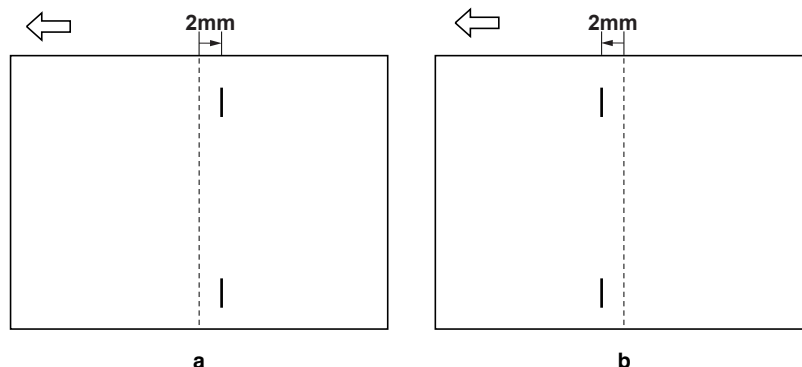
#### ラベルの貼り付け

25. ドキュメントフィニッシャの右カバーに貼られているラベルの下をアルコール清掃し、罫書き線に合わせてラベル (I) を貼り付ける。

#### [中とジステイブル位置確認]

1. 以下の用紙を使用し、中とジステイブルモード、メイントレイ排紙でテストコピーを行う。  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. ステイブル位置の中心からのずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> 中心からのずれ：±2mm 以内





### Adjusting staple position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.  
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ1.  
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ2.  
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ3.

2. Adjust setting value.

When staples are placed too far right copy example (a): Decrease the setting value.  
When staples are placed too far left copy example (b): Increase the setting value.  
Changing the value by 1 moves the stapling position by approximately 0.55 mm.

3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the staple position indicates the value within the reference range.  
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

### Ajustement de la position des agrafes

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.  
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ1.  
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ2.  
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ3.

2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.

Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (a): diminuer la valeur de réglage.  
Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (b): augmenter la valeur de réglage.  
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position d'agrafage d'environ 0,55 mm.

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position d'agrafage se trouve dans la gamme de référence.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

### Ajuste de la posición de grabado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y realice el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.  
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ1.  
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ2.  
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ3.

2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.

Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (a): Disminuya el valor de configuración.  
Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (b): Aumente el valor de configuración.  
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de grabado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del centro a la posición de grapado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

### Einstellen der Heftklammerposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.  
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8.5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ1.  
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8.5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ2.  
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ3.

2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes.

Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheinen (a): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.  
Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheinen (b): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.  
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Heftklammerposition um 0,55 mm.

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Heftklammerposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.  
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

### Regolare la posizione della pinzatrice

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia di prova.  
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ1  
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ2  
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ3

2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.

Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a destra (esempio a): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.  
Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a sinistra (esempio b): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.  
La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di pinzatura di circa 0,55 mm.

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione delle pinzatrici non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento.  
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

### 調整装订位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折叠) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。  
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ1 (装订位置调整 1)。  
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ2 (装订位置调整 2)。  
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ3 (装订位置调整 3)。

2. 调整设定值。

订书钉远离右侧复印样本 (a) 时: 减小设定值  
订书钉远离左侧复印样本 (b) 时: 增大设定值  
以 1 更改数值将装订位置移动大约 0.55mm

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到装订位置的表示数值在标准值范围内。  
<标准值> 距离中央的距离: ±2mm 内

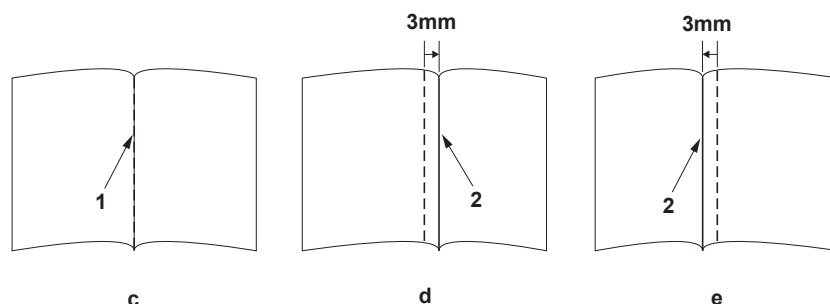
### 中とジステイブル位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。  
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ1 の調整を行う。  
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ2 の調整を行う。  
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ3 の調整を行う。

2. 設定値を調整する。

ステイブル位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): 設定値を下げる  
ステイブル位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): 設定値を上げる  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.55mm

3. テストコピーを行う。
4. コピーサンプルのステイブル位置のずれが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 中心からのずれ: ±2mm 以内



### [Checking centerfold position]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. Perform a test copy in centerfold mode. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes. Draw a straight line (1) at the center of each paper (a).  
A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. If the distance from center line (1) on paper (c) to centerfold position (2) on the copy sample is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the distance.

<Reference value>

Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

### [Vérification de la page centrale dépliant]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Effectuer une copie de test dans le mode page centrale dépliant. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants. Tirer une ligne droite (1) au centre de chaque feuille de papier (a). Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:  
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)

3. Si la distance entre la ligne centrale (1) sur la feuille de papier (c) et la position de la page centrale dépliant (2) de l'exemple de copie se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la distance.

<Valeur de référence>

Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliant (2): ±3 mm

### [Comprobación de la posición de plegado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de plegado. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes. Trace una línea recta (1) en el centro de cada papel (a). Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:  
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Si la distancia de la línea central (1) del papel (c) a la posición de plegado (2) de la muestra de copia está fuera del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la distancia.

<Valor de referencia>

Distancia desde la posición de plegado (2): ±3 mm

### [Überprüfen der Mittenfaltposition]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Mittenfaltmodus eine Testkopie durch. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:  
Ziehen Sie eine gerade Linie (1) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Papiers (a). Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Wenn der Abstand von der Mittellinie (1) am Papier (c) zur Mittenfaltposition (2) auf der Musterkopie außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, folgen Sie den nachfolgenden Schritten, um den Abstand einzustellen.

<Bezugswert>

Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

### [Controllare la posizione della piegatura centrale]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova in modalità piegatura centrale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei formati di carta indicati in seguito. Disegnare una linea retta (1) al centro di ogni foglio (a).  
Formati di carta su cui eseguire la copia di prova:  
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Se la distanza tra la linea centrale (1) del foglio (c) e la posizione della piegatura centrale (2) nella copia campione è al di fuori dell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire la seguente procedura per regolarla.

<Valore di riferimento>

Distancia dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

### [ 检查折叠位置 ]

1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源开关。
2. 在折叠模式中进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印。在每张纸 (a) 的中央划一条直线 (1)。  
下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 如果纸 (c) 上中线 (1) 距离复印样本上的折叠位置 (2) 超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整距离。

<标准值>

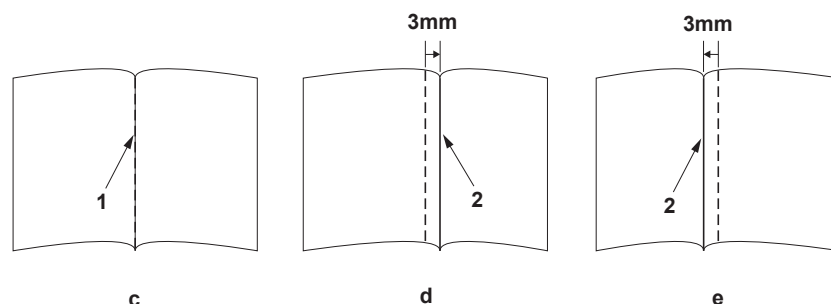
距离折叠位置 (2) 的距离: ±3mm 内

### [ 中折り位置確認 ]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. 以下の用紙を使用し、中折りモードの 2 枚折りでテストコピーを行う。  
用紙は、中心に線 (1) を引いておくこと。(a)  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11")、B4, LGL (8.5" × 14")、A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 用紙 (c) の中心線 (1) と、コピーサンプルの中折り位置 (2) のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値> 中折り位置 (2) のずれ: ±3mm 以内



### Adjusting centerfold position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.  
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow BOOKLET POS ADJ1.  
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow BOOKLET POS ADJ2.  
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Adjust the setting value.  
When the centerfold position too far right copy example (d): Increase the setting value.

When the centerfold position too far left copy example (e): Decrease the setting value.

Changing the value by 1 moves the centerfold position by approximately 0.55 mm.

3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the centerfold position indicates the value within the reference range.  
<Reference value>  
Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

### Ajustement de la position de la page centrale dépliant

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.  
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre BOOKLET POS ADJ1.  
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre BOOKLET POS ADJ2.  
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.  
Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (d): augmenter la valeur de réglage.

Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (e): diminuer la valeur de réglage.

Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de la page centrale dépliant d'environ 0,55 mm.

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position de la page centrale dépliant se trouve dans la gamme de référence.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliant (2): ±3 mm

### Ajuste de la posición de plegado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y haga el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.  
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga BOOKLET POS ADJ1.  
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga BOOKLET POS ADJ2.  
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.  
Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (d): Aumente el valor de configuración.

Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (e): Disminuya el valor de configuración.

El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de plegado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia de centro a la posición de plegado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde la posición (2): ±3 mm

### Einstellen der Mittenfaltposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.  
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8,5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt BOOKLET POS ADJ1.  
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8,5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt BOOKLET POS ADJ2.  
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes  
Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheint (d): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.

Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheint (e): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.

Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Mittenfaltposition um ca. 0,55 mm.

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Mitte der Mittenfaltposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.  
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

### Regolare la posizione della piegatura centrale

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia campione.  
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire BOOKLET POS ADJ1  
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire BOOKLET POS ADJ2  
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire BOOKLET POS ADJ3
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione  
Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a destra (esempio d): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.

Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a sinistra (esempio e): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.

La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di piegatura di circa 0,55 mm.

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione della piegatura non rientra nel valore di riferimento.  
<Valore di riferimento>  
Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

### 調整折疊位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折叠) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。  
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 BOOKLET POS ADJ1 (小册子位置调整 1)。  
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 BOOKLET POS ADJ2 (小册子位置调整 2)。  
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 BOOKLET POS ADJ3 (小册子位置调整 3)。

2. 调整设定值。  
折疊位置远离右侧复印样本 (d) 时: 增大设定值  
折疊位置远离左侧复印样本 (e) 时: 减小设定值  
以 1 更改数值将折疊位置移动大约 0.55mm

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到折疊位置的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。  
<标准值>  
距离折疊位置 (2) 的距离: ±3mm 内

### 中折り位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。  
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、BOOKLET POS ADJ1 の調整を行う。  
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、BOOKLET POS ADJ2 の調整を行う。  
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、BOOKLET POS ADJ3 の調整を行う。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
中折り位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (d): 設定値を上げる

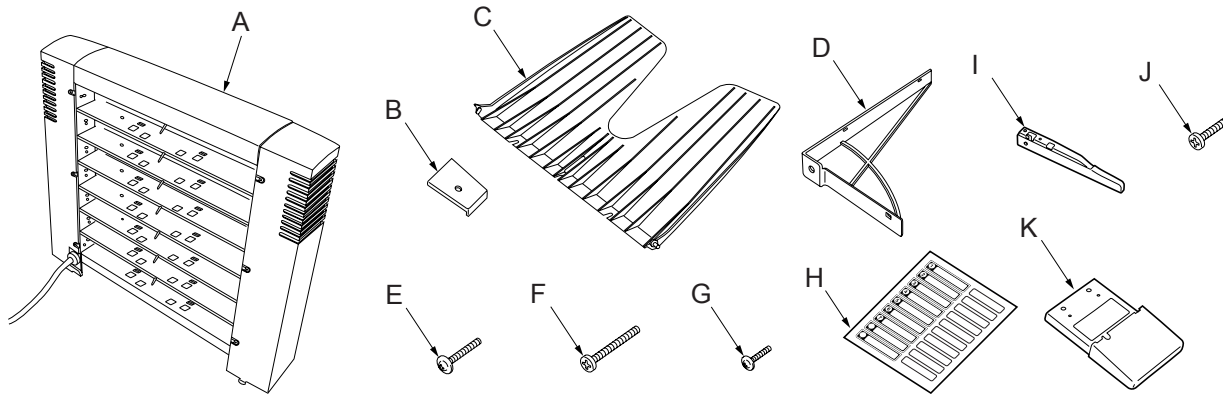
中折り位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (e): 設定値を下げる  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.55mm

3. テストコピーを行う。
4. 中折り位置のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 中折り位置のずれ: ±3mm 以内



# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR MAILBOX

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.  
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)  
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.  
P/N: 303J246010



## English

### Supplied parts

A Mailbox	1
B Mounting plate cover	1
C Copy eject bins	7
D Reinforcing plate	1
E TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14	2

F Taptite S binding screw M4 × 25	1
G TP screw M3 × 10	6
H Tray name label	1
I Plate foot F (for monochrome machines)	1
J Taptite S binding screw M4 × 10 (for monochrome machines)	1
K Plate foot V (for full-color machines)	2

When installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine, four pieces of (G) are not used.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Boîte à lettres	1
B Couverture de la plaque de montage	1
C Case d'éjection de copies	7
D Plaque de renfort	1
E Vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14	2

F Borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 25	1
G Vis TP M3 × 10	6
H Étiquette de nom de plateau	1
I Pied de plateau F (pour les machines monochromes)	1
J Borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 10 (pour les machines monochromes)	1
K Pied de plateau V (pour les machines entièrement en couleurs)	2

Lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome, quatre pièces de (G) ne sont pas utilisées.

## Español

### Partes provistas

A Buzón de correo	1
B Cubierta de la placa de montaje	1
C Bandejas de expulsión de copias	7
D Placa de refuerzo	1
E Tornillo TP Taptite S M4 × 14	2

F Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 25	1
G Tornillo TP M3 × 10	6
H Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja	1
I Pata de placa F (para máquinas monocromáticas)	1
J Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 10 (para máquinas monocromáticas)	1
K Pata de placa V (para máquinas a todo color)	2

Cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática, no se utilizan las cuatro piezas de (G).

## Deutsch

### Mitgelieferte Teile

A Mailbox	1
B Abdeckung der Montageplatte	1
C Kopienausgabefächer	7
D Verstärkungsplatte	1
E TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14	2

F Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 25	1
G TP Schraube M3 × 10	6
H Fachnamenaukleber	1
I Plattenfuß F (für Monochrommaschinen)	1
J Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 10 (für Monochrommaschinen)	1
K Plattenfuß V (für Vollfarbmaschinen)	2

Wenn die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine angebracht wird, werden die vier Teile von (G) nicht benutzt.

## Italiano

### Parti comprese

A Casella postale	1
B Coperchio della piastra di montaggio	1
C Scomparti di espulsione delle copie	7
D Piastra di sostegno	1
E Vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14	2

F Vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 25	1
G Vite TP M3 × 10	6
H Etichetta di nome del vassoio	1
I Piedino della piastra F (per macchina in bianco e nero)	1
J Vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 10 (per macchine in bianco e nero)	1
K Piedino della piastra V (per le macchine a colori)	2

Quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero, quattro pezzi di (G) non sono utilizzati.

## 简体中文

### 附属部件

A 邮箱	1
B 固定板	1
C 接纸盘	7
D 加固板	1

E 螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP	2
F 连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 25	1
G 螺丝M3 × 10TP	6
H 托盘名称标贴	1
I 底板F(黑白机用)	1
J 连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 10(黑白机用)	1
K 底板V(全彩色机用)	2

在黑白机上安装时，会剩下4个螺丝M3 × 10TP (G)。

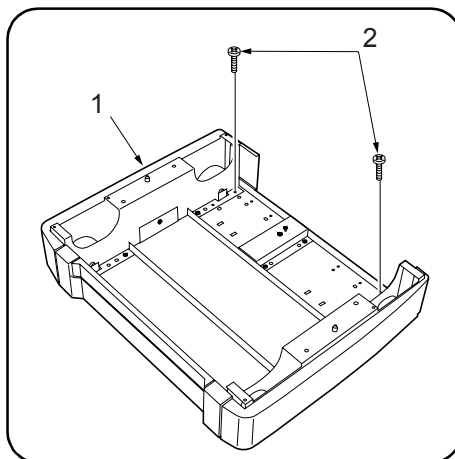
## 日本語

### 付属品

A メールボックス	1
B 取付板カバー	1
C 排出ビン	7
D 補強板	1

E ビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S	2
F ビス M4 × 25 バインドタップタイト S	1
G ビス M3 × 10TP	6
H トレイ名称シール	1
I プレートフット F (モノクロ機用)	1
J ビス M4 × 10 バインドタップタイト S (モノクロ機用)	1
K プレートフット V (フルカラー機用)	2

モノクロ機に取り付ける場合は、(G) が 4 本余ります。



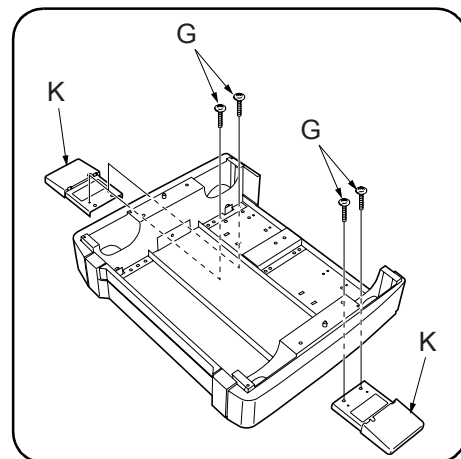
#### [Installation procedure]

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the mailbox.

#### [Carry out steps 1 to 3 when installing the mailbox to a full-color machine.]

Before installing the finisher, carry out the following procedure.

1. Remove the two screws (2) from the height adjusting base (1) that will be attached under the finisher.



2. Fit the two plate feet V (K) and secure them using two TP screws M3 x 10 (G) for each.

3. Install the finisher referring to the installation guide for finisher.  
(Proceed to step 4.)

#### [Procédure d'installation]

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position d'arrêt et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant d'entreprendre l'installation de la boîte à lettres.

#### [Effectuer les étapes 1 à 3 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine entièrement en couleurs.]

Avant d'installer le retoucheur, effectuer la procédure suivante.

1. Retirer les deux vis (2) de la base de réglage de hauteur (1) qui sera fixée au-dessous du retoucheur.

2. Mettre en place les deux pieds de plaque V (K) et les fixer à l'aide de deux vis TP M3 x 10 (G) pour chaque pied.

3. Installer le retoucheur en se reportant au guide d'installation du retoucheur.  
(Passer à l'étape 4.)

#### [Procedimiento de instalación]

Asegúrese de apagar el MFP con el interruptor principal y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación del MFP de la toma de corriente de la pared antes de empezar a instalar el buzón de correo.

#### [Realice los pasos 1 a 3 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina a todo color.]

Antes de instalar el finalizador, realice el siguiente procedimiento.

1. Remueva los dos tornillos (2) de la base de ajuste de altura (1) que se colocan debajo del finalizador.

2. Coloque las dos patas de placa V (K) y asegúrelas utilizando dos tornillos TP M3 x 10 (G) para cada una.

3. Instale el finalizador consultando la guía de instalación para el finalizador.  
(Vaya al paso 4.)

#### [Installationsverfahren]

Schalten Sie vor der Installation der Mailbox unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Netzsteckdose.

#### [Führen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Vollfarbenmaschine anbringen.]

Bevor Sie den Finisher installieren, führen Sie das folgende Verfahren aus.

1. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (2) von der Höheneinstellbasis (1), die unter dem Finisher angebracht wird.

2. Bringen Sie die zwei Plattenfüße V (K) an, und befestigen Sie sie mit je zwei TP-Schrauben M3 x 10 (G).

3. Installieren Sie den Finisher gemäß der Installationsanleitung des Finishers.  
(Zu Schritt 4 übergehen.)

#### [Modalità di installazione]

Non mancare di spegnere l'MFP utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP dalla presa della rete elettrica, prima di cominciare a installare la casella postale.

#### [Eseguire il procedimento dei passi da 1 a 3 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina a colori.]

Prima di installare il finitore, eseguire le seguenti procedure.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (2) dalla base di regolazione dell'altezza (1) che sarà fissata sotto il finitore.

2. Inserire i due piedini della piastra V (K) e fissare ciascuno di essi utilizzando due viti TP M3 x 10 (G).

3. Installare il finitore seguendo le istruzioni della guida all'installazione del finitore.  
(Procedere al passo 4.)

#### [ 安装步骤 ]

安装邮箱时，必须关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔下主装置的电源插头后进行安装。

#### [ 在全彩色机上安装时的步骤1~3 ]

安装装订器之前，先按以下步骤进行操作。

1. 拆下安装在装订器下面的高度调整台(1)上的2个螺丝(2)。

2. 将底板V(K)安装在2处后，分别用2个螺丝M3 x 10TP(G)进行固定。

3. 参照装订器安装手册，进行安装装订器。  
(继续操作步骤4)

#### [ 取付手順 ]

メールボックスを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなう。

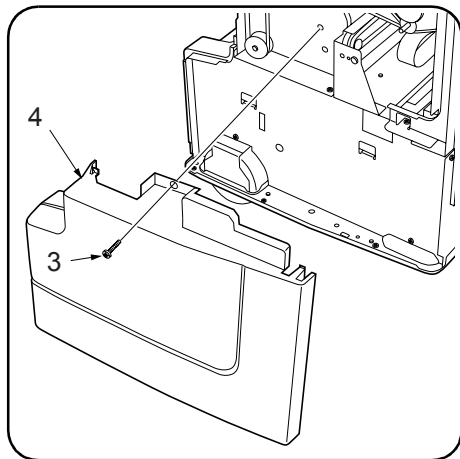
#### [ 手順 1 ~ 3 はフルカラー機に取り付ける場合 ]

フィニッシャの設置を行う前に、次の手順を行う。

1. フィニッシャの下に取り付ける高さ調整台(1)のビス(2)2本を外す。

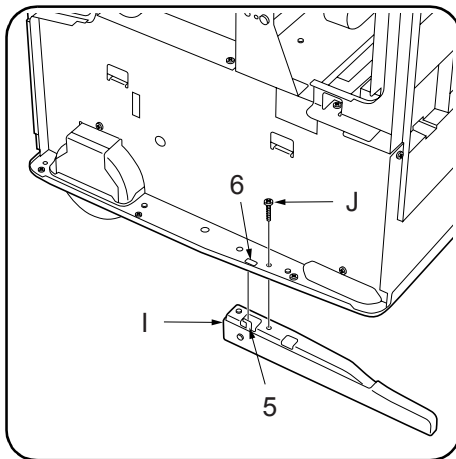
2. プレートフット V(K) を 2箇所取り付け、ビス M3 x 10TP(G) 各 2本で固定する。

3. フィニッシャの設置手順書を参照して、フィニッシャの設置を行う。  
(手順 4 に進む)



**[Carry out steps 1 to 3 when installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine.]**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle avant du retoucheur, retirer la vis (3), et retirer le couvercle inférieur avant (4).



2. Engage the hook portion (5) of the plate foot F (I) in the notch (6) in the finisher frame and secure the plate foot using the Taptite S binding screw M4 x 10 (J).

3. Refit the lower front cover (4) to its original position, secure it using the screw (3), and close the front cover.

**[Effectuer les étapes 1 à 3 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome.]**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle avant du retoucheur, retirer la vis (3), puis retirer le couvercle inférieur avant (4).

2. Engager la partie du crochet (5) du pied de plaque F (I) dans l'encoche (6) du cadre du retoucheur, puis fixer le pied de plaque à l'aide de la borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Remettre le couvercle inférieur avant (4) à sa position d'origine, le fixer à l'aide de la vis (3), puis refermer le couvercle avant.

**[Realice los pasos 1 a 3 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática.]**

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador, quite el tornillo (3) y remueva la cubierta delantera inferior (4).

2. Enganche la parte de gancho (5) de la pata de placa F (I) en la muesca (6) en el marco del finalizador y asegure la pata de placa utilizando el tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta delantera inferior (4) a su posición original, asegúrela utilizando el tornillo (3) y cierre la cubierta delantera.

**[Führen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine anbringen.]**

1. Öffnen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Finishers, entfernen Sie die Schraube (3), und nehmen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (4) ab.

2. Hängen Sie den Hakenteil (5) des Plattenfußes F (I) in die Kerbe (6) im Finisherrahmen ein, und sichern Sie den Plattenfuß mit der Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 x 10 (J).

3. Bringen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (4) wieder an ihrer ursprünglichen Position an, sichern Sie sie mit der Schraube (3), und schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung.

**[Eseguire il procedimento dei passi da 1 a 3 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero.]**

1. Aprire il coperchio anteriore del finitore, rimuovere la vite (3) e poi il coperchio anteriore inferiore (4).

2. Inserire la parte del gancio (5) del piedino della piastra F (I) nella cavità (6) del telaio del finitore e fissare il piedino della piastra utilizzando la vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Reinserire il coperchio anteriore inferiore (4) nella sua posizione iniziale, fissarlo utilizzando la vite (3) e chiuderlo.

**[在黑白机上安装时的步骤1~3]**

1. 打开装订器的前盖板，拆下1个螺丝(3)，然后取下前下盖板(4)。

2. 将底板F(I)的挂钩部(5)钩在装订器框架部的凹口(6)处，并用1个连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 x 10(J)进行固定。

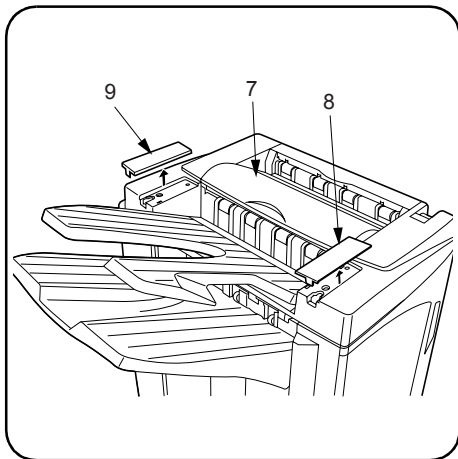
3. 按原样装好前下盖板(4)，并用1个螺丝(3)进行固定，关闭前盖板。

**[手順1 ~ 3 はモノクロ機に取り付ける場合]**

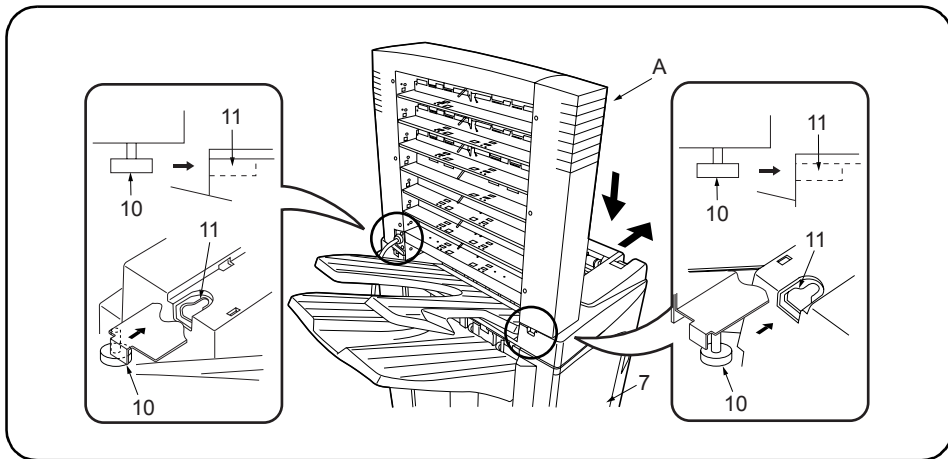
1. フィニッシャの前カバーを開け、ビス (3) 1本を外し、前下カバー(4)を取り外す。

2. プレートフット F(I) のフック部 (5) をフィニッシャフレーム部の切り欠き (6) に引っ掛け、ビス M4 x 10 パインドタップタイト S(J) 1本で固定する。

3. 前下カバー(4)を元通り取り付けビス (3) 1本で固定し、前カバーを閉じる。



4. Remove the front top cover (8) and rear top cover (9) at the top of the finisher (7) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.



5. Fit the pins (10) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (11) located at the front and rear of the top of the finisher (7) as shown in the illustration and attach the mailbox (A) to the finisher (7).

4. Retirer le couvercle supérieur avant (8) et le couvercle supérieur arrière (9) situés en haut du retoucheur (7) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate ou d'un outil équivalent.

5. Fixer les broches (10) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière du bas de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (11) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière du haut du retoucheur (7), comme indiqué sur l'illustration, puis fixer la boîte à lettres (A) au retoucheur (7).

4. Remueva la cubierta superior delantera (8) y la cubierta superior trasera (9) en la parte superior del finalizador (7) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana o similar.

5. Coloque los pasadores (10) ubicados en la parte delantera y trasera del fondo del buzón de correo (A) las muescas (11) ubicadas en la parte superior del finalizador (7) tal como en la figura e instale el buzón de correo (A) en el finalizador (7).

4. Entfernen Sie die vordere obere Abdeckung (8) und die hintere obere Abdeckung (9) an der Oberseite des Finishers (7) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

5. Stecken Sie die Stifte (10), die sich vorne und hinten an der Unterseite der Mailbox (A) befinden, in die Aussparungen (11) vorne und hinten an der Oberseite des Finishers (7), wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, und bringen Sie die Mailbox (A) an den Finisher (7) an.

4. Rimuovere il coperchio superiore anteriore (8) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (9) dalla parte superiore del finitore (7) utilizzando un cacciavite a punta piatta, o un attrezzo simile.

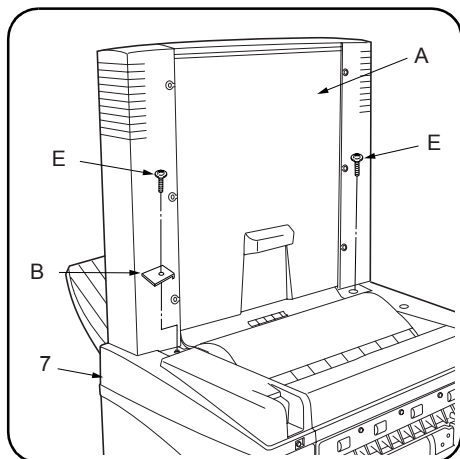
5. Inserire i perni (10) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A) nelle cavità (11) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte superiore del finitore (7) come mostrato in illustrazione e installare la casella postale (A) sul finitore (7).

4. 用一字形螺丝刀拆下装订器 (7) 上部的顶罩前盖板 (8) 和顶罩后盖板 (9)。

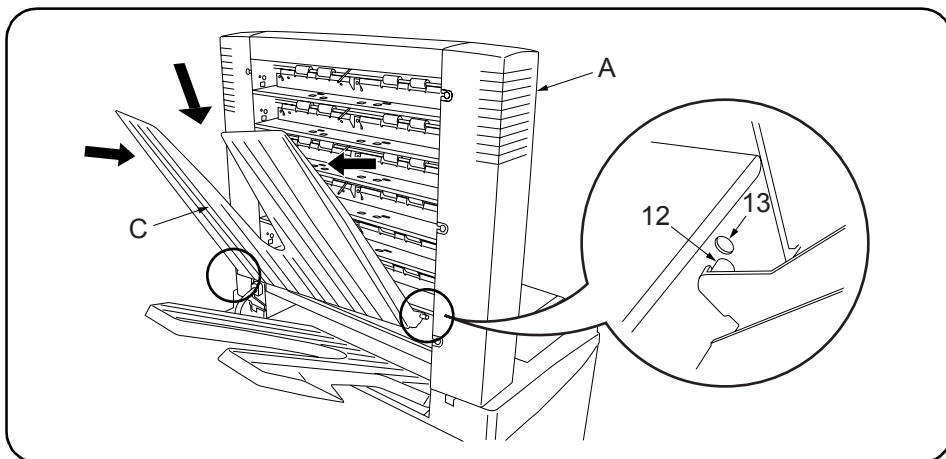
5. 按图所示将邮箱 (A) 下部的前后销 (10) 插入装订器 (7) 上部的前后凹部 (11) 内, 使邮箱 (A) 装在装订器 (7) 上。

4. フィニッシャー (7) 上部の天カバー前フタ (8)、天カバー後フタ (9) をマイナスドライバーなどで取り外す。

5. メールボックス (A) 下部の前後にあるピン (10) をフィニッシャー (7) 上部の前後にある切り欠き部 (11) にイラストのように挿入し、メールボックス (A) をフィニッシャー (7) に取り付ける。



6. Secure the front connection portion of the mailbox (A) and the finisher (7) with the mounting plate cover (B) using a TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14 (E) and secure the rear connection portion using a TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14 (E).



7. Fit the seven copy eject bins (C) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.  
While pressing both ends of each copy eject bin (C) to bend it a little, fit the bin at a nearly upright angle as shown in the illustration by inserting the front and rear pins (12) into the round holes (13) at the front and rear of the mailbox (A).

6. Fixer la partie de connexion avant de la boîte à lettres (A) et du retoucheur (7) avec le couvercle de plaque de montage (B) à l'aide d'une vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E), et fixer la partie de connexion arrière à l'aide d'une Vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E).

7. Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (C) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.  
Tout en appuyant sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection de copies (C) de manière à la plier légèrement, fixer la case à un angle presque droit, comme indiqué sur l'illustration, en insérant les broches avant et arrière (12) dans les trous ronds (13) situés à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A).

6. Asegure la parte de conexión delantera del buzón de correo (A) y finalizador (7) con la cubierta de la placa de montaje (B) utilizando un tornillo de TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E) y asegure la parte de conexión trasera utilizando un tornillo de TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E).

7. Fije las siete bandejas de expulsión de copias (C) en la sección de expulsión del buzón de correo (A) de la bandeja más baja a la más alta.  
Mientras presiona ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (C) para doblarlo un poco, fije la bandeja en un ángulo casi vertical tal como en la figura, insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (12) en los orificios redondos (13) en los lados delantero y trasero del buzón de correo (A).

6. Befestigen Sie den vorderen Verbindungsabschnitt der Mailbox (A) und des Finishers (7) mit der Abdeckung der Montageplatte (B) und einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 (E), und befestigen Sie den hinteren Verbindungsabschnitt mit einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 (E).

7. Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (C) in den Ausgabeabschnitt der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.  
Drücken Sie bei jedem Kopienausgabefach (C) beide Enden zusammen, um es ein wenig zu biegen, und setzen Sie dabei das Fach in einem fast aufrechten Winkel ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, indem Sie den vorderen und hinteren Stift (12) in die Rundlöcher (13) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) einsetzen.

6. Fissare la parte di collegamento anteriore della casella postale (A) e del finitore (7) con il coperchio della piastra di montaggio (B) utilizzando una vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E) e fissare la parte di collegamento posteriore utilizzando una vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E).

7. Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (C) nella parte di espulsione della casella postale (A), cominciando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.  
Premendo alle due estremità di uno scomparto di emissione delle copie (C) in modo da piegarle un poco, installare lo scomparto come mostrato in illustrazione mantenendolo quasi ad angolo retto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (12) nei fori rotondi (13) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A).

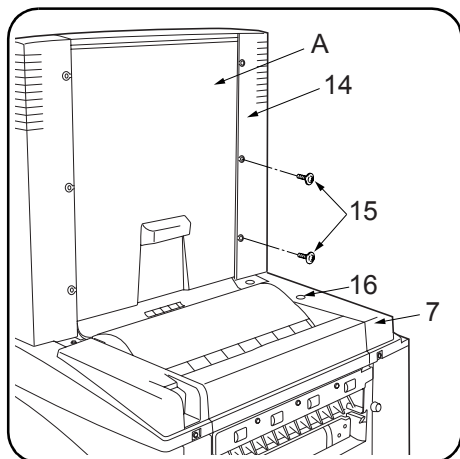
6. 将固定板(B)和1个螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP(E), 固定在邮箱(A)和装订器(7)的前侧连接部上, 并将1个螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP(E)固定在后侧的连接部上。

7. 从邮箱(A)的排出部下面起按顺序安装7个接纸盘(C)。  
轻轻按下接纸盘(C)的左右使之前倾(如图所示呈竖起状态的角度), 将前后销(12)插入邮箱(A)的前后圆孔(13)内。

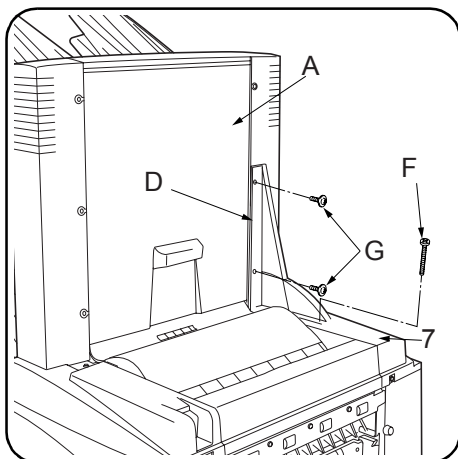
6. メールボックス(A)とフィニッシャー(7)の前側の接続部を取付板カバー(B)と共にビスM4 × 14TP タップタイト S(E)1本で、後側の接続部をビスM4 × 14TP タップタイト S(E)1本で固定する。

7. 排出ビン(C)7枚をメールボックス(A)の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。  
排出ビン(C)の左右を押し少したたませながら、イラストのように立てた状態の角度で、前後のビン(12)をメールボックス(A)の前後の丸穴(13)に挿入する。

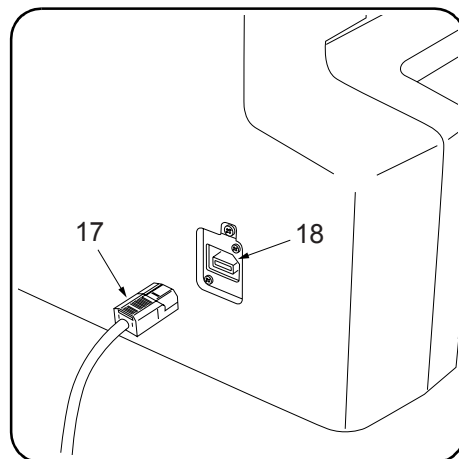




8. Remove the two screws (15) located as shown in the illustration that secure the side cover (14) of the mailbox (A), and remove the blanking seal (16) from the finisher (7).



9. Attach the reinforcing plate (D) to the mailbox (A) and the finisher (7) using the two TP screws M3 x 10 (G) and the Taptite S binding screw M4 x 25 (F).



10. Connect the signal lines (17) of the mailbox (A) to the connector (18) at the rear part of the finisher.

8. Retirer les deux vis (15) situées aux endroits indiqués sur l'illustration, qui fixent le couvercle latéral (14) de la boîte à lettres (A), puis retirer le joint d'obturation (16) du retoucheur (7).

9. Fixer la plaque de renfort (D) sur la boîte à lettres (A) et le retoucheur (7) à l'aide des deux vis TP M3 x 10 (G) et de la borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 x 25 (F).

10. Brancher les lignes de signal (17) de la boîte à lettres (A) au connecteur (18) situé sur le côté arrière du retoucheur.

8. Remueva los dos tornillos (15) ubicados tal como en la figura, que aseguran la cubierta lateral (14) del buzón de correo (A) y remueva el sello de blanqueo (16) del finalizador (7).

9. Instale la placa de refuerzo (D) en el buzón de correo (A) y el finalizador (7) utilizando los dos tornillos TP M3 x 10 (G) y el tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 x 25 (F).

10. Conecte las líneas de señal (17) del buzón de correo (A) en el conector (18) de la parte trasera del finalizador.

8. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (15), die wie in der Abbildung gezeigt angeordnet sind und mit denen die Seitenabdeckung (14) der Mailbox (A) befestigt ist, und entfernen Sie die Blindabdichtung (16) vom Finisher (7).

9. Bringen Sie die Verstärkungsplatte (D) mit den zwei TP-Schrauben M3 x 10 (G) und der Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 x 25 (F) an der Mailbox (A) und dem Finisher (7) an.

10. Schließen Sie die Signalleitungen (17) der Mailbox (A) an den Anschluss (18) am hinteren Teil des Finishers an.

8. Rimuovere le due viti (15) posizionate come indicato in illustrazione e che fissano il coperchio laterale (14) della casella postale (A), quindi rimuovere la gomma di tappaggio (16) dal finitore (7).

9. Fissare la piastra di sostegno (D) sulla casella postale (A) e sul finitore (7) utilizzando le due viti TP M3 x 10 (G) e la vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 x 25 (F).

10. Collegare le linee di segnale (17) della casella postale (A) al connettore (18) sulla parte posteriore del finitore.

8. 拆下固定在邮箱(A)上横盖板(14)的(如图所示的位置)2个螺丝(15),并揭下装订器(7)上遮挡的贴纸(16)。

9. 将加固板(D)用2个螺丝M3 x 10TP(G)和1个连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 x 25(F)安装在邮箱(A)和装订器(7)上。

10. 将邮箱(A)的信号线(17)连接在装订器后侧的连接插座(18)上。

8. メールボックス (A) の横カバー (14) を固定しているイラストの位置のビス (15) 2 本を外し、フィニッシャー (7) の目隠しシール (16) をはがす。

9. 補強板 (D) をビス M3 x 10TP (G) 2 本とビス M4 x 25 バインドタップタイト S (F) 1 本でメールボックス (A) およびフィニッシャー (7) に取り付ける。

10. メールボックス (A) の信号線 (17) をフィニッシャー後側のコネクター (18) に接続する。

11. Insert the MFP power plug to the outlet and turn the MFP main switch on to check the operation.

---

11. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position de marche pour vérifier le fonctionnement.

---

11. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP para verificar el funcionamiento.

---

11. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des MFP ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

---

11. Inserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa della rete elettrica e accenderla utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione in modo da controllare il funzionamento.

---

11. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座，然后按下主开关并确认是否接通。

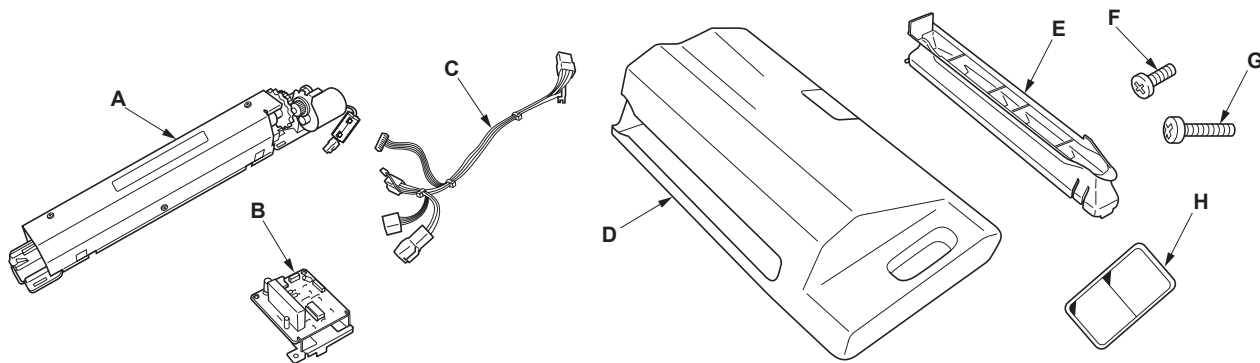
---

11. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。

---



# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR HOLE PUNCH UNIT**



## English

### Supplied parts

A Hole punch unit.....	1
B Punch PCB .....	1
C Power cord .....	1
D Waste hole punch box .....	1
E Guide .....	1

F M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw .....	1
G M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw .....	2
H Label .....	1

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Perforatrice .....	1
B Carte de perforation .....	1
C Cordon d'alimentation .....	1
D Bac de récupération de la perforatrice .....	1
E Guide .....	1

F Vis S taraudée M4 × 8 .....	1
G Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 .....	2
H Etiquette .....	1

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Perforadora .....	1
B PCB de perforación .....	1
C Cable de alimentación .....	1
D Caja para desechos de la perforación .....	1
E Guía .....	1

F Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 .....	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 .....	2
H Etiqueta .....	1

Asegúrese de quitar cualquier cinta de fijación o material de amortiguación colocado en las partes suministradas.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Lochereinheit .....	1
B Locherplatine .....	1
C Netzkabel .....	1
D Lochungsabfallbehälter .....	1
E Führung .....	1

F M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	1
G M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	2
H Aufkleber .....	1

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

## Italiano

### Parti fornite

A Unità di perforazione .....	1
B Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione .....	1
C Cavo di alimentazione .....	1
D Scarto perforazione .....	1
E Guida .....	1

F Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 .....	1
G Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 .....	2
H Etichetta .....	1

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

## 简体中文

### 附属部件

A 打孔单元 .....	1
B 打孔单元电路板 .....	1
C 电源线 .....	1
D 打孔纸屑盒 .....	1
E 导向板 .....	1

F M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 .....	1
G M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 .....	2
H 标签 .....	1

请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

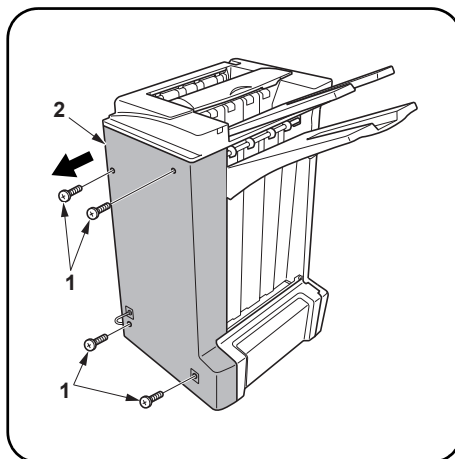
## 日本語

### 付属品

A パンチユニット .....	1
B パンチ基板 .....	1
C 電線 .....	1
D パンチくずボックス .....	1
E ガイド .....	1

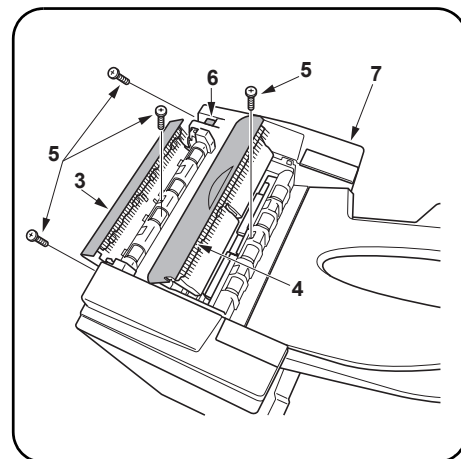
F ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S .....	1
G ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S .....	2
H ラベル .....	1

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



### Removing the cover

1. Remove the four screws (1) to remove the back cover (2) from the document finisher.



2. Open the upper cover (3) and tray C (4) on the document finisher.
3. Remove four screws (5) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) to remove the top cover (7).

### Installation Procedure

Before installing the hole punch unit, make sure the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.  
Install the document finisher first and then install the hole punch unit.

### Procédure d'installation

Avant d'installer la perforreuse s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le câble d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.  
Installer d'abord le finisseur de document, puis installer la perforatrice.

### Enlèvement du capot.

1. Retirer les quatre vis (1) pour retirer le capot arrière (2) du finisseur de document.

2. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) du finisseur de document.
3. Retirer quatre vis (5) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (7).

### Procedimiento de instalación

Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que el cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente de la pared.  
Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la perforadora.

### Extracción de la cubierta

1. Quite los cuatro tornillos (1) para quitar la cubierta posterior (2) del finalizador de documentos.

2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) del finalizador de documentos.
3. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para quitar la cubierta superior (7).

### Einbauverfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Lochereinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.  
Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Lochereinheit an.

### Entfernen der Abdeckung

1. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (1) und entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (2) vom Dokument-Finisher.

2. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) am Dokument-Finisher.
3. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), und die obere Abdeckung (7) zu entfernen.

### Procedura di installazione

Prima di installare l'unità di perforazione, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.  
Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di perforazione.

### Rimuovere il coperchio

1. Togliere le quattro viti (1) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (2) dalla finitrice.

2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) della finitrice.
3. Togliere quattro viti (5) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per rimuovere il coperchio (7).

### 安装步骤

安装打孔单元前, 请确定 MFP 的主电源开关已经关闭并且电源线已从电源插座上拔下。  
首先安装装订器, 然后安装打孔单元。

### 拆下盖板

1. 从装订器上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (1) 以便拆下后盖板 (2)。

2. 打开装订器的上盖板 (3) 和托盘 C (4)。
3. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (5) 并按住整理器释放杆 (6) 以便拆下上盖板 (7)。

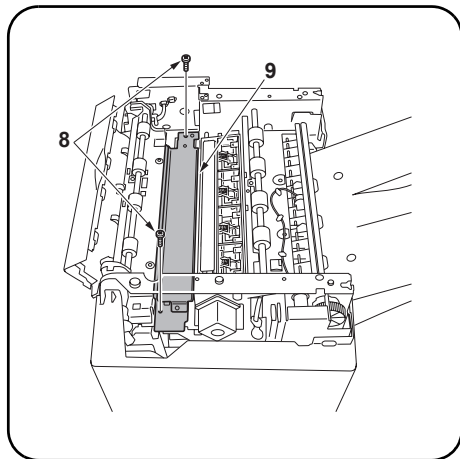
### 設置手順

パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、パンチユニットを設置すること。

### カバーの取り外し

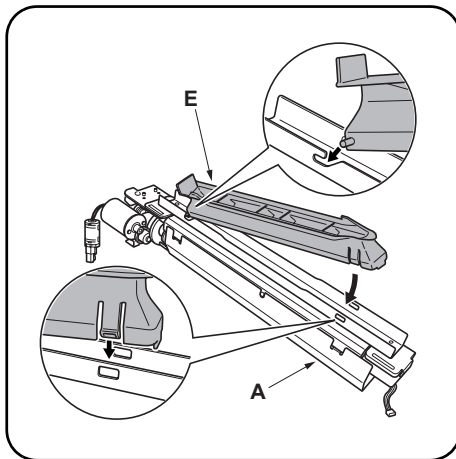
1. ビス (1) 4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャの上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を開く。
3. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャ解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) を取り外す。



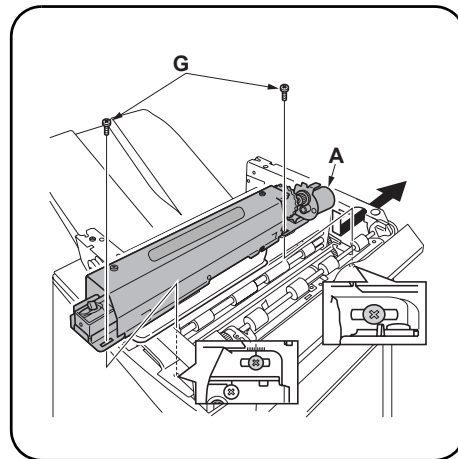
#### Removing the guide plate

4. Remove two screws (8) to remove the guide plate (9).



#### Installing the guide

5. Engage the projection and the pawl of the guide (E) with the hole punch unit (A) to install the guide.



#### Installing the hole punch unit

6. Tilt the hole punch unit (A) to place it through the hole in the upper side of the document finisher.
7. Fix the hole punch unit (A) with two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G). Install the hole punch unit so that M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (G) is placed at the center of each screw hole.

#### Enlèvement de la plaque de guidage.

4. Retirer deux vis (8) pour retirer la plaque de guidage (9).

#### Installation du guide

5. Engager la projection et le cliquet du guide (E) dans la perforatrice (A) pour installer le guide.

#### Installation de la perforatrice

6. Incliner la perforatrice (A) pour la faire passer par l'orifice de la partie supérieure du finisseur de document.
7. Fixer la perforatrice (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G). Installer la perforatrice pour que les vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) soit placées au centre de chaque orifice de vis.

#### Extracción de la placa guía

4. Quite los dos tornillos (8) para quitar la placa guía (9).

#### Instalación de la guía

5. Acople el resalto y el trinquete de la guía (E) con la perforadora (A) para instalar la guía.

#### Instalación de la perforadora

6. Incline la perforadora (A) para colocarla a través del agujero del lado superior del finalizador de documentos.
7. Fije la perforadora (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G). Instale la perforadora de forma que los tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) queden en el centro de cada agujero de tornillo.

#### Entfernen der Führungsplatte

4. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (8), um die Führungsplatte abzunehmen (9).

#### Anbringen der Führung

5. Bringen Sie den Vorsprung und die Sperrklinke der Führung (E) mit der Lochereinheit (A) in Eingriff, um die Führung einzubauen.

#### Anbringen der Lochereinheit

6. Kippen Sie die Lochereinheit (A), um sie durch das Loch an der oberen Seite des Dokument-Finishers einzuführen.
7. Nun die Lochereinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) befestigen. Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Lochereinheit so angebracht wird, dass sich die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (G) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Schraublochs befindet.

#### Rimuovere la piastra guida

4. Togliere due viti (8) per rimuovere la piastra guida (9).

#### Installare la guida

5. Agganciare la parte sporgente e il dentello della guida (E) all'unità di perforazione (A) per installare la guida.

#### Installare l'unità di perforazione

6. Inclinare l'unità di perforazione (A) in modo da inserirla dentro la cavità nella parte superiore della finitrice.
7. Fissare l'unità di perforazione (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G). Installare l'unità di perforazione in modo che la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) sia piazzata al centro di ogni apposito foro.

#### 拆下导向板

4. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (8) 以便拆下导向板 (9)。

#### 安装导向板

5. 将导向板 (E) 的突起部和卡爪与打孔单元 (A) 啮合, 安装导向板。

#### 安装打孔单元

6. 将打孔单元 (A) 倾斜, 从装订器上部的孔中穿过去。
7. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 固定打孔单元 (A)。  
安装打孔单元, 让 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 放在每个螺钉孔的中央。

#### ガイド板の取り外し

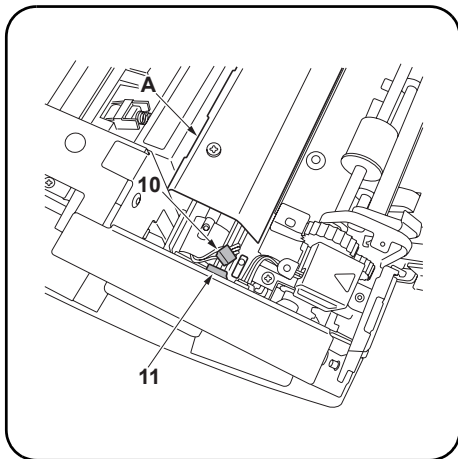
4. ビス (8) 2 本を外し、ガイド板 (9) を取り外す。

#### ガイドの取り付け

5. ガイド (E) の突起とツメをパンチユニット (A) に引っ掛け、取り付ける。

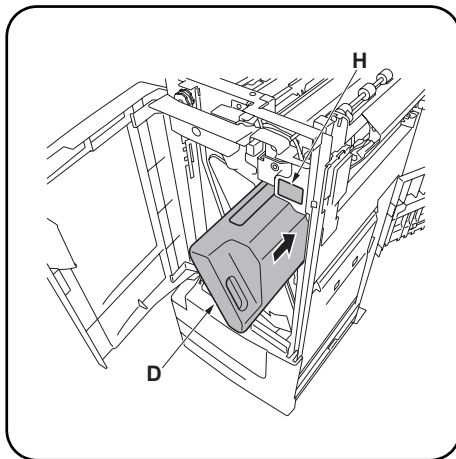
#### パンチユニットの取り付け

6. パンチユニット (A) を傾け、ドキュメントフィニッシャー上部の穴に通す。
7. ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本でパンチユニット (A) を固定する。  
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) がビス穴の中心の位置になるように取り付けること。



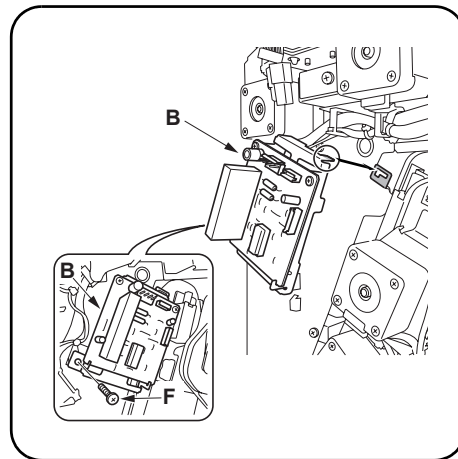
#### Connecting the connector (120V/220V/230V/240V models only. Except for Swedish specification)

8. Connect the 3P-connector (10) on the hole punch unit (A) to the 3P-connector (11) inside the document finisher.



#### Installing the waste hole punch box

9. Open the front cover of the document finisher and insert the waste hole punch box (D) along the guide (E) which was installed in step 5.
10. Clean the upper right cover of the waste hole punch box (D) with alcohol and adhere the label (H) on the concave section of the box.
11. Close the front cover of the document finisher.



#### Installing the punch PCB

12. Engage the pawl on the upper side of the punch PCB (B) with the groove at the back of the document finisher.
13. Secure the punch PCB (B) with M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw (F).

#### Connexion du connecteur (Modèles 120V/220V/230V/240V seulement. Sauf pour les spécifications suédoises)

8. Connecter le connecteur 3P (10) de la perforatrice (A) au connecteur 3P (11) à l'intérieur du finisseur de document.

#### Installation du bac de récupération de la perforatrice

9. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) le long du guide (E) installé à l'étape 5.
10. Nettoyer le capot supérieur droit du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (H) sur la partie concave du bac.
11. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

#### Installation de la carte de perforation

12. Engager le cliquet de la partie supérieure de la carte de perforation (B) dans la rainure à l'arrière du finisseur de document.
13. Fixer la carte de perforation (B) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (F).

#### Conexión del conector (Modelos de 120 V/220 V/230 V/240 V solamente. Excepto para las especificaciones suecas)

8. Conecte el conector de 3 contactos (10) de la perforadora (A) en el conector de 3 contactos (11) del interior del finalizador de documentos.

#### Instalación la caja para desechos de la perforación

9. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos e introduzca la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) a lo largo de la guía (E) que fue instalada en el paso 5.
10. Limpie la cubierta superior derecha de la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta (H) en la sección cóncava de la caja.
11. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

#### Instalación del PCB de perforación

12. Acople el trinquete del lado superior del PCB de perforación (B) con las ranuras de la parte posterior del finalizador de documentos.
13. Asegure el PCB de perforación (B) con el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (F).

#### Anschließen des Steckers (nur bei 120 V-, 220 V-, 230 V- und 240 V-Modellen)

8. Stecken Sie den 3-poligen Stecker (10) der Lochereinheit (A) in die 3-polige Buchse (11) innerhalb des Dokument-Finishers ein.

#### Anbringen des Lochungsabfallbehälters

9. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und bauen Sie dann den Lochabfallbehälter (D) entlang der in Schritt 5 installierten Führung (E) ein.
10. Reinigen Sie die rechte obere Abdeckung des Lochabfallbehälters (D) mit Alkohol und bringen Sie danach den Aufkleber (H) am konkaven Teil des Behälters an.
11. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

#### Anbringen der Locherplatine

12. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke auf der oberen Seite der Locherplatine (B) in die Nut auf der Rückseite des Dokument-Finishers eingreifen.
13. Befestigen Sie die Locherplatine (B) mit der M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (F).

#### Collegare il connettore (solo per i modelli 120V/220V/230V/240V. Eccetto per la specificazione svedese)

8. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini (10) dell'unità di perforazione (A) al connettore a 3 piedini (11) all'interno della finitrice.

#### Installare lo scarto perforazione (Contenitore degli scarti per la perforazione).

9. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice e inserire lo scarto perforazione (D) lungo la guida (E) installata nel passo 5.
10. Pulire il pannello superiore destro dello scarto perforazione (D) con alcool e incollare l'etichetta (H) nella sezione concava del contenitore.
11. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

#### Installare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione

12. Agganciare il dentello che si trova nella parte superiore della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) nel foro sulla parte posteriore della finitrice.
13. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) con una viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (F).

- 连接插头  
(仅适用于 120V/220V/230V/240V 型号。  
除瑞典规格)
8. 将打孔单元 (A) 上的 3P 插头 (10) 连接到装订器内的 3P 插头 (11)。

#### 安装打孔纸屑盒

9. 打开装订器的前盖板并沿着在步骤 5 中安装的导向板 (E) 插入打孔纸屑盒 (D)。
10. 用酒精清洁打孔纸屑盒 (D) 的右上盖板, 并将标签 (H) 粘到盒的凹面。
11. 关闭装订器的前盖板。

#### 安装打孔单元电路板

12. 将打孔单元电路板 (B) 的上部卡爪与装订器后部的沟槽啮合。
13. 用 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。

#### コネクタの接続 (120V/220V/230V/240V 仕様のみ。ただしスウェーデン仕様は除く)

8. パンチユニット (A) の 3P コネクタ (10) をドキュメントフィニッシャの 3P コネクタ (11) に接続する。

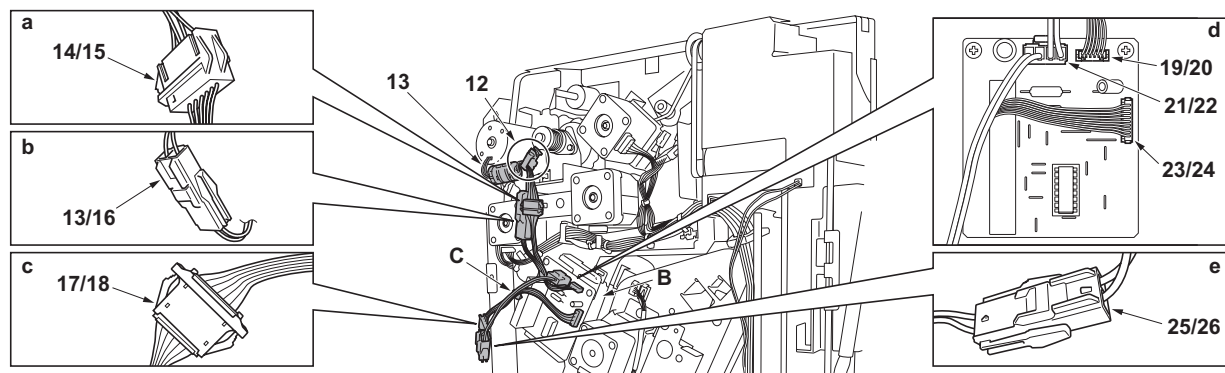
#### パンチくずボックスの取り付け

9. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開き、手順 5 で取り付けしたガイド (E) に沿ってパンチくずボックス (D) を挿入する。
10. パンチくずボックス (D) 右上のカバーをアルコール清掃し、凹部に合わせてラベル (H) を貼り付ける。
11. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを閉じる。

#### パンチ基板の取り付け

12. パンチ基板 (B) の上部のツメをドキュメントフィニッシャ後側の溝に引っ掛ける。
13. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (F) 1 本でパンチ基板 (B) を固定する。





14. Open the wire saddle (12) and put the 2P-connector (13) on the motor through the wire saddle to fix the punch PCB (B).  
 15. Connect the power cord (C) to the punch PCB (B).  
 Figure (a): 6P-connector (14) of power cord (C) and 6P-connector (15) of sensor  
 Figure (b): 2P-connector (13) of power cord (C) and 2P-connector (16) of motor  
 Figure (c): 9P-connector (17) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (18) of document finisher power cord

- Figure (d): 6P-connector (19) of power cord (C) and YC3 connector (20) of punch PCB (B)  
 Figure (d): 4P-connector (21) of power cord (C) and YC1 connector (22) of punch PCB (B)  
 Figure (d): 9P-connector (23) of power cord (C) and YC2 connector (24) of punch PCB (B)  
 Figure (e): 9P-connector (25) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (26) of document finisher power cord

14. Ouvrir la selle de câble (12) et faire passer le connecteur 2P (13) dans le moteur par la selle de câble pour fixer la carte de perforation (B).  
 15. Connecter le cordon d'alimentation (C) et la carte de perforation (B).  
 Figure (a): connecteur 6P (14) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 6P (15) du capteur  
 Figure (b): connecteur 2P (13) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 2P (16) du moteur  
 Figure (c): connecteur 9P (17) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (18) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

- Figure (d): connecteur 6P (19) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC3 (20) de la carte de perforation (B)  
 Figure (d): connecteur 4P (21) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC1 (22) de la carte de perforation (B)  
 Figure (d): connecteur 9P (23) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC2 (24) de la carte de perforation (B)  
 Figure (e): connecteur 9P (25) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (26) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

14. Abra la placa de cable (12) y ponga el conector de 2 contactos (13) en el motor a través de la placa de cable para fijar el PCB de perforación (B).  
 15. Conecte el cable de alimentación (C) en el PCB de perforación (B).  
 Figura (a): Conector de 6 contactos (14) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 6 contactos (15) del sensor  
 Figura (b): Conector de 2 contactos (13) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 2 contactos (16) del motor  
 Figura (c): Conector de 9 contactos (17) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (18) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

- Figura (d): Conector de 6 contactos (19) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC3 (20) del PCB de perforación (B)  
 Figura (d): Conector de 4 contactos (21) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC1 (22) del PCB de perforación (B)  
 Figura (d): Conector de 9 contactos (23) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC2 (24) del PCB de perforación (B)  
 Figura (e): Conector de 9 contactos (25) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (26) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

14. Öffnen Sie den Kabelhalter (12) und führen Sie den 2-poligen Stecker (13) durch den Kabelhalter am Motor, um die Locherplatine (B) zu befestigen.  
 15. Schließen Sie das Netzkabel (C) an der Locherplatine (B) an.  
 Abbildung (a): 6-poliger Stecker (14) des Netzkabels (C) und 6-poliger Stecker (15) des Sensors  
 Abbildung (b): 2-poliger Stecker (13) des Netzkabels (C) und 2-poliger Stecker (16) des Motors  
 Abbildung (c): 9-poliger Stecker (17) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (18) des Dokument-Finishers-Netzkabels

- Abbildung (d): 6-poliger Stecker (19) des Netzkabels (C) und YC3-Stecker (20) der Locherplatine (B)  
 Abbildung (d): 4-poliger Stecker (21) des Netzkabels (C) und YC1-Stecker (22) der Locherplatine (B)  
 Abbildung (d): 9-poliger Stecker (23) des Netzkabels (C) und YC2-Stecker (24) der Locherplatine (B)  
 Abbildung (e): 9-poliger Stecker (25) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (26) des Dokument-Finisher-Netzkabels

14. Aprire la slitta del filo (12) e inserire il connettore a 2 piedini (13) sul motore attraverso la slitta in modo da fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).  
 15. Collegare il cavo di alimentazione (C) alla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).  
 Figura (a): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (14) e connettore sensore a 6 piedini (15)  
 Figura (b): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 2 piedini (13) e connettore motore a 2 piedini (16)  
 Figura (c): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (17) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (18)

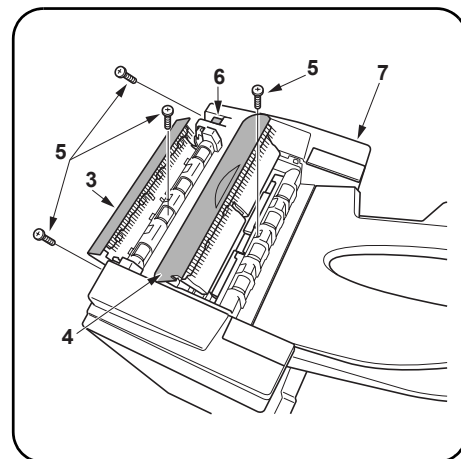
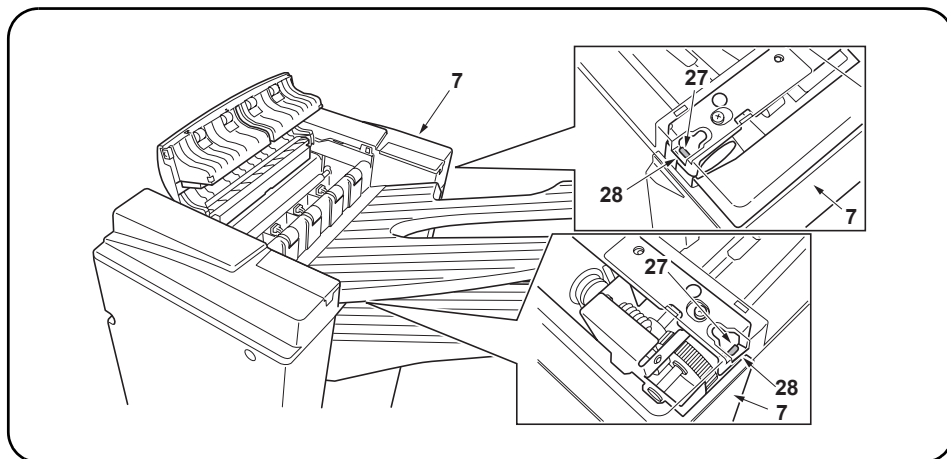
- Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (19) e connettore YC3 (20) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)  
 Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 4 piedini (21) e connettore YC1 (22) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)  
 Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (23) e connettore YC2 (24) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)  
 Figura (e): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (25) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (26)

14. 打开电线束线夹 (12) 并将电机上的 2P 插头 (13) 穿过电线束线夹, 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。  
 15. 将电源线 (C) 连接到打孔单元电路板 (B)。  
 图 (a): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (14) 和传感器的 6P 插头 (15)  
 图 (b): 电源线 (C) 的 2P 插头 (13) 和电机的 2P 插头 (16)  
 图 (c): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (17) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (18)

- 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (19) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC3 插头 (20)  
 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 4P 插头 (21) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC1 插头 (22)  
 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (23) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC2 插头 (24)  
 图 (e): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (25) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (26)

14. ワイヤーサドル (12) を開き、モータの 2P コネクタ (13) をワイヤーサドル (12) へ通して固定する。  
 15. 電線 (C) をパンチ基板 (B) と接続する。  
 図 (a): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (14) とセンサの 6P コネクタ (15)  
 図 (b): 電線 (C) の 2P コネクタ (13) とモータの 2P コネクタ (16)  
 図 (c): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (17) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (18)

- 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (19) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC3 コネクタ (20)  
 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 4P コネクタ (21) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC1 コネクタ (22)  
 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (23) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC2 コネクタ (24)  
 図 (e): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (25) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (26)



### Installing the cover

16. Engage the pawl (27) of the document finisher with the concave section (28) at the back of the top cover (7) which was removed in step 3. After that, reinstall the top cover (7) by pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) with four screws (5).  
If the pawl (27) is not securely engaged with the concave section, the top cover (7) is loose, which may cause incorrect operation of the document finisher.
17. Close the upper cover (3) and the tray C (4) which were opened in step 2.

### Installation du capot

16. Engager le cliquet (27) du finisseur de document dans la partie concave (28) de l'arrière du capot supérieur (7) retiré à l'étape 3. Ensuite, réinstaller le capot supérieur (7) en serrant le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) à l'aide de quatre vis (5).  
Si le cliquet (27) n'est pas bien engagé dans la partie concave, le capot supérieur (7) est lâche, ce qui peut entraîner un fonctionnement incorrect du finisseur de document.
17. Refermer le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) ouverts à l'étape 2.

### Instalación de la cubierta

16. Acople el trinquete (27) del finalizador de documentos con la sección cóncava (28) de la parte posterior de la cubierta superior (7) que fue quitada en el paso 3. Después, presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (7) con cuatro tornillos (5).  
Si el trinquete (27) no está firmemente acoplado con la sección cóncava, la cubierta superior (7) quedará floja, lo que podrá causar un funcionamiento incorrecto del finalizador de documentos.
17. Cierre la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) que fueron abiertas en el paso 2.

### Anbringen der Abdeckung

16. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke (27) des Dokument-Finishers in den konkaven Teil (28) auf der Rückseite der oberen Abdeckung (7) eingreifen, die zuvor in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde. Drücken Sie danach den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), um die obere Abdeckung (7) mit den vier Schrauben (5) zu befestigen.  
Wenn die Sperrklinke (27) nicht gut in den konkaven Teil eingreift, ist die obere Abdeckung (7) locker. Dabei kann es zu einer Funktionsstörung im Dokument-Finisher kommen.
17. Schließen Sie die in Schritt 2 geöffnete obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) wieder.

### Installare il pannello

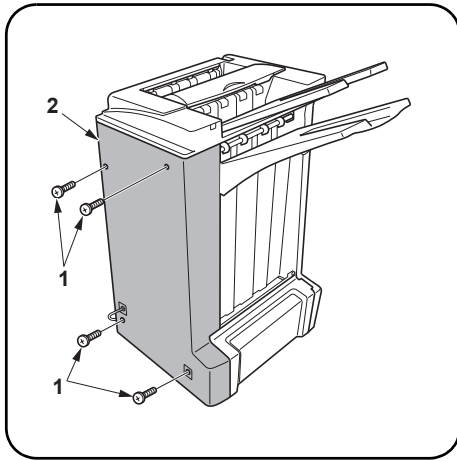
16. Agganciare il dentello (27) della finitrice alla sezione concava (28) sul retro del coperchio (7) rimosso al passo 3. In seguito, premi la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per reinstallare il coperchio (7) con quattro viti (5).  
Se il dentello (27) non è fermamente agganciato alla sezione concava, il coperchio (7) risulta allentato e ciò può causare il malfunzionamento della finitrice.
17. Chiudere il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) aperti nel passo 2.

### 安装盖板

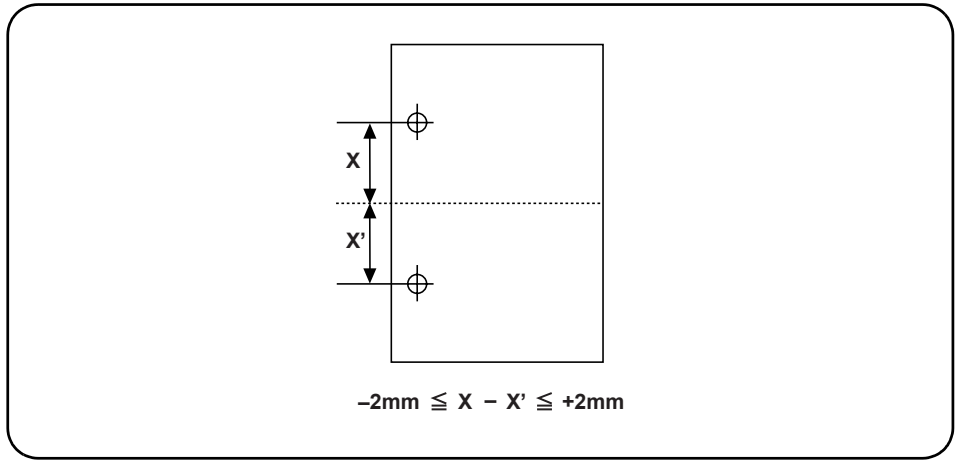
16. 将装订器的卡爪 (27) 与在步骤 3 中拆下的上盖板 (7) 后凹面 (28) 啮合。之后, 按下装订器释放杆 (6), 用 4 颗螺钉重新安装上部盖板 (7)。  
如果卡爪 (27) 未与凹面牢固地啮合, 上盖板 (7) 会松动, 可能会造成装订器的异常操作。
17. 关闭在步骤 2 中打开的上盖板 (3) 和托盘 C (4)。

### カバーの取り付け

16. ドキュメントフィニッシャのツメ (27) を、手順 3 で外した天カバー (7) 裏側の凹部 (28) に引っ掛け、フィニッシャ解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) をはめ込み、ビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付け。  
ツメ (27) が確実に引っ掛けられていない場合、天カバー (7) が浮いた状態になり、ドキュメントフィニッシャが正常に動作しない恐れがある。
17. 手順 2 で開いた上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を閉じる。



18. Use four screws (1) to reinstall the back cover (2) which was removed from the document finisher in step 1.



#### [Checking the center of the punch hole]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
3. Check for any off-centering in the punch holes. If any off-centering is observed, follow the procedure below to adjust the hole position.  
<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Utiliser quatre vis (1) pour réinstaller le capot arrière (2) retiré du finisseur de document à l'étape 1.

#### [Vérification du centre des perforations]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.
2. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
3. Vérifier tout décentrage des perforations. Si des décentrages se produisent, suivre la procédure ci-dessous pour ajuster la position de perforation.  
<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Utilice cuatro tornillos (1) para volver a instalar la cubierta posterior (2) que fue quitada del finalizador de documentos en el paso 1.

#### [Comprobación del centro del agujero perforado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
3. Compruebe que no haya ningún agujero perforado descentrado. Si lo hay, siga el procedimiento de abajo para ajustar la posición del agujero.  
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (1), um die hintere Abdeckung (2) zu befestigen, welche in Schritt 1 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurde.

#### [Überprüfen der Stanzlöcherzentrierung]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Lochungsmodus einen Test aus, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
3. Prüfen Sie auf nicht zentrierte Löcher. Sollte dies der Fall sein, folgen Sie dem nachfolgendem Verfahren, um die Lochposition zu korrigieren.  
<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Utilizzare quattro viti (1) per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (2) rimosso dalla finitrice nel passo 1.

#### [Verificare la centratura dei fori di perforazione]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
3. Verificare che i fori di perforazione siano correttamente centrati. Nel caso in cui non lo siano, eseguire la procedura indicata qui di seguito per regolarne la posizione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. 用 4 顆螺釘 (1) 重新安裝在步驟 1 中從裝訂器上拆下的後蓋板 (2)。

#### [检查打孔的中央]

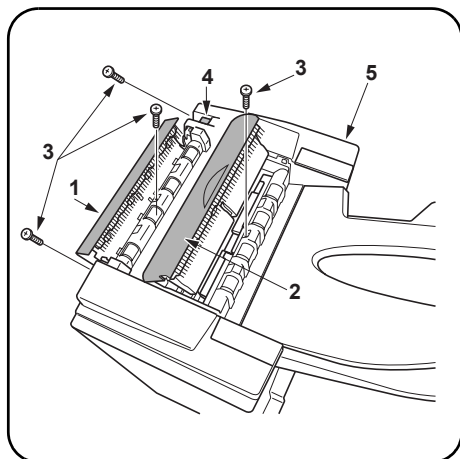
1. 將 MFP 插入電源插座，打開主電源開關。
2. 在打孔模式中，從 MP 托盤進紙進行測試複印。
3. 檢查打孔是否偏离中央。如果觀察到有偏离中央的情況，按照下列步驟調整打孔位置。  
<標準值> 打孔的垂直間隙:  $\pm 2$ mm

18. 手順 1 で外したドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー (2) をビス (1) 4 本で元通り取り付け。

#### [パンチ穴のセンター位置確認]

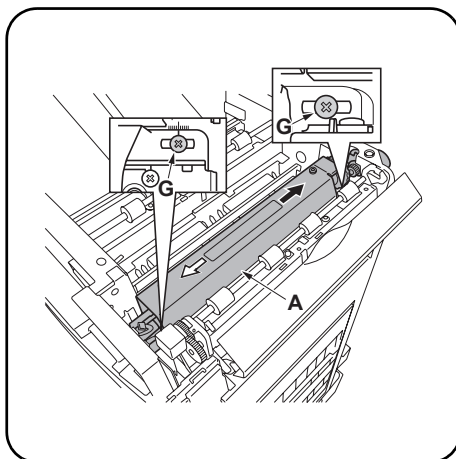
1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
3. パンチ穴のセンター位置のずれを確認する。パンチ穴が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ:  $\pm 2$ mm





### Centering punch-holes

1. Open the upper cover (1) and the tray C (2) of the document finisher.
2. Remove four screws (3) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (4) to remove the top cover (5).

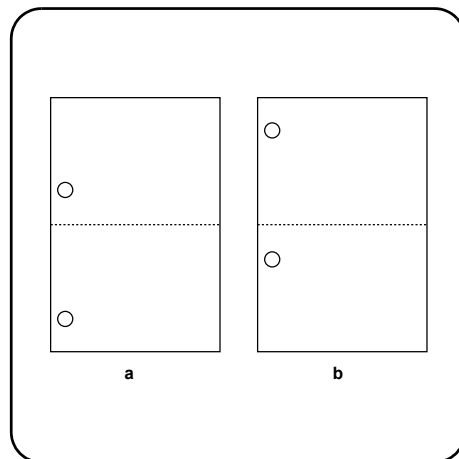


3. Loosen two M4 x 10 tap Tight S screws (G) of the hole punch unit (A).

4. Adjust the position of the hole punch unit (A).

When holes are punched too far lower copy example (a): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the black arrow.  
When holes are punched too far upper copy example (b): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the white arrow.

5. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.
6. Perform a test copy.



### Centrage des perforations

1. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (1) et le bac C (2) du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer quatre vis (3) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur (4) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (5).

3. Desserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (G) de la perforatrice (A).

4. Ajuster la position de la perforatrice (A).

Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop bas dans l'exemple de copie (a): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche noire.

Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop haut dans l'exemple de copie (b): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche blanche.

5. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.
6. Effectuer une copie de test.

### Centrado de los agujeros de perforación

1. Abra la cubierta superior (1) y la bandeja C (2) del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los cuatro tornillos (3) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (4) para quitar la cubierta superior (5).

3. Afloje dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (G) de la perforadora (A).

4. Ajuste la posición de la perforadora (A).

Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia abajo en el ejemplo de copia (a): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha negra.

Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia arriba en el ejemplo de copia (b): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha blanca.

5. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.
6. Haga una copia de prueba.

### Zentrieren der Stanzlöcher

1. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (1) sowie das Fach C (2) des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (3) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (4), um die obere Abdeckung (5) zu entfernen.

3. Lösen Sie die beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) der Lochereinheit (A).

4. Stellen Sie die Position der Lochereinheit (A) ein.

Wenn die Löcher zu weit unten durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (a): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils.

Wenn die Löcher zu weit oben durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (b): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des weißen Pfeils.

5. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.
6. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.

### Centratura dei fori di perforazione

1. Aprire il pannello superiore (1) e il vassoio C (2) della finitrice.
2. Togliere quattro viti (3) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (4) per rimuovere il coperchio (5).

3. Allentare due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (G) dell'unità di perforazione (A).

4. Regolare la posizione dell'unità di perforazione (A).

Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in basso (esempio a): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia nera.

Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in alto (esempio b): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia bianca.

5. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.
6. Eseguire una copia di prova.

### 将打孔调整居中

1. 打开装订器的上盖板 (1) 和托盘 C (2)。
2. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (3) 并按住整理器释放杆 (4) 以便拆下上盖板 (5)。

3. 松开打孔单元 (A) 的 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。

4. 调整打孔单元 (A) 的位置。

打孔远离下部复印样本 (a) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向黑色箭头指示的方向。

打孔远离上部复印样本 (b) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向白色箭头指示的方向。

5. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息, 请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。
6. 进行测试复印。

### パンチ穴のセンター位置調整

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの上カバー (1) とトレイ C (2) を開く。
2. ビス (3) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャー解除レバー (4) 押しながら上カバー (5) を取り外す。

3. パンチユニット (A) のビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を緩める。

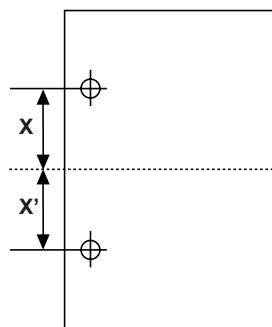
4. パンチユニット (A) の位置調整を行う。

パンチ穴が下にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): パンチユニット (A) を黒矢印の方向へずらす。

パンチ穴が上にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): パンチユニット (A) を白矢印の方向へずらす。

5. 手順 2 で外した上カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。

6. テストコピーを行う。



$$-2\text{mm} \leq X - X' \leq +2\text{mm}$$

7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until the vertical gap of the punch holes on the copy sample are within the reference value.
8. After adjustment, tighten two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G) loosened in step 3.
9. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.

<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes: ±2 mm

7. Répéter les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que l'espace vertical des perforations de l'échantillon de copie se trouve à l'intérieur de la valeur de référence.
8. Après l'ajustement, resserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) desserrées à l'étape 3.
9. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.

<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations: ±2 mm

7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la separación vertical de los agujeros perforados en la muestra de la copia cumplan con el valor de referencia.
8. Después de hacer el ajuste, apriete dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) aflojados en el paso 3.
9. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.

<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados: ±2 mm

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 6, bis der Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher auf der Testkopie innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
8. Nach der Einstellung sind die beiden in Schritt 3 gelösten M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) wieder festzuziehen.
9. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.

<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher: ±2 mm

7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 finché la distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione nella copia campione non rientra nel valore di riferimento.
8. Dopo la regolazione, serrare le due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) allentate nel passo 3.
9. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.

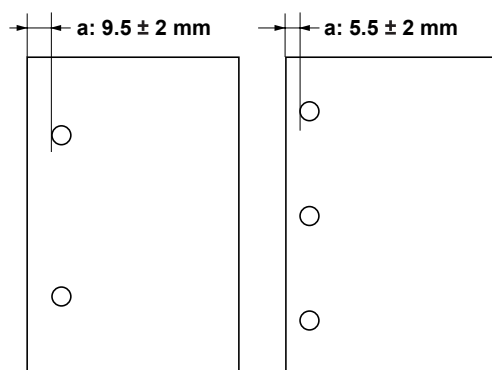
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione: ±2 mm

7. 重复步骤 1 至 6 直到复印样本上打孔垂直间隙在标准值范围之内。
8. 调整后，拧紧在步骤 3 中松开的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。
9. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息，请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。

<标准值> 打孔的垂直间隙: ±2mm

7. コピーサンプルのパンチ穴のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
8. 調整終了後、手順 3 で緩めたビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を締め付ける。
9. 手順 2 で外した天カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。

<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ: ± 2mm



#### [Checking distance from leading edge to the punch holes]

1. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
2. Check the distance from the paper leading edge to the punch holes (a). If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.  
<Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ± 2 mm  
Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ± 2 mm

#### Adjusting distance from leading edge to the punch holes

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select FINISHER 3000 and PUNCH POS ADJ mode.
2. Adjust the setting value.  
If (a) is shorter than the reference value, increase the setting value.  
If (a) is larger than the reference value, decrease the setting value.  
Changing the value by 1 moves the punching position by approximately 0.49 mm

#### [Vérification de la distance du bord d'entrée aux perforations]

1. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
2. Vérifier la distance entre le bord d'entrée du papier et les perforations (a). Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Ajustement de la distance entre le bord d'entrée et les perforations

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner FINISHER 3000 et le mode PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuster la valeur de réglage.  
Si (a) est inférieur à la valeur de référence, augmenter la valeur de réglage.  
Si (a) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, diminuer la valeur de réglage.  
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de perforation d'environ 0,49 mm.

#### [Comprobación de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados]

1. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
2. Compruebe la distancia del borde delantero del papel a los agujeros perforados (a). Si la distancia no se encuentra dentro del valor de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Distancia (a) en pulgadas: 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Ajuste de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione FINISHER 3000 y el modo PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.  
Si (a) es inferior al valor de referencia, aumente el valor de configuración.  
Si (a) es superior al valor de referencia, disminuya el valor de configuración.  
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de perforación 0,49 mm aproximadamente.

#### [Überprüfen des Abstands von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern]

1. Führen Sie im Lochermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
2. Überprüfen Sie den Abstand von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern (a). Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist die Einstellung gemäß den nachfolgenden Schritte durchzuführen.  
<Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Abstand in Zoll (a): 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Einstellen des Abstands von der Vorderkante zu den Stanzlöchern

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein und wählen Sie dann FINISHER 3000 und PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Regeln Sie den Einstellungswert.  
Wenn (a) kleiner als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu erhöhen.  
Wenn (a) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu reduzieren.  
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1 verschiebt die Lochstanzposition um 0,49 mm.

#### [Verificare la distanza distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione]

1. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
2. Controllare la distanza tra i fori di perforazione e il bordo anteriore del foglio (a). Se la distanza non è compresa tra gli intervalli di riferimento, eseguire i passaggi successivi per regolarne la posizione.  
<Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Impostazione della distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare le modalità FINISHER 3000 e PUNCH POS ADJ (regola posizione di cucitura).
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.  
Nel caso in cui (a) sia minore del valore di riferimento, aumentare il valore di impostazione.  
Se (a) è maggiore del valore previsto, ridurre il valore di impostazione.  
La modifica del valore 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di cucitura di circa 0,49 mm

#### [ 检查前边到打孔的距离 ]

1. 在打孔模式中，从 MP 托盘进纸进行测试复印。
2. 检查纸张前边到打孔 (a) 的距离。如果距离超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整位置。  
<标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a): 9.5 ± 2mm  
英制规格的距离 (a): 5.5 ± 2mm

#### 调整前边到打孔的距离

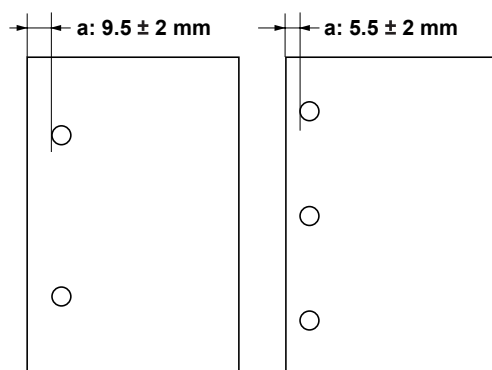
1. 进入维修模式 U246，选择 FINISHER 3000（整理器 3000）和 PUNCH POS ADJ（打孔位置调整）模式。
2. 调整设定值。  
如果 (a) 短于标准值，请增大设定值。  
如果 (a) 长于标准值，请减小设定值。  
以 1 更改数值将打孔位置移动大约 0.49mm

#### [パンチ穴の先端位置確認]

1. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
2. パンチ穴の用紙先端からの位置 (a) を確認する。位置のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 9.5 ± 2mm  
インチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 5.5 ± 2mm

#### パンチ穴の先端位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 にセットし、FINISHER 3000、PUNCH POS ADJ を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
(a) が基準値より短い場合: 設定値を上げる。  
(a) が基準値より長い場合: 設定値を下げる。  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.49mm



3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the leading edge to the punch hole indicates the value within the reference range.  
 <Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ±2 mm  
 Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ±2 mm

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la distance entre le bord d'entrée et la perforation indique une valeur se trouvant à l'intérieur de la gamme de référence.  
 <Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: 9,5 ±2 mm  
 Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: 5,5 ±2 mm

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del borde de entrada al agujero perforado indique una distancia comprendida dentro del valor de referencia.  
 <Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: 9,5 ±2 mm  
 Distancia (a) en pulgadas: 5,5 ±2 mm

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Vorderkante zur Lochung innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.  
 <Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): 9,5 ±2 mm  
 Abstand in Zoll (a): 5,5 ±2 mm

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione non rientra negli intervalli di riferimento.  
 <Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: 9,5 ±2 mm  
 Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: 5,5 ±2 mm

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到前边到打孔的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。  
 <标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a): 9.5 ±2mm  
 英制规格的距离 (a): 5.5 ±2mm

3. テストコピーを行う
4. パンチ穴の用紙先端までの位置が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。  
 <基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 9.5 ± 2mm  
 インチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 5.5 ± 2mm

## KYOCERA MITA EUROPE B.V.

Hoeksteen 40, 2132 MS Hoofddorp,  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31.20.654.0000  
Home page: <http://www.kyoceramita-europe.com>  
Email: [info@kyoceramita-europe.com](mailto:info@kyoceramita-europe.com)

KYOCERA MITA NEDERLAND B.V.  
Beechavenue 25, 1119RA Schiphol-Rijk  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31.20.58.77.200

KYOCERA MITA (UK) LTD  
8 Beacontree Plaza  
Gillette Way Reading Berks RG2 OBS,  
U.K.  
Phone: +44.1189.311.500

KYOCERA MITA ITALIA S.p.A.  
Via G. Verdi, 89 / 91, 20063 Cernusco s/N  
Milano, Italy  
Phone: +39.02.92179.1

S.A. KYOCERA MITA BELGIUM N.V.  
Hermesstraat 8A, 1930 Zaventem,  
Belgium  
Phone: +32.2.720.9270

KYOCERA MITA FRANCE S.A.  
Parc Les Algorithmes Saint Aubin  
91194 GIF-SUR-YVETTE,  
France  
Phone: +33.1.6985.2600

KYOCERA MITA ESPAÑA S.A.  
Edificio Kyocera, Avda de Manacor No. 2,  
28290 Las Matas (Madrid),  
Spain  
Phone: +34.91.631.8392

KYOCERA MITA FINLAND OY  
Kirvesmiehenkatu 4, 00880 Helsinki,  
Finland  
Phone: +358.9.4780.5200

KYOCERA MITA (SCHWEIZ)  
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich  
Switzerland  
Phone: +41.1.908.4949

KYOCERA MITA DEUTSCHLAND GMBH  
Otto-Hahn-Str. 12 D-40670 Meerbusch,  
Germany  
Phone: +49.2159.918.0

KYOCERA MITA GMBH AUSTRIA  
Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95,  
1230 Wien,  
Austria  
Phone: +43.1.86338.210

KYOCERA MITA SVENSKA AB  
Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,  
Sweden  
Phone: +46.8.546.55000

KYOCERA MITA NORGE  
Postboks 150 Oppsal, NO 0619 Oslo  
Olaf Helsetsvai 6, NO 0694 Oslo,  
Norway  
Phone: +47.22.62.73.00

KYOCERA MITA DANMARK A/S  
Ejby Industrivej 1, DK-2600 Glostrup,  
Denmark  
Phone: +45.5687.1100

KYOCERA MITA PORTUGAL LDA.  
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisbon,  
Portugal  
Phone: +351.21.842.9100

KYOCERA MITA SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD.  
527 Kyalami Boulevard,  
Kyalami Business Park Midrand,  
South Africa  
Phone: +27.(0)11.540.2600

## KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:  
225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008,  
U.S.A.  
Phone: (973) 808-8444

KYOCERA MITA AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.  
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road, North Ryde,  
N.S.W. 2113 Australia  
Phone: (02) 9888-9999

KYOCERA MITA NEW ZEALAND LTD.  
1-3 Parkhead Place, Albany  
P.O. Box 302 125 NHPC, Auckland,  
New Zealand  
Phone: (09) 415-4517

KYOCERA MITA (THAILAND) CORP., LTD.  
9/209 Ratchada-Prachachem Road,  
Bang Sue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand  
Phone: (02) 586-0320

KYOCERA MITA SINGAPORE PTE LTD.  
121 Genting Lane, 3rd Level,  
Singapore 349572  
Phone: 67418733

KYOCERA MITA HONG KONG LIMITED  
11/F., Mita Centre,  
552-566, Castle Peak Road,  
Tsuen Wan, New Territories,  
Hong Kong  
Phone: 24297422

KYOCERA MITA TAIWAN Corporation.  
7F-1~2, No.41, Lane 221, Gangchi Rd.  
Neihu District, Taipei, Taiwan, 114. R.O.C.  
Phone: (02) 87511560

## KYOCERA MITA Corporation

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku  
Osaka 540-8585, Japan  
Phone: (06) 6764-3555  
<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

## KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

### **Headquarters:**

225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008  
TEL : (973) 808-8444  
FAX : (973) 882-6000

### **New York Branch:**

1410 Broadway 23rd floor  
New York, NY 10018  
TEL : (917) 286-5400  
FAX : (917) 286-5402

### **Northeastern Region:**

225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008  
TEL : (973) 808-8444  
FAX : (973) 882-4401

### **Midwestern Region:**

201 Hansen Court Suite 119  
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191  
TEL : (630) 238-9982  
FAX : (630) 238-9487

### **Western Region:**

14101 Alton Parkway,  
Irvine, California 92618-7006  
TEL : (949) 457-9000  
FAX : (949) 457-9119

### **Southeastern Region:**

1500 Oakbrook Drive,  
Norcross, Georgia 30093  
TEL : (770) 729-9786  
FAX : (770) 729-9873

### **Southwestern Region:**

2825 West Story Road,  
Irving, Texas 75038-5299  
TEL : (972) 550-8987  
FAX : (972) 252-9786

### **National Operation Center & National Training Center:**

2825 West Story Road,  
Irving, Texas 75038-5299  
TEL : (972) 659-0055  
FAX : (972) 570-5816

### **Latin America Division:**

8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,  
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166  
TEL : (305) 421-6640  
FAX : (305) 421-6666

## KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,  
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada  
TEL : (905) 670-4425  
FAX : (905) 670-8116

## KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407  
Col. Santa Inés,  
Azcapotzalco México,  
D.F. 02130, México  
TEL : (55) 5383-2741  
FAX : (55) 5383-7804